YAMAHA

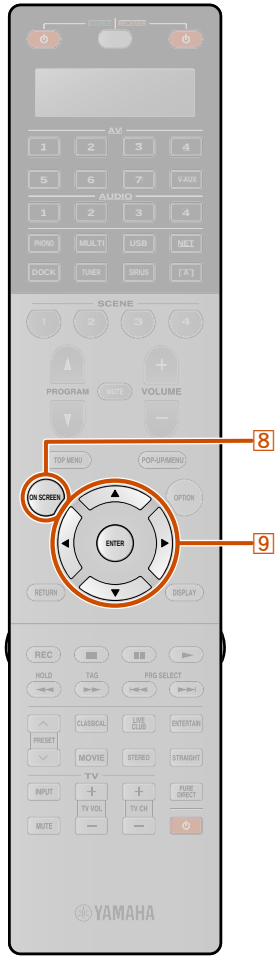
RX-A2000

AV Receiver

Owner's Manual

English for U.S.A.

BEFORE USE



About this manual

- Some features are not available in certain regions.
- This manual is created prior to production. Design and specifications are subject to change in part as a result of improvements, etc. In case of differences between the manual and product, the product has priority.
- "8ON SCREEN" (example) indicates the name of the parts on the remote control. Refer to the "Remote control" (☞p. 12) for the information about each position of the parts.
- 1 indicates that the reference is in the footnote. Refer to the corresponding numbers on the bottom of the page.
- ☞ indicates the page describing the related information.
- Click on the " " at the bottom of the page to display the corresponding page in "Part names and functions."
  - Front panel
  - Rear panel
  - Front panel display
  - Remote control

Supplied accessories

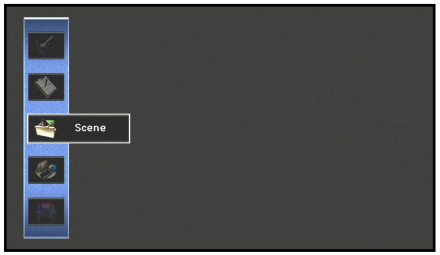
Check that you received all of the following parts.

- Remote control
- Simplified remote control
- Batteries (AAA, R03, UM-4) x 4
- Power cable
- YPAO microphone
- AM loop antenna
- Indoor FM antenna

Language selection

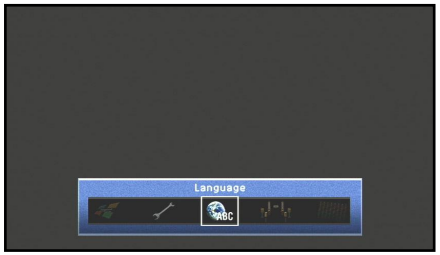
This procedure allows you to select the language of menus and messages on the TV screen.

1 Press 8ON SCREEN to display the ON SCREEN menu.



2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select "Setup" and press 9ENTER.

3 Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select the "Language" and press 9ENTER.



4 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the favorite language from the following options.

English (English), 日本語 (Japanese), Français (French), Deutsch (German), Español (Spanish), Русский (Russian)

5 Press 8ON SCREEN to close the ON SCREEN menu.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Features and capabilities 5

Using the TV OSD to operate the unit 6

Basic OSD menu operations 6
Viewing or modifying content for the current input source <Content window> 6
Configuring settings for this unit <ON SCREEN menu> 6
Adjust settings for each input source <Option menu> 7

Part names and functions 8

Front panel 8
Front panel with the cover opened 9
Rear panel 10
Front panel display 11
Remote control 12
Remote control with the cover open 13
On-screen display 14

CONNECTIONS

Connecting speakers 15

Speaker channels and functions 15
Speaker layout 16
Connecting speakers and subwoofers 20

Advanced speaker configuration 24

Speaker layout utilizing an external power amplifier 24
Connecting an external amplifier 26

Connecting external components 27

Jacks and cables 27
Connecting a TV monitor 28
Connecting BD/DVD players and other devices 31
Connecting game consoles or video camcorders 36
Connecting a multi-format player or an external decoder 36
Connecting a SCENE link playback-compatible device 37
Using the Trigger function to link external component power 37
Connecting audio/video recording devices 38
Connecting to the network 38
Connecting a USB storage device 39

Connecting the FM/AM antennas 40

Setting up the speaker parameters automatically (YPAO) 41

PLAYBACK

Basic playback procedure 48

Changing input settings with a single key (SCENE function) 50

Selecting a SCENE suited to an external component 50

Enjoying favorite sound field effect 51

Selecting sound programs and sound decoders 51
Enjoying surround sound with the CINEMA DSP function 51
Enjoying unprocessed playback (Straight decoding mode) 52
Enjoying Hi-Fi Sound Quality (Pure Direct Mode) 53
Enjoying stereo playback 53
Enjoying compressed music source with better sound quality (Compressed Music Enhancer) 53
Sound programs 54

Using the TV display to control this unit 56

Basic operations via the TV screen display 56

Configuring settings specific to an individual input source (Option menu) 58

Option menu display and setup 58
Option menu 59

Confirming and operating input sources from the content window 62

Displaying the content window on the TV screen 62
Switching the display between the Now Playing view and the Browse view 62

FM/AM tuning 63

Selecting a frequency for reception (Normal tuning) 63
Navigating the FM/AM tuner from the content window 64

Listening to the HD Radio™ 66

Selecting HD Radio™ audio programs 66
Using the iTunes Tagging 67
Displaying the HD Radio™ information 67
Navigating the HD Radio™ tuner from the content window 68

Listening to the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ 70

Connecting the SiriusConnect™ tuner 70
Activating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ subscription 71
SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ operations 71
Registering and recalling the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ channels 72
Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ information 73
Navigating the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ tuner from the content window 74

Playing back tunes on the PC 76

Windows Media Player setup 76
Playback of PC music contents 76

Playing back tunes on the USB storage devices 78

Playback of the USB storage device 78

Listening to the Internet Radio 80

Listening to Internet Radio 80

Using the Rhapsody® service 82

Rhapsody® account sign-in 82
Playback of Rhapsody® contents 83

Listening to the SIRIUS Internet Radio 86

SIRIUS Internet Radio account sign-in 86
Navigating the Sirius Internet Radio menu 87

Using shortcut function 89

Playing back tunes from your iPod™/iPhone™ 90
Connecting the Universal Dock for iPod..... 90
Controlling an iPod™/iPhone™ 90
Playing iPod™/iPhone™ from the menu screen (Menu browse control) 91
Operating basic playback functions via the remote control (Simple remote control) 92
Playing iPod™/iPhone™ with wireless connection..... 92

Playing back tunes from Bluetooth™ components..... 94
Connecting a Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver 94
Pairing Bluetooth™ components..... 94
Using Bluetooth™ components 95

Controlling this unit by using the Web browser (Web Control Center) 96
Displaying and Operating Web Control Center..... 96

SETUP

Configuring input sources (Input menu) 98
Configuring input sources 98
Input menu..... 99

Editing the SCENE function (Scene menu)..... 102
Editing a scene..... 102
Scene menu..... 103
Simple registering as the SCENE..... 104

Setting sound program parameters (Sound Program menu) 105
Editing sound programs..... 105
CINEMA DSP parameters 106
Parameters usable in certain sound programs 108
Parameters usable in surround decoder 109

Setting various functions (Setup menu) 110
Operating the Setup menu 110
Setup menu 111
Manages settings for speakers 111
Setting the audio output function of this unit 115
Setting this unit's video output function..... 117
Setting HDMI functions 118
Adjusting this unit's network parameters..... 121
Setting this unit's multi-zone function 122
Making the receiver easier to use 123
Language 126

Confirming information of this unit (Information menu) 127
Selecting information 127

Controlling the remote control to operate various functions 129
Keys connecting external components 129
Customizing the remote control 130
Setting remote control codes 130
Programming from other remote controls..... 132
Changing source names in the display window 134
Macro programming features 135
Clearing configurations 136
Simplified remote control..... 138

Extended functionality that can be configured as needed (Advanced Setup menu)..... 139
Displaying/Setting the Advanced Setup menu..... 139
Setting the impedance of speakers 139
Remote sensor 139
Avoiding crossing remote control signals when using multiple Yamaha receivers 140
Resetting the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ parental lock code..... 140
Changing TV format 140
Removing HDMI video output up-scaling limits..... 141
Recovery and backup of the system settings..... 141
Initializing various settings for this unit..... 141
Firmware update..... 142
Firmware version..... 142

Using the HDMI Control function 143

Enjoying the contents in another room 147
Connecting Zone2 or Zone3..... 147
Controlling Zone2 or Zone3..... 149
Enjoying the music in all rooms..... 149

APPENDIX

Troubleshooting 150
General..... 150
HDMI™ 152
Tuner (FM/AM) 153
HD Radio™ Reception 153
iTunes Tagging..... 154
SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ 154
USB and Network 155
iPod™/iPhone™ 157
Bluetooth™..... 157
Remote control..... 158

Glossary 159
Audio information..... 159
Sound program information..... 160
Video information 161
Compatibility of the input and output video signals.... 161

Information on HDMI™..... 162

About trademarks 163

Specifications..... 164

Index 166

INTRODUCTION

Features and capabilities

■ **Built-in high-quality, high-power 7-channel amplifier**

■ **Multi-channel speaker configuration capability**
- 2- to 7.1-channel speaker configurations 16
- Presence speaker connections for playback with a richer sound field effect 15
- Bi-amplification connections for high-quality playback 21
- External amplifier connections for high-quality playback and expansion of channels 24
- Speaker impedance configuration 21

■ **HDMI compatibility**
- 8 HDMI input jacks (7 on the rear, 1 on the front) supporting 3D video signal input 31
- 2 selectable HDMI output jacks supporting Audio Return Channel and 3D video signal 29

■ **Automatic setup for speaker acoustic parameters (YPAO - Yamaha Parametric Room Acoustic Optimizer) 41**

■ **Extensive inputs (max. 13) for external playback components**
- BD/DVD/CD player connection 31
- Game console / video camcorder connection 36
- Multi-format player / external decoder connection 36
- iPod/iPhone wired connection 90
- iPod/iPhone wireless connection 92
- Bluetooth component connection 94

■ **1-button input/sound program/setting switching (SCENE function) 50**

■ **Built-in sound programs and surround decoders for playback variety of sources**
- Spatial sound playback with sound field effects (CINEMA DSP) 51
- Playback with no sound field effects (straight decoding) 52
- High-fidelity sound playback (Pure Direct) 53
- Enhanced sound playback for compressed sources (Compressed Music Enhancer) 53

■ **Tuner playback**
- FM/AM broadcast 63
- HD Radio™ digital broadcast 66
- SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ broadcast 70

■ **Playback and control via network**
- Playback of music on the PC and DLNA server 76
- Internet radio service playback 80
- Control this unit via network (Web Browser Control) 96

■ **Playback of music on the USB storage devices 78**

■ **Sophisticated on-screen display (OSD) for easy operation**
- Selection of input sources, scenes, and sound programs 56
- Navigation for the current input source (content window) 62
- Setup for this unit (ON SCREEN menu) 98
- Setup for each input source (Option menu) 58

Most of functions can be operated with on-screen display on the TV screen. Refer to “Using the TV OSD to operate the unit” on the following pages for information on functions that can be controlled using the on-screen display.

■ **Customizable remote control**
- Remote control code setup for operation of external components 130
- Learning function from other remote controls 132
- Programming macro for a series of operations 135

■ **Multi-room listening capability (Zone2/Zone3) 147**

Using the TV OSD to operate the unit

This unit features a sophisticated on-screen display (OSD) for the TV screen. The OSD is designed to enable visual guidance that simplifies operations. The OSD mainly displays the ON SCREEN and Option menus, as well as the content window that displays the content of current input sources.

Basic OSD menu operations

■ Select an input source, scene and sound program

– Select an input source 56
– Select a scene 56
– Select a sound program 57

■ Select a language

– Change the language displayed on the TV screen <Language> 126

Viewing or modifying content for the current input source <Content window>

■ Operate the FM/AM tuner, HD Radio or SIRIUS Satellite Radio

– Display preset stations/channels for selection 64, 68, 74
– Display information on the station/channel currently received 64, 68, 74
– Perform operations such as searching for and registering stations/channels using the screen button 64, 68, 74

■ Operate the Internet radio, Rhapsody or SIRIUS Internet Radio

– Account setup for Rhapsody or SIRIUS Internet Radio 82, 86
– Display information on the station/channel currently received 80, 83, 87
– Play back radio contents 80, 83, 87
– Bookmark Internet radio stations 80
– Add Rhapsody items to “My Library” 85

■ Operate the iPod music sources

– Display the list of iPod music sources for selection 91
– Perform operations such as play, stop and pause using the TV screen <Menu browse control> 91

Configuring settings for this unit <ON SCREEN menu>

■ Configure an input source

– Change the input source name <Rename/Icon Select> 99
– Specify a format for digital audio signals <Decoder Mode> 100
– Enhance the sound of compressed audio <Enhancer> 100
– Output a video signal input from another input source while playing a multi-channel audio signal <Video Out> 101
– Charge the iPod/iPhone when this unit is in standby mode <Standby Charge> 100
– Limit access to specific SIRIUS Satellite channels <Parental Lock> 74
– Play music sources on a PC using external controls <DMC Control> 100
– Register your Rhapsody or SIRIUS Internet Radio account <Formal Registration/Trial Registration> 82, 86

■ Customize a scene

– Register or clear settings for a selected scene <Save>, <Load>, <Reset> 103, 104
– Turn on a Yamaha BD/DVD player or CD player connected to this unit automatically when a scene is selected <SCENE IR> 103
– Changing a scene name and icon <Rename/Icon Select> 104

■ Adjust a sound program (sound program)

– Adjust sound program parameters 105

■ Display settings information for this unit

– Display audio signal information <Audio Signal> 127
– Display video signal information <Video Signal> 127
– Display HDMI signal information <HDMI Monitor> 127
– Display network information <Network> 128
– Display system information <System> 128
– Display Zone information <Zone> 128

Continues to the next page

■ **Adjust acoustic parameters to match your speakers and listening environment**
– Specify speaker acoustic parameters automatically (Yamaha Parametric Room Acoustic Optimizer - YPAO) 41
– Set up this unit's speaker configuration simply <Power Amp Assign> 112
– Specify settings for each speaker <Configuration> 112
– Control volume control for each speaker <Level> 114
– Apply speaker distance settings <Distance> 114
– Control equalizer sound quality <Parametric EQ> 114
– Adjust test tone speaker <Test Tone> 115

■ **Adjust audio signals output from this unit**
– Correct lag between audio and video signals <Lipsync> 115
– Select a dynamic range adjustment method <Dynamic Range> 116
– Specify the maximum volume <Max Volume> 116
– Specify the initial volume <Initial Volume> 116
– Restrict video signal in Pure Direct Mode <Pure Direct Mode> 116
– Adjust DSP effect and volume level <Adaptive DSP Level> 116

■ **Adjust video signals output from this unit**
– Convert analog video signal to another type of signal <Analog to Analog Conversion> 117
– Specify the resolution and aspect ratio of video signals and adjust video quality <Processing> 117

■ **HDMI settings**
– Assign the audio input source for the TV <TV Audio Input> 119
– Listen to TV audio with HDMI cable connection <ARC (Audio Return Channel)> 119
– Transmit HDMI audio/video to the TV during standby mode <Standby Through> 120
– Change the output destination of HDMI input audio signals <Audio Output> 120

■ **Network settings**
– Specify this unit's IP address <IP Address> 121
– Accept the commands over a LAN network when this unit is in the standby mode <Network Standby> 121
– Specify the mac address filter for this unit <MAC Address Filter> 121

■ **Enable listening in multiple rooms (multi-zone function)**
– Adjust Zone2/Zone3 volume <Zone2 Set/Zone3 Set> 122
– Display the Zone2/Zone3 menu on the TV <Monitor Out Assign> 122
– Rename zones or scenes <Zone2 Scene Rename/Zone3 Scene Rename/Zone Rename> 123

■ **Specify other functions for this unit**
– Enter standby mode automatically when no operations are performed <Auto Power Down> 124
– Assign jacks to the selected input source <Input Assignment> 124
– Adjust the brightness of the front panel display <Dimmer> 125
– Change the wall paper displayed on the TV screen <Wall Paper> 125
– Specify the function of the TRIGGER OUT jack for controlling external components <Trigger Output1/Trigger Output2> 125
– Prohibit changes to settings <Memory Guard> 126

Adjust settings for each input source <Option menu>

– Adjust bass and treble levels <Tone Control> 60
– Enable low-volume background music <Adaptive DRC> 60
– Enjoying more spatial sound fields <CINEMA DSP 3D Mode> 60
– Adjust the vertical position of dialogues <Dialogue Lift> 60
– Select the 5.1-channel signal playback method <Extended Surround> 60
– Adjust the volume of input sources <Volume Trim> 61
– Selecting a video adjustment preset <Video Adjustment> 61
– Selecting audio input jacks <Audio Select> 61
– Shuffle or repeat playback <Shuffle/Repeat> 61
– Connect / Disconnect Bluetooth component to this unit <Connect/Disconnect> 61
– Pairing Bluetooth component with this unit <Pairing> 61

Part names and functions

Front panel

① **MAIN ZONE ⏻ (Power)**
Switches this unit between on and standby mode.

② **HDMI Through/iPod Charge indicator**
Lights up in any of the following cases while the unit is in standby mode.
- When the Standby Through function is enabled and audio/video from an external component connected with HDMI is output to a TV during standby mode (☞p. 120).
- When an iPod/iPhone, which is placed in the Universal Dock for iPod, is charging while the unit is in standby mode (☞p. 100).
  This indicator also lights up when the Yamaha Wireless System for iPod is connected to this unit (☞p. 92).

③ **Front panel display**
Displays information on this unit (☞p. 11).

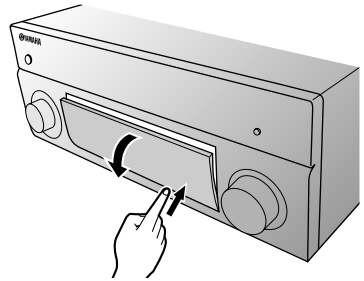
④ **PURE DIRECT**
Switches this unit to Pure Direct Mode (☞p. 53).

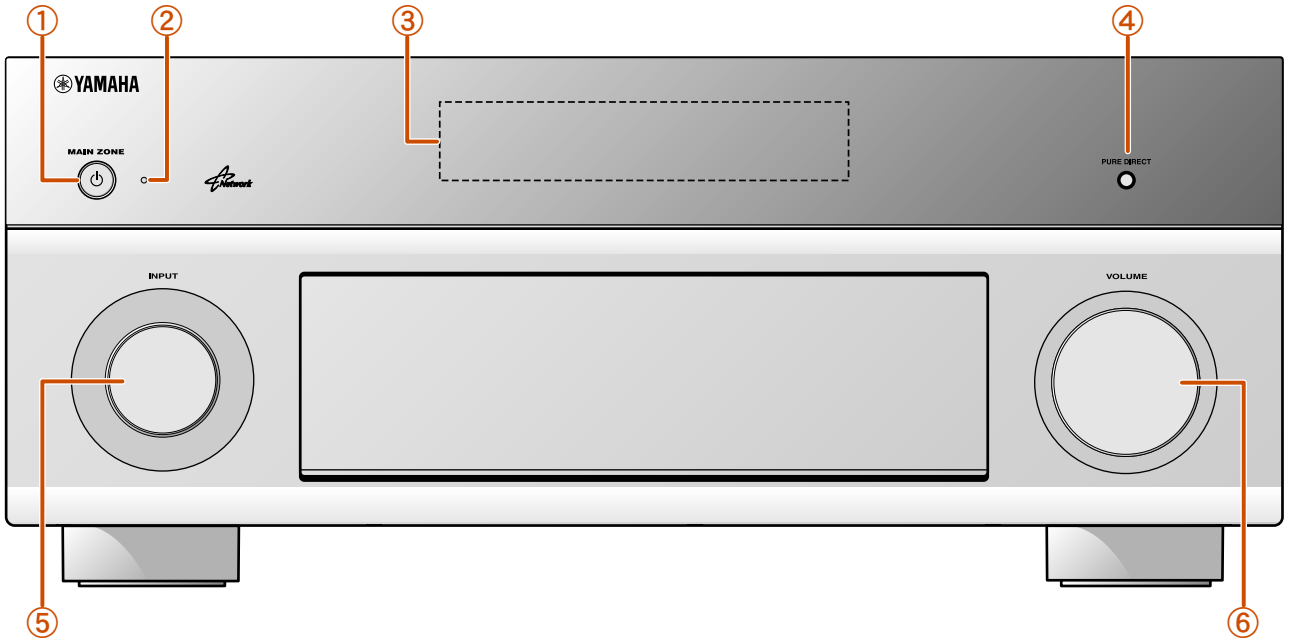
⑤ **INPUT selector**
Selects an input source from which to playback. Rotate this selector to cycle through the input sources in order.

⑥ **VOLUME**
Adjusts the volume level.

■ Opening and closing the front panel door

To use controls or jacks behind the front panel door, gently press the bottom of the door to open it. Keep the door closed when not using controls or jacks behind the front panel door.





Continues to the next page

Front panel with the cover opened

⑦ **ON SCREEN**
Turns on and off the ON SCREEN menu.

⑧ **OPTION**
Turns on and off the Option menu (☞p. 58).

⑨ **TONE/BALANCE**
Adjusts high-frequency/low-frequency output of speakers/headphones in each zone (☞p. 49, p. 149).
Adjusts the balance of the volume of the left and right channels in Zone2 or Zone3 (☞p. 149).

⑩ **STRAIGHT**
Changes a sound program to straight decoding mode (☞p. 52).

⑪ **PROGRAM ◅ / ▻**
Selects a sound program (☞p. 51). Press the left or right key repeatedly to cycle through sound programs.

⑫ **SCENE**
Switches the input source, the sound program, and the HDMI OUT with a single button (☞p. 50, p. 102). When this unit is in standby mode, press this key to switch on.

⑬ **MULTI ZONE**
ZONE2
Switches to enable/disable the audio and video output to Zone2 (☞p. 122, p. 147).
ZONE3
Switches to enable/disable the audio and video output to Zone3 (☞p. 122, p. 148).
ZONE CONTROLS
Switches to Zone2 or Zone3 operation mode. This unit, or its remote control, can be used to select input sources or adjust volume for an external amplifier in another room or the built-in amplifier for speakers in another room (☞p. 149).

⑭ **INFO**
Changes the information displayed on the front panel display (☞p. 11).

⑮ **MEMORY**
Registers FM/AM stations as preset stations (☞p. 63) or SIRIUS channels as preset channels (☞p. 72). 1

⑯ **FM/AM (CATEGORY ◅ / ▻)**
Sets the FM/AM tuner band to FM or AM (☞p. 63). 1
Selects a channel category for a SIRIUS (☞p. 72).

⑰ **PRESET 〈 / 〉**
Selects an FM/AM preset station (☞p. 64) or a SIRIUS preset channel (☞p. 73). 1

⑱ **Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷, ENTER, RETURN**

Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷	Select menu items and change settings when menus, etc., are displayed.
ENTER	Confirms a selected item.
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen when menus are displayed, or close the menu.

⑲ **USB port**
For connecting a USB memory device or portable USB audio player (☞p. 39).

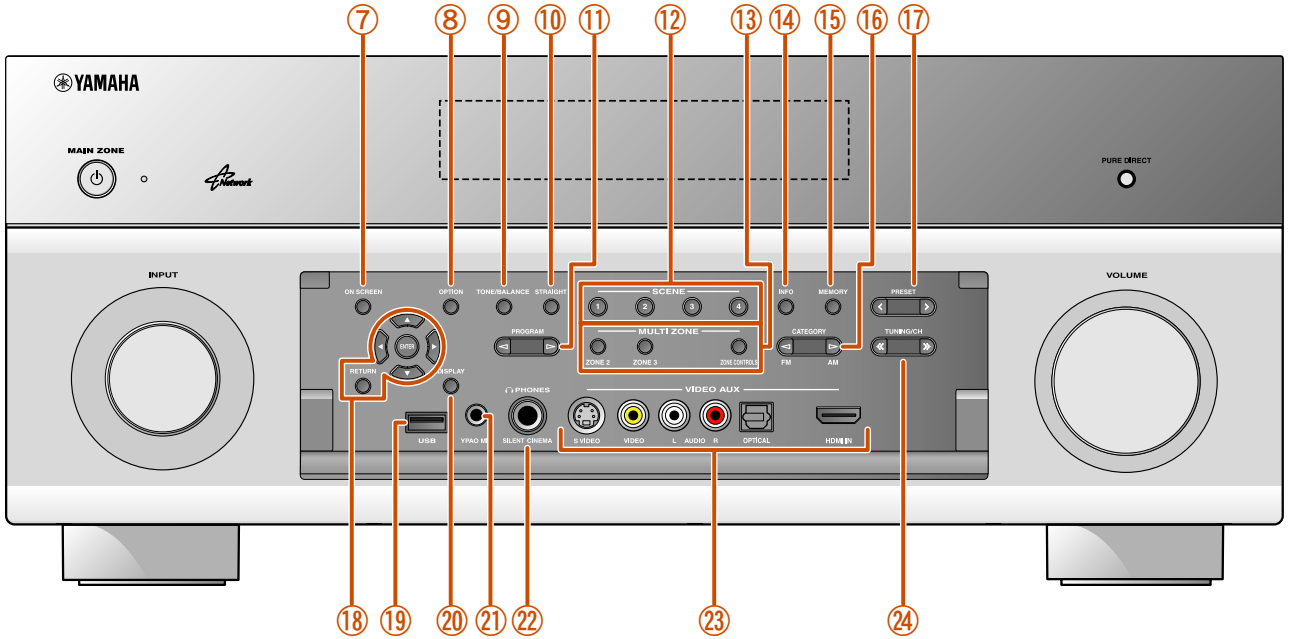
⑳ **DISPLAY**
Switches the display between the Now Playing view and the Browse view.

㉑ **YPAO MIC jack**
Connect the supplied YPAO microphone and adjust the speaker balance automatically (☞p. 41).

㉒ **PHONES jack**
For plugging headphones in. Sound effects applied during playback can also be heard through the headphones.

㉓ **VIDEO AUX jacks**
For connecting game consoles to this unit temporarily (☞p. 36).

㉔ **TUNING/CH 〈〈 / 〉〉**
Changes FM/AM tuner frequencies (☞p. 63) or SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels (☞p. 72). 1



1 : Usable when you have selected TUNER or SIRIUS input.

Rear panel

① **PHONO jacks**
For connecting a turntable (☞p. 35).

② **DOCK jack**
For connecting an optional Universal Dock for iPod (such as YDS-12), Wireless System for iPod (YID-W10), or Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver (YBA-10) (☞p. 90, p. 92, p. 94).

③ **NETWORK port**
For connecting to a network (☞p. 38).

④ **HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks**
For connecting an HDMI - compatible TV to output audio/video signals (☞p. 29).

⑤ **MON.OUT/ZONE OUT jacks (S-VIDEO/VIDEO jacks)**
For connecting a TV capable of receiving video input, and outputting video signals to it (☞p. 29, p. 30).

⑥ **COMPONENT VIDEO jacks**
For connecting external components that support component video output for video signal reception (☞p. 32).

⑦ **HDMI input jacks**
For connecting external components equipped with HDMI-compatible outputs to receive audio/video signals (☞p. 31).

⑧ **MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT jacks (COMPONENT VIDEO jacks)**
For connecting TV that are compatible with component video signals, using three cables to output video signal (☞p. 29).

⑨ **REMOTE IN/OUT1-2 jacks**
For connecting an external component that supports the remote control function (☞p. 37).

⑩ **TRIGGER OUT 1-2 jack**
For connecting an external component that supports the trigger function to operate it linked with operation of this unit (☞p. 37).

⑪ **RS-232C terminal**
This is a control expansion terminal for custom installation. Consult your dealer for details.

⑫ **SIRIUS jack**
For connecting a SiriusConnect tuner (sold separately) (☞p. 70).

⑬ **AV1-4 jacks**
For connecting to external components equipped with audio/video outputs to receive audio/video signals (☞p. 32).

⑭ **ANTENNA jacks**
For connecting AM and FM antennas (☞p. 40).

⑮ **AV OUT jacks**
For outputting audio/video signals received when analog inputs are selected (☞p. 38).

⑯ **AUDIO1-4 jacks**
For connecting external components equipped with audio outputs to receive audio signals (☞p. 35).

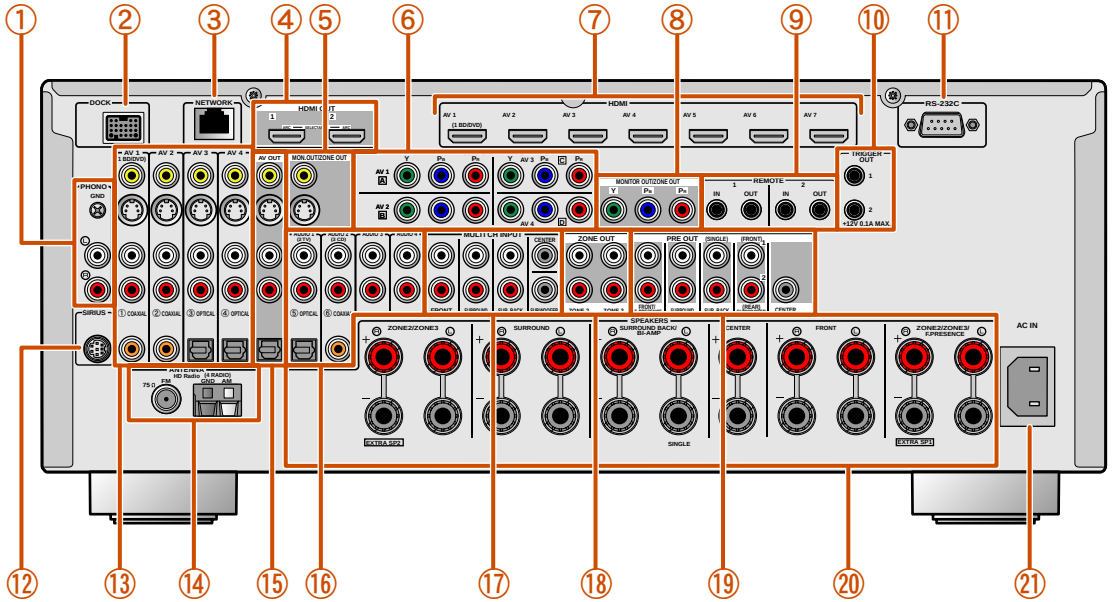
⑰ **MULTI CH INPUT jacks**
For connecting a player that supports a multi-channel output (☞p. 36).

⑱ **ZONE OUT jacks**
Outputs sound of this unit to an external amplifier set in a different room. (☞p. 147).

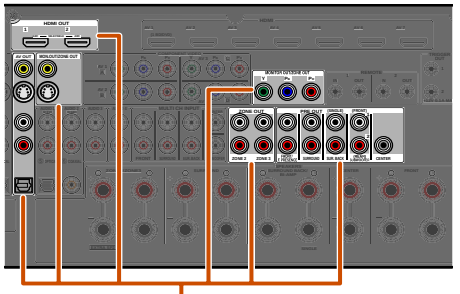
⑲ **PRE OUT terminals**
For connecting a subwoofer with built-in amplifier or an external power amplifier (☞p. 23, p. 26).

⑳ **SPEAKERS terminals**
For connecting the front, center, surround and surround back speakers (☞p. 20). Connect the presence speakers (☞p. 20) or the speakers for Zone2 and Zone3 (☞p. 21) to the EXTRA SP jacks.

㉑ **AC IN**
For connecting the supplied power cable.



Distinguishing the input and output jacks
The area around the audio/video output jacks is marked in white to prevent connection errors. Use these jacks to output audio/video signals to a TV or other external component.



Front panel display

① **Tuner indicator**
Light up according to the status of a received station (☞p. 63).

② **HD indicator**
Lights up when this unit is tuned into the HD Radio station (☞p. 66).

③ **TAG indicator**
Lights up when the selected HD Radio program (or song being played) supports iTunes Tagging (☞p. 67).

④ **ZONE2/ZONE3 indicator**
Lights up when the audio or video output to Zone2 or Zone3 is enabled (☞p. 149).

⑤ **SLEEP indicator**
Blinks when the sleep timer is on (☞p. 13, p. 149).

⑥ **PARTY indicator**
Lights up when the party mode is active (☞p. 122).

⑦ **Multi information display**
Displays a range of information on menu items and settings.

⑧ **VOLUME indicator**
Displays the current volume level.

⑨ **HDMI indicator**
Lights up during normal HDMI communication.

IN indicator
Lights up when this unit detects the external component connected to the HDMI input jack (☞p. 31).

OUT 1/OUT 2 indicators
Indicate which HDMI OUT jack outputs audio/video signals (☞p. 29).

⑩ **ENHANCER indicator**
Lights up when the Compressed Music Enhancer is active (☞p. 53).

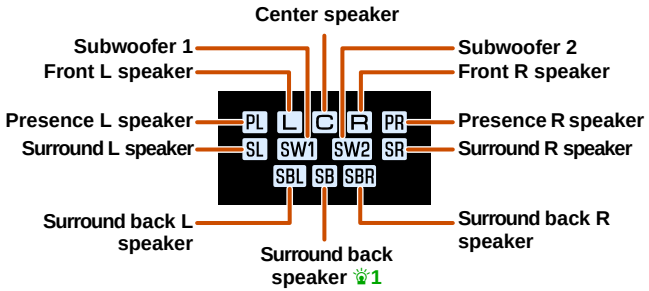
⑪ **CINEMA DSP indicator**
Lights up when a sound field effect that uses CINEMA DSP technology is selected.

⑫ **CINEMA DSP 3D indicator**
Lights up when CINEMA DSP 3D is activated (☞p. 52).

⑬ **Cursor indicators**
Light up if corresponding cursors on the remote control are available for operations.

⑭ **MUTE indicator**
Blinks when audio is muted.

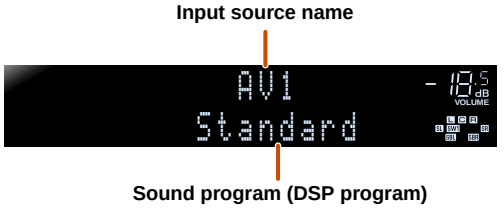
⑮ **Speaker indicators**
Indicate speaker terminals from which signals are output.

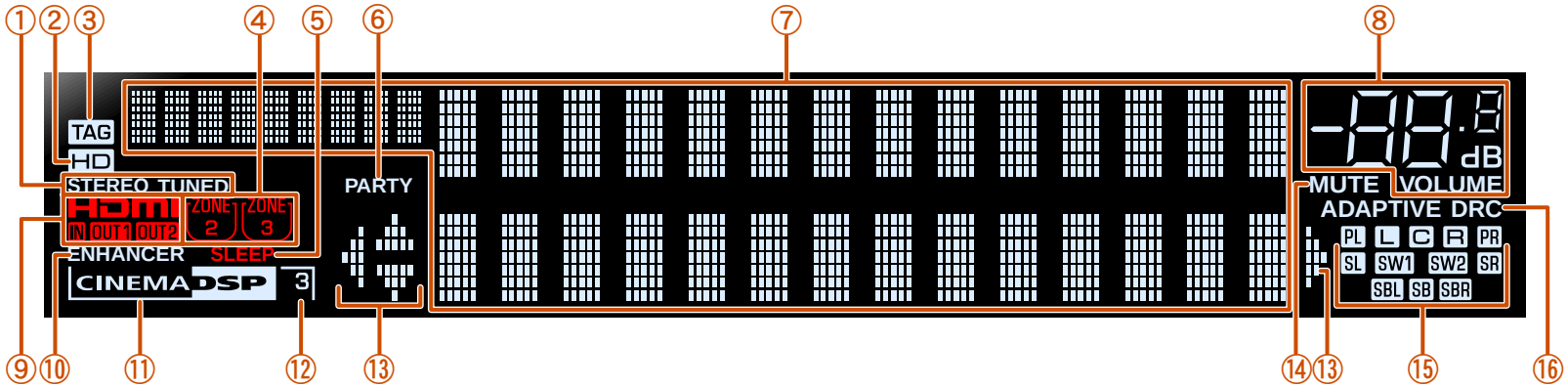


⑯ **ADAPTIVE DRC indicator**
Lights when the adaptive dynamic range control feature is tuned on (☞p. 60).

■ Switching information on the front panel display

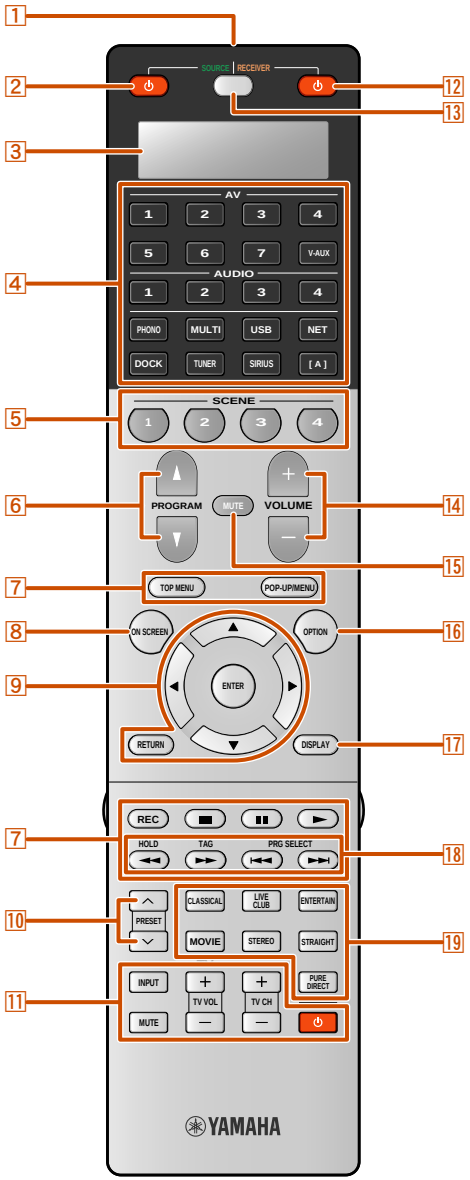
The front panel can display sound programs and surround decoder names as well as the active input source.
Press 21 INFO repeatedly to cycle through displayed informations. ♛2





♛1 : "SB" is displayed when using a 6.1-channel configuration only.
♛2 : During FM/AM reception, the frequency is displayed instead of the input source. During SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals reception, the channel is displayed instead of the input source.

Remote control



1 **Remote control signal transmitter**
Transmits infrared signals.

2 **SOURCE ⏻ (SOURCE Power)**
Switches an external component on and off.

3 **Display window**
Displays remote control information.

4 **Input selector**
Select an input source on this unit from which to playback.

AV1-7	AV1-7 jacks
V-AUX	Front panel VIDEO AUX jacks
AUDIO1-4	AUDIO1-4 jacks
PHONO	PHONO jacks
MULTI	MULTI CH INPUT jacks
USB	A USB storage device connected to the USB port.
NET	Rhapsody service, SIRIUS internet radio, internet radio, a USB connected to the USB port, or a PC connected to the NETWORK port.
DOCK	A Universal Dock for iPod, Wireless System for iPod, or Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver connected to the DOCK jack.
TUNER	FM/AM tuner
SIRIUS	A SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner connected to the SIRIUS jack.
[A]	Changes the external component to operate with the 7 **External component operation keys** without changing inputs. ♛1

5 **SCENE**
Switch the input source and the sound program with a single button (☞p. 50). When this unit is in standby mode, press this key to switch on.

6 **PROGRAM △ / ▽**
Selects a sound program (☞p. 51). Press the up or down key repeatedly to cycle through sound programs.

7 **External component operation keys**
Operate recording, playback, and menu displays etc. for external components (☞p. 129). ♛1

8 **ON SCREEN**
Turns on and off the ON SCREEN menu.

9 **Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷, ENTER, RETURN**

Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷	Select menu items and change settings when menus, etc., are displayed.
ENTER	Confirms a selected item.
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen when menus are displayed, or close the menu.

10 **PRESET ∧ / ∨**
Selects a preset station when the FM/AM tuner or SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner is operated.

11 **TV control keys**
Operate a monitor such as a TV.

12 **RECEIVER ⏻ (RECEIVER Power)**
Switches this unit between on and standby mode.

13 **SOURCE/RECEIVER**
Switches remote control key function to operate this unit or an external component (☞p. 129). Operate an external component when this key glows green, or this unit when this key glows orange.

14 **VOLUME +/-**
Adjust the volume level (☞p. 48).

15 **MUTE**
Turns the mute function of the sound output on and off (☞p. 48).

16 **OPTION**
Turns on and off the Option menu (☞p. 58).

17 **DISPLAY**
Switches the display between the Now Playing view and the Browse view.

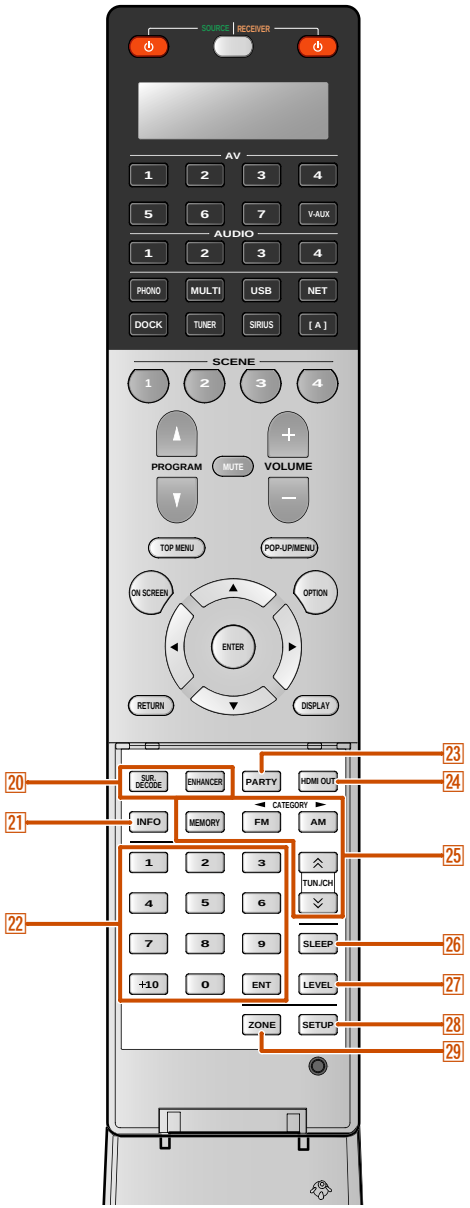
18 **HD Radio / SIRIUS Satellite Radio keys**

HOLD	Remains the current artist name and song title displayed (☞p. 68, p. 74).
TAG	Stores "tag" data to the iPod or internal memory of this unit (☞p. 67).
PRG SELECT	Selects an HD Radio audio program (☞p. 66).

19 **Sound selection keys**
Switch between the current sound field effect (sound program) and the surround decoder (☞p. 51).

♛1 : You can use 7 **External component operation keys** for each input source to operate registered components. Remote control codes must be registered for each input in advance if you want to operate external components (☞p. 131).

Remote control with the cover open



20 Sound selection keys
Switch between the current sound field effect (sound program) and the surround decoder (☞p. 51).

21 INFO
Cycles the information displayed on the front panel display (the name of the currently selected input source, the sound program, the surround decoder, the FM/AM tuner frequency, etc.).

22 Numeric keys
Enter numbers.

23 PARTY
Switches the party mode on and off (☞p. 149).

24 HDMI OUT
Switches the output jack connected to an HDMI compatible TV (☞p. 48).

25 Radio control keys
Operates the FM/AM tuner or SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner. These keys are used when using the tuner input.

MEMORY	Presets radio stations.
FM	Sets the FM/AM tuner band to FM.
AM	Sets the FM/AM tuner band to AM.
(CATEGORY ◁ / ▷)	Selects a category of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel.
TUN./CH ⩓ / ⩔	Changes tuning frequencies or SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels.

26 SLEEP
Switches this unit to standby mode automatically after a specified period of time has elapsed (sleep timer). Press this key repeatedly to set the time for the sleep timer function.

The SLEEP indicator lights up when the sleep timer is on.

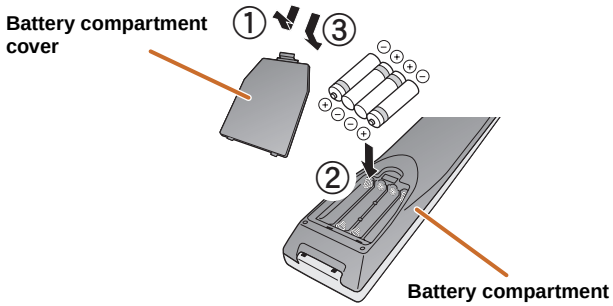
27 LEVEL
Adjusts the output level for each speaker (☞p. 114).

28 SETUP
Setup this remote control (☞p. 130).

29 ZONE
Switches the zone to be operated by the remote control between the Main zone, Zone2, and Zone3 (☞p. 149).

■ Installing batteries in the remote control

When inserting batteries in the remote control, remove the battery compartment cover from the reverse side of the remote control, and insert four AAA batteries into the battery compartment so that they match with the polarity markings (+ and -).



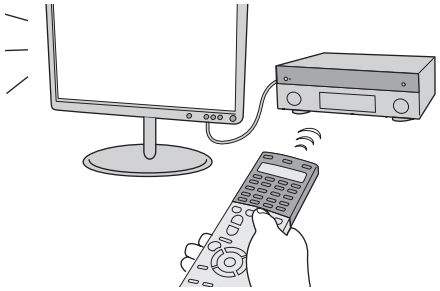
Replace the batteries with new ones if the remote control can only be operated within a narrow range.

NOTE

If there are remote control codes for external components registered to the remote control, removing the batteries for more than 2 minutes, or leaving exhausted batteries in the remote control, may clear the remote control codes. If this should occur, replace the batteries with new ones, and set the remote control codes.

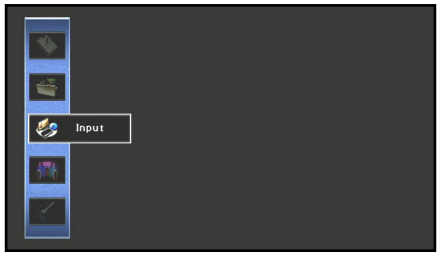
On-screen display

When a TV is connected to this unit, the supplied remote control can be used to specify and verify this unit's settings via menus and options displayed on the TV screen.



The following displays are available in the on-screen display.

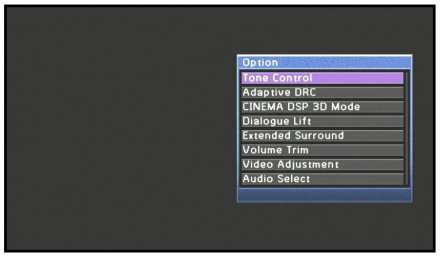
ON SCREEN menu



Press 8**ON SCREEN** to display the ON SCREEN menu.

Detailed settings for this unit can be configured. Use this menu to select desired settings, change their values, or check the current status of this unit.
Refer to "SETUP" (☞p. 98) for details.

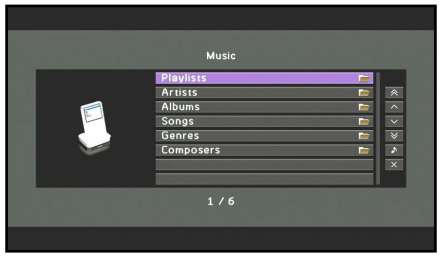
Option menu



Press 16**OPTION** to display the Option menu.

Configure the optional settings for each input source. Settings such as "Tone Control" and "Volume Trim" are applied to this unit regardless of the input source.
Refer to "Configuring settings specific to an individual input source (Option menu)" (☞p. 58) for details.

Content window



Press 4**Input selector** to display the content window.

Includes the Browse view and the Now Playing view. The Now Playing view displays the status of the source from which music is currently played back. Adjust settings for music content from the Browse view.
Refer to "Confirming and operating input sources from the content window" (☞p. 62) for details.

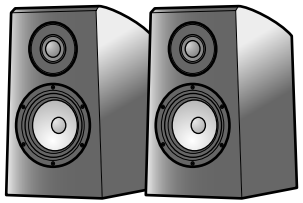
Connecting speakers

This unit uses acoustic field effects and sound decoders to bring you the impact of a real movie theater or concert hall. These effects will be brought to you with ideal speaker positioning and connections in your listening environment.

Speaker channels and functions

Front left and right speakers

The front speakers are used for the front channel sounds (stereo sound) and effect sounds.



E.g.

Front speaker layout:
Place these speakers at an equal distance from the ideal listening position in the front of the room. When using a projector screen, the appropriate top positions of the speakers are about 1/4 of the screen from the bottom.

Center speaker

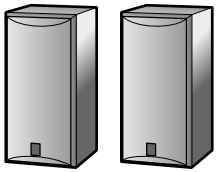
The center speaker is for the center channel sounds (dialogue, vocals, etc.).

E.g.

Center speaker layout:
Place it halfway between the left and right front speakers. When using a TV, place the speaker just above or just under the center of the TV with the front surfaces of the TV and the speaker aligned. When using a screen, place it just under the center of the screen.

Surround left and right speakers

The surround speakers are for effect and vocal sounds while playing back more than 5.1-channel source. When used with no surround back speaker while playing back more than 6.1-channel source (including surround back channel), sound of surround back channel is distributed between the left and right surround speakers.

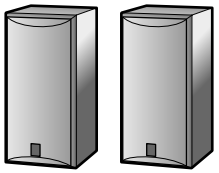


E.g.

Surround speaker layout:
Place the speakers at the rear of the room on the left and right sides facing the listening position. They should be placed between 60 degrees and 80 degrees from the listening position and with the speaker tops at a height of 4.9 – 5.9 ft. (1.5 – 1.8 m) from the floor.

Presence left and right speakers

The presence speakers are used for front effect sounds. When used in combination with the sound programs (☞p. 54), a sound with a richer and more spatial presence is possible.

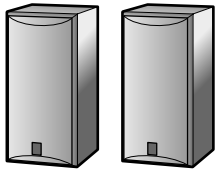


E.g.

Presence speaker layout:
Place the left and right presence speakers 1.6 – 3.3 ft. (0.5 – 1 m) to the outside of the left and right front speakers respectively. The tops of the presence speakers should be 5.9 ft. (1.8 m) above the floor.

Surround back left and right speakers

The surround back speakers are for rear effect sounds while playing back more than 6.1-channel source. When used with only one surround back speaker while playing back more than 7.1-channel source, sound of the left and right surround back channel is mixed and output from a single speaker.



E.g.

Surround back speaker layout:
When used with 7.1ch sound, arrange the left and right speakers towards the listening position, to the rear of the listening position. Arrange the left and right speakers at least 1 ft. (30 cm) apart. The same separation as with the front left and right speakers is optimum. When used with 6.1ch sound, arrange these to the rear of the listening position.

Subwoofer

The subwoofer speaker is used for bass sounds and low-frequency effect (LFE) sounds included in Dolby Digital and DTS. Use a subwoofer that is equipped with built-in amplifier.

E.g.

Subwoofer speaker layout:
Place it to the outside of the front left and right speakers facing slightly inward to reduce echoes from the wall. You can use one or two subwoofers and select the position of subwoofers from “Left + Right,” “Front + Rear” and “Monaural x2” (☞p. 113).

Speaker layout

In addition to the 7.1-channel speaker layout, a variety of speaker configurations can be specified with presence speaker connection, bi-amp connection or the Zone2/Zone3 function.
In addition, this unit is equipped with the “Power Amp Assign” function, which can be used to easily apply the appropriate speaker settings to this unit according to speaker configuration.

Connection of speakers

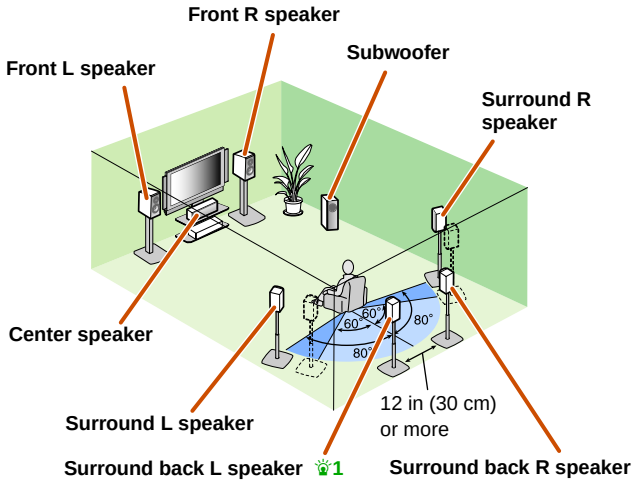
Connect the speakers to the appropriate jacks shown in the table for each speaker layout. Refer to “Connecting speakers and subwoofers” (☞p. 20) for details on connecting speakers.
You can also use two subwoofers by connecting them to both SUBWOOFER1 (FRONT) and SUBWOOFER2 (REAR) jacks. And, you can use the EXTRA SP1 jacks for Zone3 speakers and EXTRA SP2 jacks for Zone2 by setting the assignment with “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112).

Assigning a speaker configuration

A speaker configuration must be assigned to this unit to activate the speakers. Use the Power Amp Assign function to apply the appropriate settings shown in the table for each speaker layout. Refer to “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112) for details on setting.

Enjoying the 7.1 channel audio source

■ 7.1-channel speaker layout (7 speakers + subwoofer)



Audio from a 7.1-channel audio source can be played back with no degradation with this speaker configuration.

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers	**SURROUND BACK jacks**	Surround back L/R speakers
CENTER jack	Center speaker	**SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack**	Subwoofer
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers		

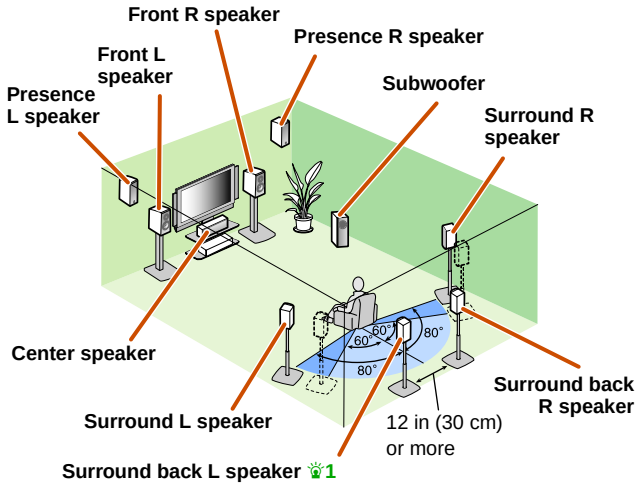
■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch Normal **(Default)**

1 : The sound of surround back channel can also be output from a single surround back speaker. When only one surround back speaker is used, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L (SINGLE) jack and place it directly behind the listening position.

Adding the presence speakers for a richer sound field effect

■ Presence speaker layout (7 speakers + subwoofer + presence speakers)



This unit automatically selects the presence speakers or surround back speakers to output sounds according to the selected sound program.
When the sound program is changed, the speakers that output the sound are switched between the presence speakers and surround back speakers automatically. ♛2

■ Connections of speakers

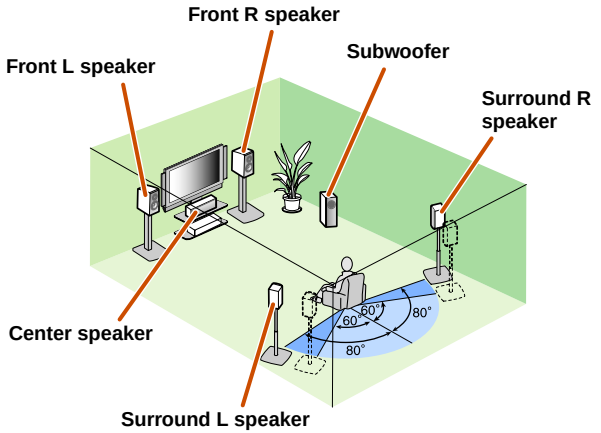
FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers	**SURROUND BACK jacks**	Surround back L/R speakers
CENTER jack	Center speaker	**SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack**	Subwoofer
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers	**EXTRA SP1 jacks**	Presence L/R speakers

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch Normal **(Default)**

Enjoying the audio source without surround back speakers

■ 5.1-channel speaker layout (5 speakers + subwoofer)



This unit can mix 7.1-channel audio source down to 5.1-channel sound. This enables 7.1-channel sound without surround back speakers.

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers	**SURROUND jacks**	Surround L/R speakers
CENTER jack	Center speaker	**SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack**	Subwoofer

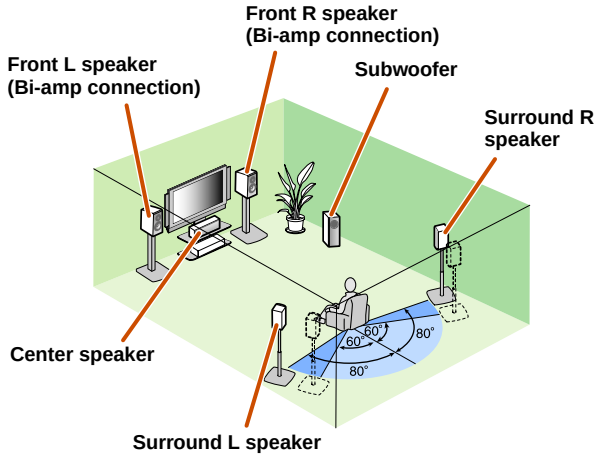
■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch Normal **(Default)**

♛1 : The sound of surround back channel can also be output from a single surround back speaker. When only one surround back speaker is used, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L (SINGLE) jack and place it directly behind the listening position.
♛2 : Sound cannot be output from the surround back speakers when it is output from the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP1 jacks.

Using the front speakers that support bi-amp connections for a high quality sound

■ 5.1-channel speaker layout (Front speakers (Bi-amp) + 3 speakers)



Using the front speakers that support bi-amp connections reproduces a high quality sound.

■ Connections of speakers

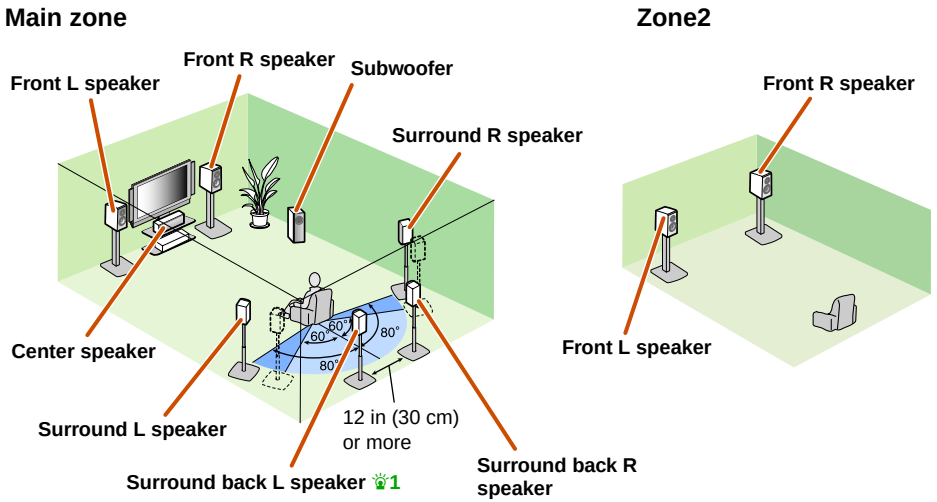
FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)	**SURROUND BACK jacks**	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
CENTER jack	Center speaker	**SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack**	Subwoofer
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers		

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	5ch BI-AMP

Using speakers in two rooms (Zone2 function)

■ 7.1-channel speaker layout + Zone2 (7 speakers (in main zone) + subwoofer (in main zone) + front speakers (in secondary zone))



In addition to the main room, speakers in another room can also be controlled.
When the built-in amplifier assigned to speakers in another room is turned on, sound output automatically switches from the surround back speakers to the speakers in the other room. ♛2

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers	**SURROUND BACK jacks**	Surround back L/R speakers
CENTER jack	Center speaker	**SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack**	Subwoofer
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers	**EXTRA SP1 jacks** ♛3	Zone2 speakers

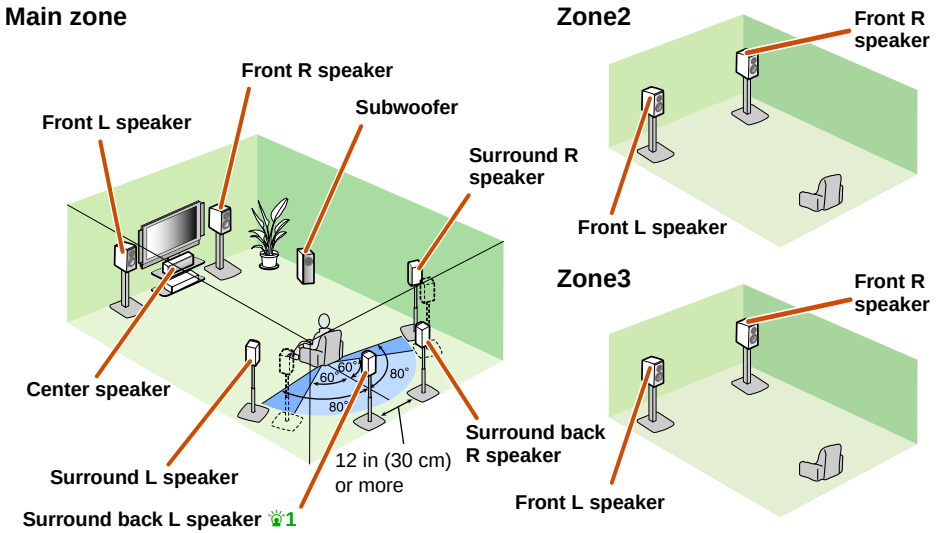
■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch + 1ZONE

♛1 : The sound of surround back channel can also be output from a single surround back speaker. When only one surround back speaker is used, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L (SINGLE) jack and place it directly behind the listening position.
♛2 : Sound cannot be output from the surround back speakers when it is output from the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP1 jacks.
♛3 : EXTRA SP1 jacks can also be assigned to the Zone3 speakers with “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112).

Using speakers in three rooms (Zone2 and Zone3 functions)

■ 7.1-channel speaker layout + Zone2 + Zone3 (7 speakers (in main zone) + subwoofer (in main zone) + front speakers (in secondary and tertiary zones))



In addition to the main room, speakers in other two rooms can also be controlled.
When the built-in amplifier assigned to speakers in another room is turned on, sound output automatically switches from the surround back and/or surround speakers to the speakers in the other rooms. ♛2, ♛3

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers	**SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack**	Subwoofer
CENTER jack	Center speaker	**EXTRA SP1 jacks** ♛4	Zone2 speakers
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers	**EXTRA SP2 jacks** ♛5	Zone3 speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Surround back L/R speakers		

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch + 2ZONE

♛1 : The sound of surround back channel can also be output from a single surround back speaker. When only one surround back speaker is used, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L (SINGLE) jack and place it directly behind the listening position.
♛2 : Sound cannot be output from the surround back speakers when it is output from the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP1 jacks.
♛3 : Sound cannot be output from the surround speakers when it is output from the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP2 jacks.
♛4 : EXTRA SP1 jacks can also be assigned to the Zone3 speakers with “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112).
♛5 : EXTRA SP2 jacks can also be assigned to the Zone2 speakers with “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112).

Connecting speakers and subwoofers

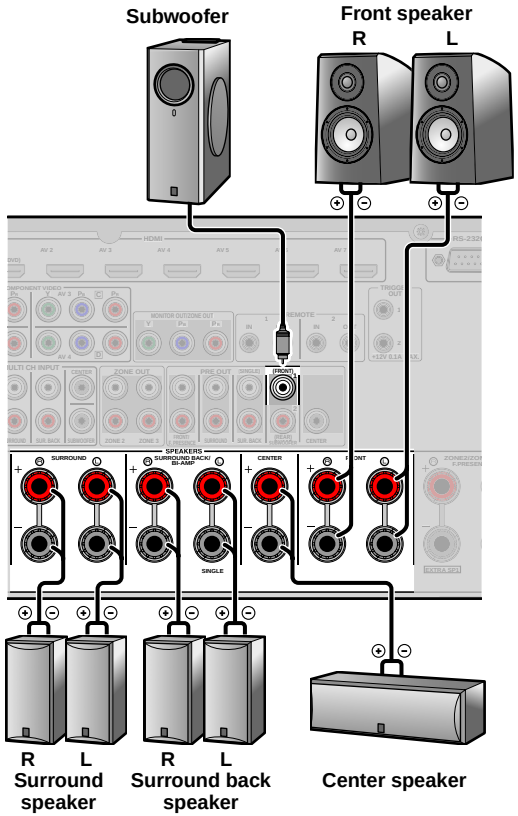
Connect your speakers to their respective terminals on the rear panel.

CAUTION

- Remove the power cable of this unit from the power outlet before connecting the speakers.
- Generally speaker cables consist of two parallel insulated cables. One of these cables is a different color, or has a line running along it, to indicate different polarity. Insert the different colored (or lined) cable into the "+" (positive, red) terminal on this unit and the speakers, and the other cable into the "–" (negative, black) terminal.
- Be careful that the core of the speaker cable does not touch anything or come into contact with the metal areas of this unit. This may damage this unit or the speakers. If the speaker cables short circuit, "CHECK SP WIRES!" will appear on the front panel display when this unit is switched on.

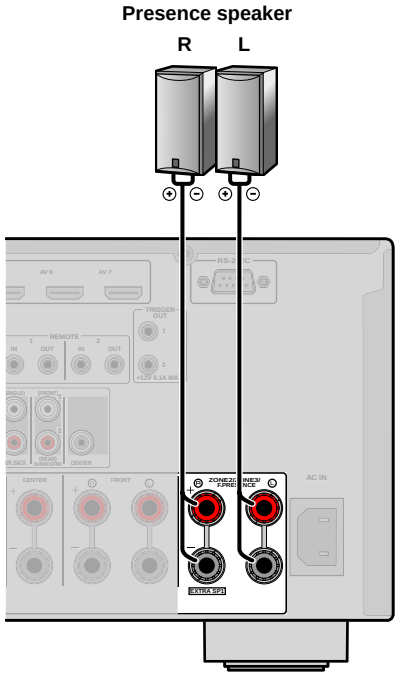
■ Front/Center/Surround/Surround back speaker and Subwoofer connection

When connecting only one surround back speaker, connect the speaker to the SURROUND BACK L (SINGLE) jacks.

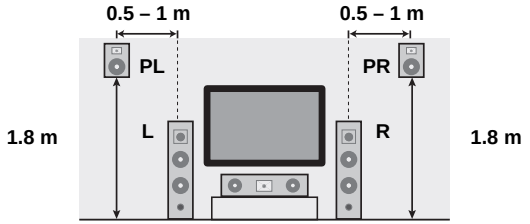


■ Presence speaker connection

When using the presence speakers, connect the speakers to the EXTRA SP1 jacks as shown in the diagram below.



The presence speakers (PL/PR) that output front effect sounds can be connected to this unit. With the sound programs (☞p. 58), sound with a richer and more spatial presence can be created.

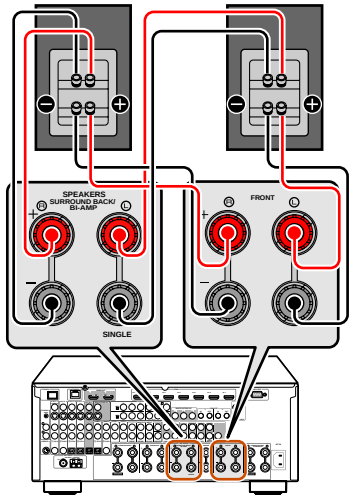


Connection of presence speakers is recommended to take full advantage of the effects of CINEMA DSP sound programs.

Continues to the next page

■ Bi-amp connection

This unit can be connected to speakers that support bi-amp connections. When connecting speakers, connect the FRONT jacks and the SURROUND BACK/BI-AMP jacks as in the diagram below. Configure the bi-amp settings to activate connections.

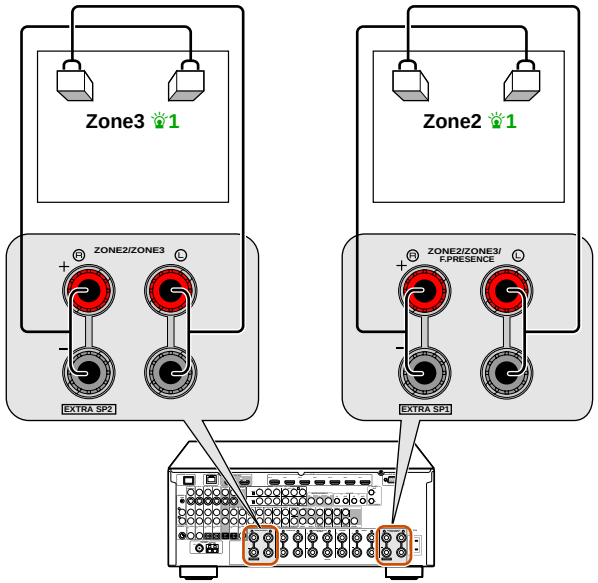


NOTE

Before making bi-amplification connections, remove any brackets or cables that connect a woofer with a tweeter. Refer to the instruction manuals of speakers for details. When not making bi-amplification connections, make sure that the brackets or cables are connected before connecting the speaker cables.

■ Multi-zone audio system using the internal amplifier of this unit

Connect the speakers in the second zone and the third zone to the EXTRA SP1/EXTRA SP2 jacks as in the diagram below.



CAUTION

The EXTRA SP jacks of this unit should not be connected to a Passive Loudspeaker Selector Box or more than one loudspeaker per channel.

Connection to a Passive Loudspeaker Selector Box or multiple speakers per channel could create an abnormally low impedance load resulting in amplifier damage. See this owner's manual for correct usage.

Compliance with minimum speaker impedance information for all channels must be maintained at all times. This information is found on the back panel of this unit.

Changing speaker impedance

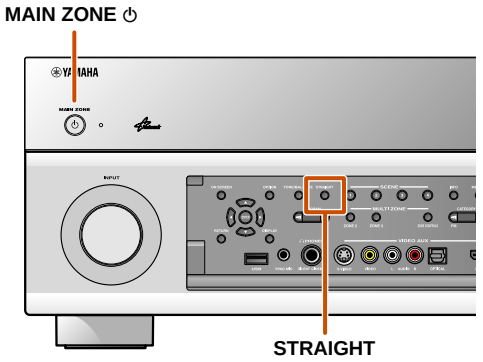
This unit is configured for 8 Ω speakers at factory setting. When connecting to 6 Ω speakers, carry out the following procedure to switch to 6 Ω. When this unit is configured for 6 Ω speakers, 4 Ω speakers can also be used as the front speakers.

1 Switch this unit to the standby mode.

2 Press MAIN ZONE ⏻ while pressing and holding STRAIGHT on the front panel.

Release the keys when "ADVANCED SETUP" is displayed on the front panel display.

After approximately a few seconds, the top menu item is displayed. 2



Continues to the next page

1 : EXTRA SP1 jacks can be assigned to Zone3 and EXTRA SP2 jacks can be assigned to Zone2 by using "Power Amp Assign" (☞p. 112).

2 : Refer to the "Extended functionality that can be configured as needed (Advanced Setup menu)" (☞p. 139) for details on the Advanced Setup menu.

3 **Check that "SPEAKER IMP." is displayed on the front panel.**

4 **Press STRAIGHT repeatedly to select a "6ΩMIN."**

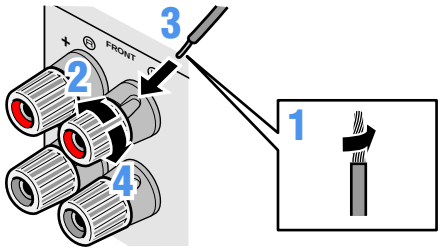
5 **Switch this unit to the standby mode, and then switch it on again.**

The power turns on, when the settings you made has been configured.

Connecting speakers

This type of jack can connect to the following speakers or connection.

- Front L/R speakers
- Center speaker
- Surround L/R speakers
- Surround back L/R speakers
- Presence L/R speakers
- Zone2/Zone3 speakers
- Bi-amp connection (Front L/R speakers)



1 **Remove approximately 0.4 in. (10 mm) of insulation from the ends of the speaker cables, and twist the bare wires of the cables together firmly so that they will not cause short circuits.**

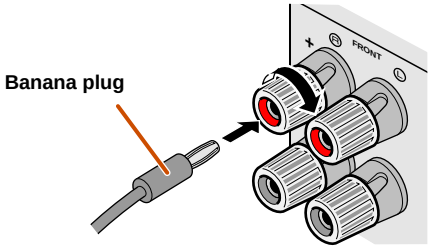
2 **Loosen the speaker terminals.**

3 **Insert the bare wire of the speaker cable into the gap on the side of the terminal.**

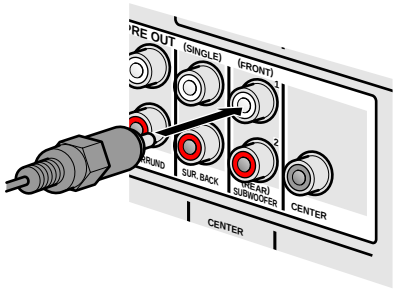
4 **Tighten the terminal.**

Connecting the banana plug

Tighten the knob, and then insert the banana plug into the end of the terminal.



Connecting the subwoofers

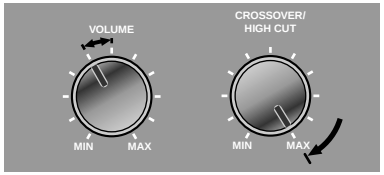


1 **Connect the subwoofer input jack to the SUBWOOFER 1 and/or 2 jack on this unit with an audio pin cable.** 1

2 **Set the subwoofer volume as follows.**

Volume: Set to approximately half volume (or slightly less than half).

Crossover frequency (if available): Set to maximum.



Subwoofer examples

NOTE

After connection, applying this setting to this unit is required to activate all speaker connections. With using “Power Amp Assign” function, you can easily apply the speaker configuration.
Refer to “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112) for details on using “Power Amp Assign” function.

1 : When only one subwoofer is used, connect the subwoofer to the SUBWOOFER1 jack.

Advanced speaker configuration

Speaker layout utilizing an external power amplifier

More speakers can be used by connecting an external amplifier to this unit's PRE OUT jacks. The speaker layout specified using the Power Amp Assign function varies when an external amplifier is connected.

Symbols on the table

- L — Front L speaker
- C — Center speaker
- R — Front R speaker
- SL — Surround L speaker
- SR — Surround R speaker
- SBL — Surround back L speaker
- SBR — Surround back R speaker
- PL — Front presence L speaker
- PR — Front presence R speaker
- Speakers that output sound
- Speakers that output sound depending upon settings
- EA — External amplifier

Connections of speakers

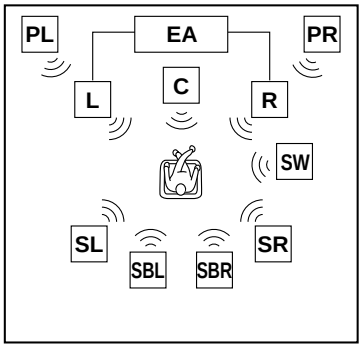
Connect the speakers to the following jacks according to the speaker layout. Refer to "Front/Center/Surround/Surround back speaker and Subwoofer connection" and "Presence speaker connection" for details on connecting speakers (☞p. 20). Refer "Connecting an external amplifier" for details on connecting an external amplifier (☞p. 26).

Assigning a speaker configuration

A speaker configuration must be assigned to this unit to activate speakers and an external amplifier. Use the "Power Amp Assign" function to easily apply the appropriate speaker settings to this unit in accordance with speaker configuration.

Using a hi-fi amplifier to improve front speaker sound quality

■ 9.1-channel speaker layout (7 speakers + subwoofer + external front speakers)



The front speaker channel can be enhanced by using an external amplifier possible of greater output power than this unit.

■ Connections of speakers

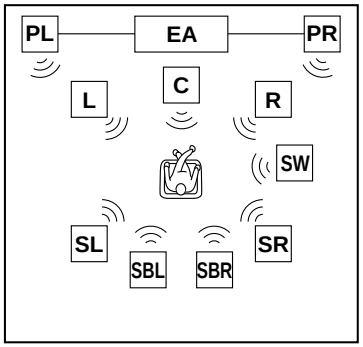
CENTER jack	Center speaker
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Surround back L/R speakers
FRONT (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for front L/R speakers)
SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack ♛1	Subwoofer
EXTRA SP1 jacks	Presence L/R speakers

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch + FRONT

Using an external amplifier to output the presence speaker channel

■ 7.1 + Presence speaker layout (7 speakers + subwoofer + external front presence speakers)



The front presence and surround back speaker channels can be output at the same time.

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers
CENTER jack	Center speaker
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Surround back L/R speakers
F.PRESENCE (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for presence L/R speakers)
SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack ♛1	Subwoofer

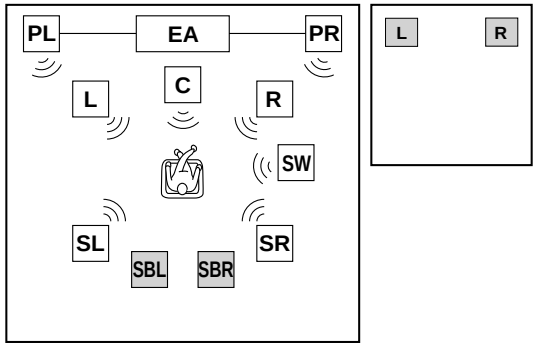
■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch + FPR

♛1 : You can also use two subwoofers by connecting them to both SUBWOOFER1 (FRONT) and SUBWOOFER2 (REAR) jacks.

Using the presence speakers in the main room and speakers in another room

■ 9-1-channel speaker layout (7 speakers + subwoofer + external presence speakers + front speakers (in secondary zone))



The presence speakers in the main room can be used while the front speakers in another room are used. ♛1

■ Connections of speakers

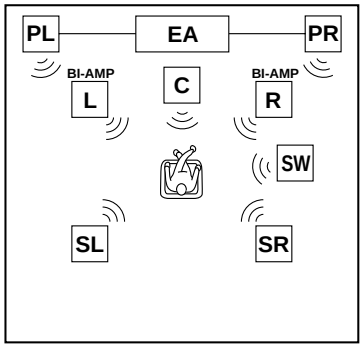
FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers
CENTER jack	Center speaker
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Surround back L/R speakers
EXTRA SP1 jacks ♛2	Zone2 speakers
F.PRESENCE (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for presence L/R speakers)
SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack ♛3	Subwoofer

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	7ch + FPR + 1ZONE

Using front speakers that support bi-amp connection and front presence speakers

■ 7.1-channel speaker layout (Front speaker (Bi-amp) + 3 speakers + subwoofer + external front presence speakers)



A richer sound field can be created with the simultaneous use of front speakers that support bi-amp connection and front presence speakers.

■ Connections of speakers

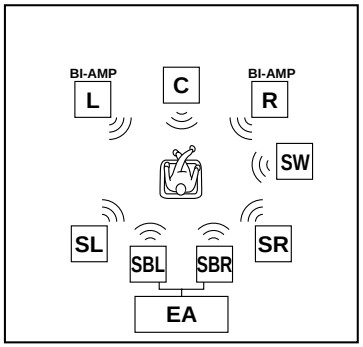
FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
CENTER jack	Center speaker
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
F.PRESENCE (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for presence L/R speakers)
SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack ♛3	Subwoofer

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	5ch BI-AMP + FPR

Using front speakers that support bi-amp connection and surround back speakers

■ 7.1-channel speaker layout (Front speaker (Bi-amp) + 3 speakers + subwoofer + external surround back speakers)



Connecting surround back speakers to an external amplifier enables simultaneous use of front speakers that support bi-amp connection and surround back speakers.

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
CENTER jack	Center speaker
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
SUR.BACK (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for surround back L/R speakers)
SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack ♛3	Subwoofer

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

Power Amp Assign	5ch BI-AMP + SB

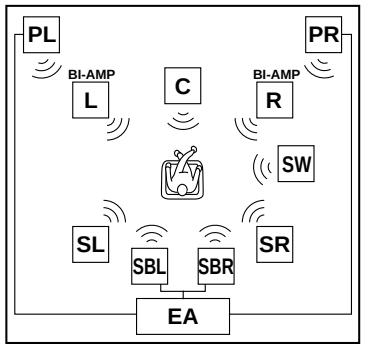
♛1 : Sound cannot be output from the surround back speakers when it is output from speakers connected to the EXTRA SP1 jacks.

♛2 : EXTRA SP1 jacks can also be assigned to the Zone3 speakers with “Power Amp Assign” (☞p. 112).

♛3 : You can also use two subwoofers by connecting them to both SUBWOOFER1 (FRONT) and SUBWOOFER2 (REAR) jacks.

Using front speakers that support bi-amp connection, surround back speakers and front presence speakers

■ 9.1-channel speaker layout (Front speaker (Bi-amp) + 3 speakers + subwoofer + external surround back speakers + external front presence speakers)



When an external amplifier is used, front presence speakers and surround back speakers can be used simultaneously with front speakers that support bi-amp connection. 1

■ Connections of speakers

FRONT jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
CENTER jack	Center speaker
SURROUND jacks	Surround L/R speakers
SURROUND BACK jacks	Front L/R speakers (bi-amp)
SUR.BACK (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for surround back L/R speakers)
F.PRESENCE (PRE OUT) jacks	External amplifier (for presence L/R speakers)
SUBWOOFER (PRE OUT) jack 2	Subwoofer

■ Assigning a speaker configuration

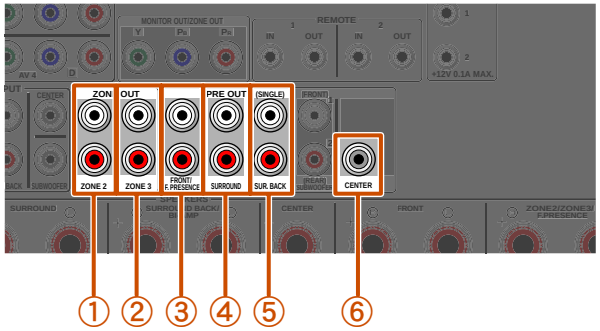
Power Amp Assign	5ch BI-AMP + SB + FPR

Connecting an external amplifier

The same channel signals are output from the jacks of the PRE OUT and ZONE OUT terminals as from their corresponding SPEAKERS terminals. When connecting an external power amplifier (pre-main amplifier) to enhance speaker output, connect the input terminals of the power amplifier to the PRE OUT and ZONE OUT terminals of this unit.

NOTES

- When a component is connected to the PRE OUT and ZONE OUT terminals, do not connect speakers to the SPEAKERS terminals corresponding to those PRE OUT and ZONE OUT terminals.
- When an external amplifier equipped with a volume adjustment function is connected, a sufficient volume level may not be achieved.
  Use of the following components is recommended.
  – An amplifier with no volume adjustment function.
  – An integrated amplifier equipped with a function that bypasses volume circuitry, such as the Yamaha A-S2000 with MAIN IN input.



① **ZONE2 jacks**
Zone2 channel output jacks.

② **ZONE3 jacks**
Zone3 channel output jacks.

③ **FRONT/F.PRESENCE (PRE OUT) jacks**
Front channel or front presence channel output jacks.

④ **SURROUND (PRE OUT) jacks**
Surround channel output jacks.

⑤ **SUR. BACK (PRE OUT) jacks**
Surround back output jacks. When you only connect one external amplifier for the surround back channel, connect it to the SUR. BACK (SINGLE) jack.

⑥ **CENTER (PRE OUT) jack**
Center channel output jack.

1 : An external amplifier equipped with four channels is required for this speaker layout.
2 : You can also use two subwoofers by connecting them to both SUBWOOFER1 (FRONT) and SUBWOOFER2 (REAR) jacks.

Connecting external components

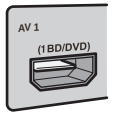
Jacks and cables

This unit is equipped with the following input/output jacks. Use jacks and cables appropriate for components that you are going to connect.

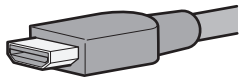
Audio/Video jacks

HDMI jacks

Digital video and digital sound are transmitted through a single jack.
Only use an HDMI cable.



HDMI cable

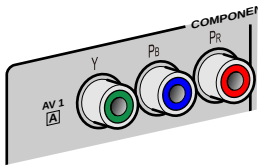


- Use a 19-pin HDMI cable with the HDMI logo.
- We recommend using a cable less than 16.4 ft. (5.0 m) long to prevent signal quality degradation.
- When a TV that supports HDMI functions and Audio Return Channel function is connected, audio output from the TV can be input to this unit (☞p. 145).
- When a player and TV that support the 3D video format are connected to this unit, 3D content can be played back.
- If you connect this unit to a component that has a DVI jack, an HDMI/DVI-D cable is required.

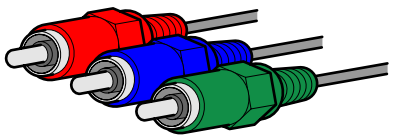
Analog video jacks

COMPONENT VIDEO jacks

The signal is separated into three components:
luminance (Y), chrominance blue (P_B), and chrominance red (P_R).
Use component video pin cables with three plugs.



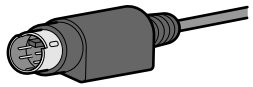
Component video pin cable



S-VIDEO jacks

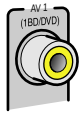
To transmit S-video signals that include luminance (Y) and chrominance (C) components.
Use S-video cables.

S-video cable

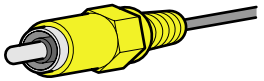


VIDEO jacks

These jacks transmit conventional analog video signals.
Use video pin cables.



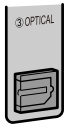
Video pin cable



Audio jacks

OPTICAL jacks

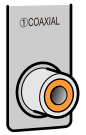
These jacks transmit optical digital audio signals.
Use fiber-optic cables for optical digital audio signals.



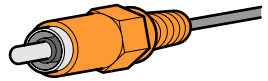
Digital audio fiber-optic cable

COAXIAL jacks

These jacks transmit coaxial digital audio signals.
Use pin cables for digital audio signals.

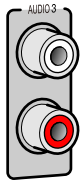


Digital audio pin cable

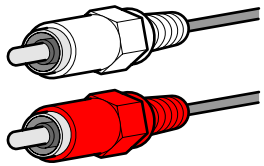


AUDIO jacks

These jacks transmit conventional analog audio signals.
Use stereo pin cables, connecting the red plug to the red R jack, and the white plug to the white L jack.

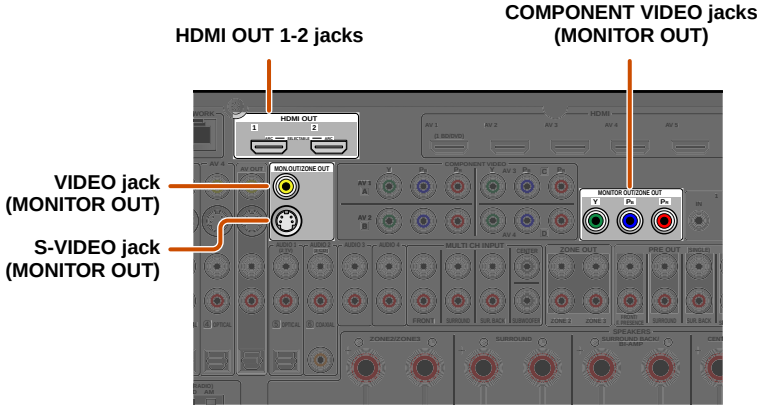


Stereo pin cable



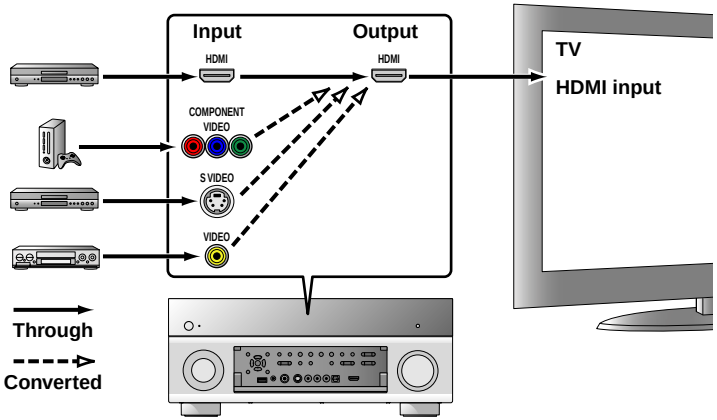
Connecting a TV monitor

This unit is equipped with the following four types of output jack for connection to a TV. HDMI OUT 1-2, COMPONENT VIDEO, S-VIDEO or VIDEO. Select the proper connection according to the input signal format supported by your TV.



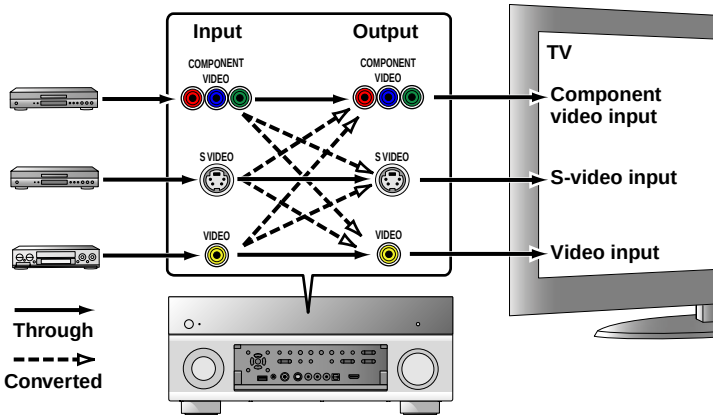
When connecting to an HDMI compatible TV

Video signal such as component video, S-video and video received by this unit is converted to HDMI and output to the TV. Just select HDMI input on the TV to view video from any external source connected to this unit. ♛1



When connecting to a non-HDMI compatible TV

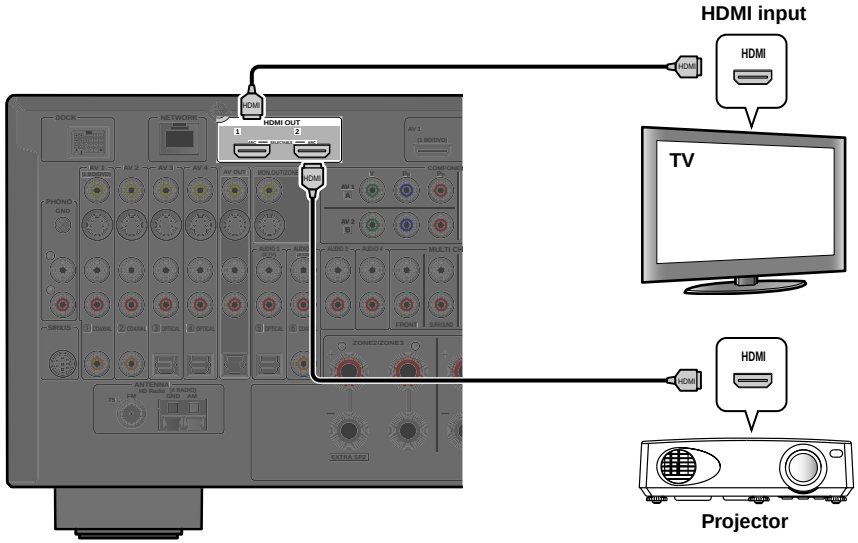
Connect to the TV using the same type of connection that you used to connect to the external component, and change the inputs on your TV to match that of the external component you are using for playback. If the external component and TV are equipped with different types of analog video jacks, this unit will convert the component video, S-video or video signal to component video, S-video or video signal, according to the type of video input jacks used by the TV. ♛2, ♛3



♛1 : You can change the resolution and aspect ratio when converting to HDMI to suit your requirements (☞p. 117).
♛2 : Set “Analog to Analog Conversion” to “On” (☞p. 117).
♛3 : Analog to analog conversion is available only for 480i/576i-resolution video signal.

Connecting an HDMI video monitor

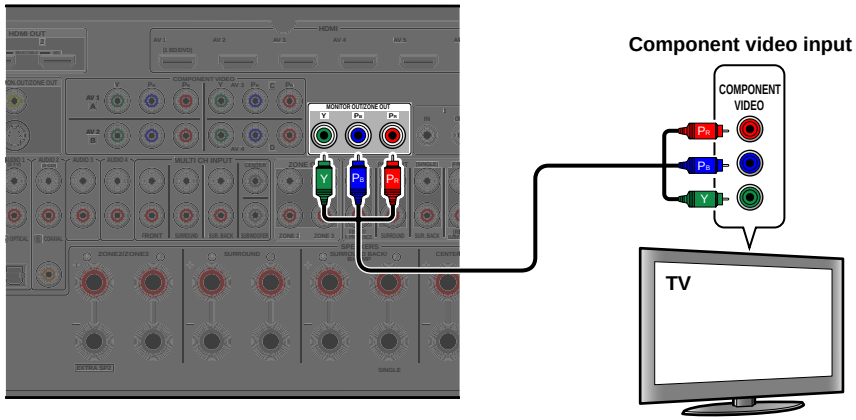
Connect the HDMI cable to one of the HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks.



- Use a 19-pin HDMI cable with the HDMI logo.
- We recommend using a cable less than 16.4 ft. (5.0 m) long to prevent signal quality degradation.
- When a TV that supports the HDMI function and Audio Return Channel function is connected, audio output from the TV can be input to this unit (☞p. 145).
- When a player and TV that support the 3D video format are connected to this unit, 3D content can be played back.
- This unit is equipped with HDMI OUT 1 and 2 jacks. The active HDMI OUT jack(s) can be selected (☞p. 48). The active HDMI OUT jack(s) can be registered with the SCENE function (☞p. 102).

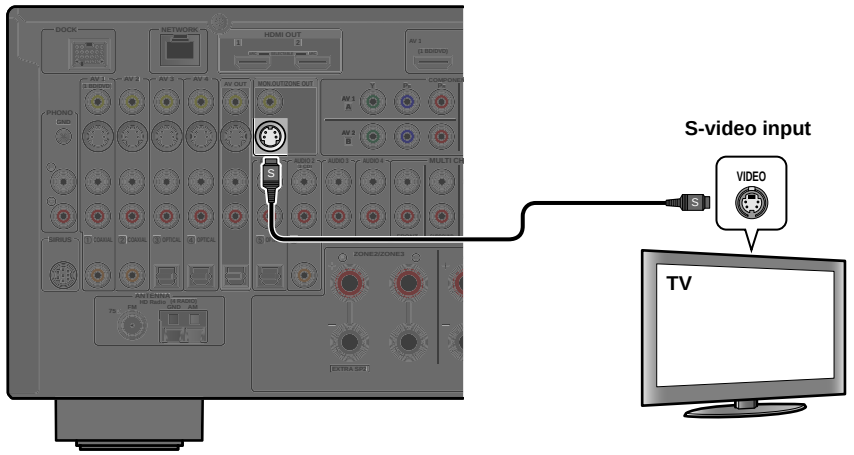
Connecting a component video monitor 1

Connect the component video cable to the COMPONENT VIDEO (MONITOR OUT) jacks.



Connecting a S-video monitor 1

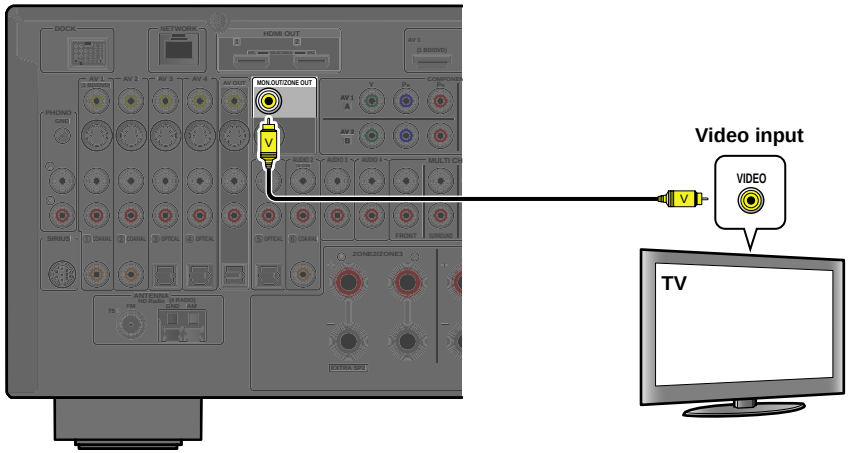
Connect the S-video cable to the S-VIDEO (MONITOR OUT) jack.



1 : The video signal for the COMPONENT VIDEO or S-VIDEO jacks is converted and output from HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks. When connecting to a TV via the HDMI jack, you do not need to use these jacks.

Connecting a video monitor 1

Connect the video pin cable to the VIDEO (MONITOR OUT) jack.



■ Listening to TV audio

To transmit sound from the TV to this unit, connect as followings according to the TV:

When using a TV that supports the Audio Return Channel function and HDMI Control function

When your TV supports both HDMI Control (e.g., Panasonic VIERA Link) and Audio Return Channel functions, audio/video output from the unit to the TV and audio output from the TV to the unit are possible using a single HDMI cable.
The input source is switched automatically to match operations carried out on the TV, and that makes TV sound control easier to use.
For the connections and settings, refer to “Single HDMI cable input to TV audio with Audio Return Channel function” (☞p. 145).

When using a TV that supports the HDMI Control functions

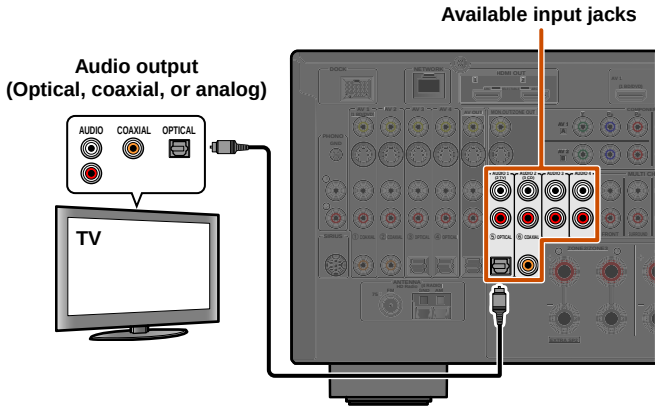
When using a TV that supports HDMI Control functions (e.g., Panasonic VIERA Link), if HDMI Control functions are enabled on the unit, then input source can be switched automatically to match operations carried out on the TV.
For the connections and settings, refer to “Switching the input source on this unit automatically when listening to TV audio” (☞p. 144).

When using other TVs

To transmit sound from the TV to this unit, connect the TV’s audio output to the AUDIO1-4 jacks.

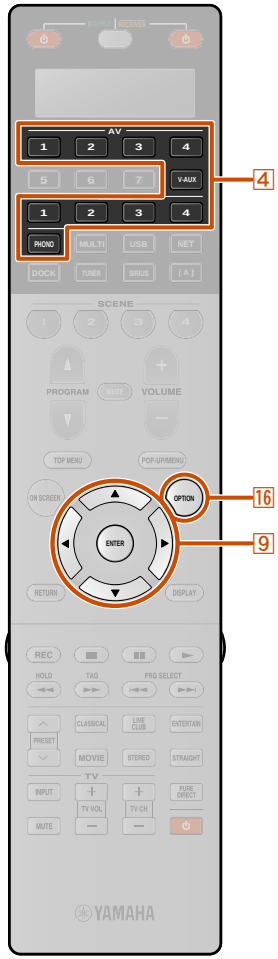
TV audio output	Connection
Optical digital audio output	Connect to the OPTICAL jack of the AUDIO1 with a fiber-optic cable.
Coaxial digital audio output	Connect to the COAXIAL jack of the AUDIO2 with a digital audio pin cable.
Analog stereo output	Connect to one of the AUDIO1-4 with a stereo pin cable.

Select the input source connected via TV’s audio output jack to enjoy the TV sound.
If the TV supports optical digital audio output, we recommend that you connect the TV audio output to the receiver’s AUDIO1 jack.
Connecting to AUDIO1 allows you to switch the input source to AUDIO1 with just a single key operation using the SCENE function (☞p. 50).



You can control your TV using the receiver’s remote control by entering the TV’s remote control code (☞p. 131).

1 : The video signal for the VIDEO jacks is converted and output from HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks. When connecting to a TV via the HDMI jack, you do not need to use these jacks.



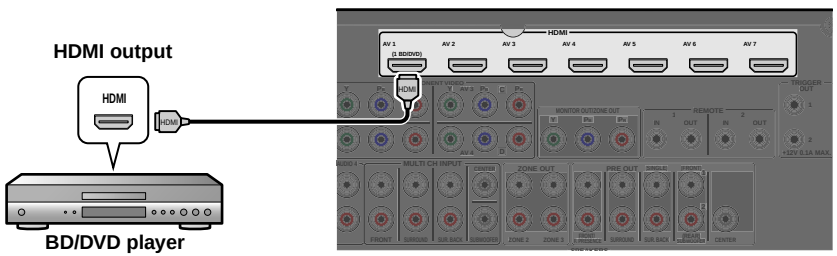
Connecting BD/DVD players and other devices

This unit has the following input jacks. Connect them to the appropriate output jacks on the playback devices such as BD/DVD players.

Input jack	Video input	Audio input
AV1 1	HDMI/Component video/S-video/Video	HDMI/Coaxial digital/Analog (Stereo)
AV2 1	HDMI/Component video/S-video/Video	HDMI/Coaxial digital/Analog (Stereo)
AV3 1	HDMI/Component video/S-video/Video	HDMI/Optical digital/Analog (Stereo)
AV4 1	HDMI/Component video/S-video/Video	HDMI/Optical digital/Analog (Stereo)
AV5	HDMI	HDMI
AV6	HDMI	HDMI
AV7	HDMI	HDMI
AUDIO1	—	Optical digital/Analog (Stereo)
AUDIO2	—	Coaxial digital/Analog (Stereo)
AUDIO3	—	Analog (Stereo)
AUDIO4	—	Analog (Stereo)
VIDEO AUX	HDMI/S-video/Video	HDMI/Optical digital/Analog (Stereo)
PHONO	—	Analog (for turntable connection only)

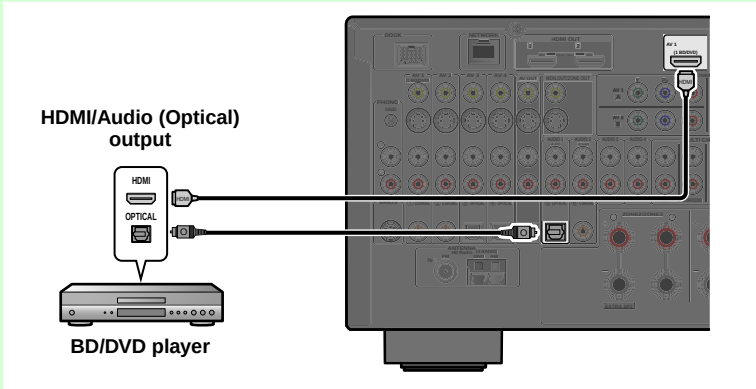
Connecting BD/DVD players and other devices with HDMI cable

Connect the device with an HDMI cable to one of the HDMI jacks of the AV1-7. The HDMI IN jack of the VIDEO AUX on the front panel can also be used.
Select the input source (AV1-7 or V-AUX) that the playback device is connected to for playback.



■ Receiving video signals from the HDMI jack and audio signals from jacks other than HDMI

This unit can use the AV1-4 or AUDIO1-4 input jacks to receive audio signals from other input jacks.
For example, if a playback device cannot produce audio signals from an HDMI jack, use the following method to change the audio input.



1 Press 4Input selector to choose an input source (AV1-4, V-AUX, AUDIO1-4, or PHONO).

2 Press 16OPTION to enter the Option menu.

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to choose “Audio Select” and press 9ENTER.

4 Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to choose an audio input jack and press 9ENTER.

5 Once setup is complete, press 16OPTION to close the Option menu.

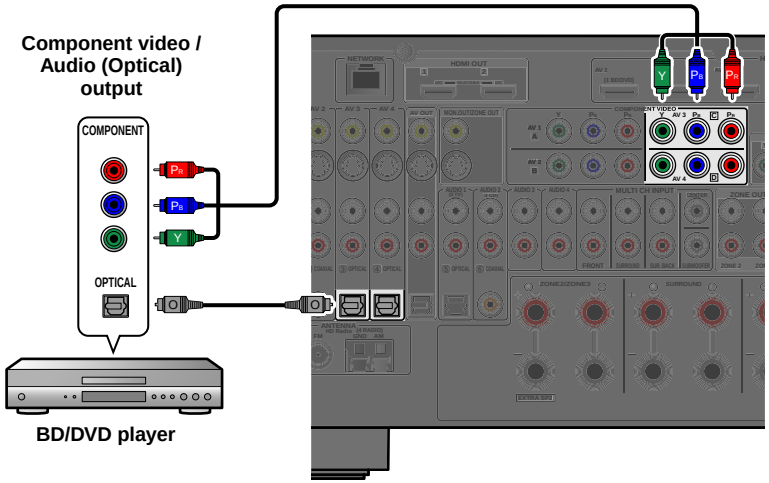
1 : Coaxial digital and optical digital jack function can be assigned to other AV jacks using “Input Assignment.” Refer to “Input Assignment” for details (☞p. 124).

Connecting BD/DVD players and other devices with component video cables

Connect the device with a component video cable to one of the AV1-4 input jacks.

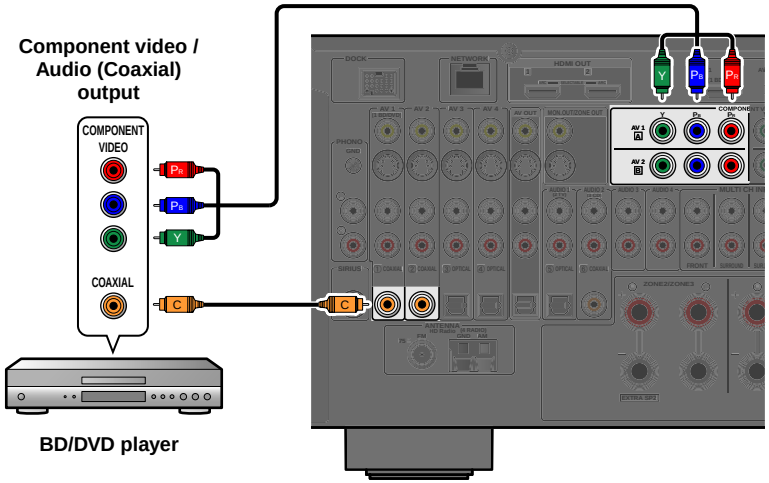
Using optical digital audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV3 or AV4 jacks.



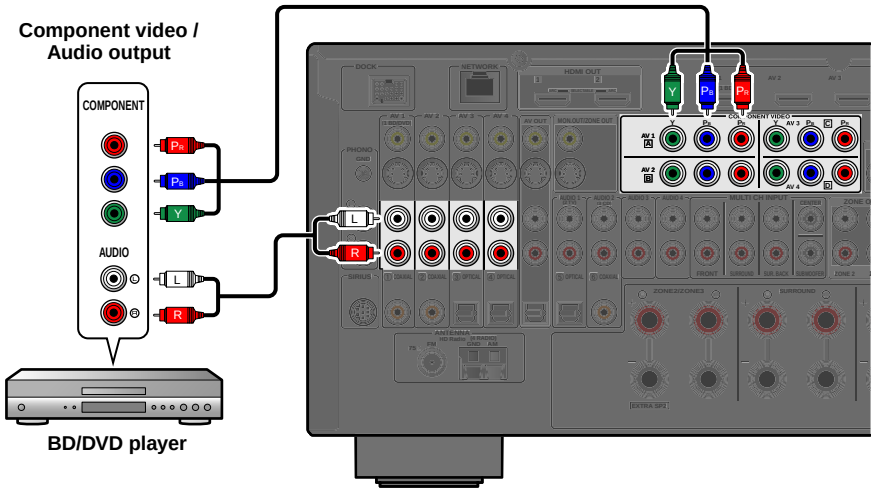
Using coaxial digital audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV1 or AV2 jacks.



Using analog stereo audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV1, AV2, AV3, or AV4 jacks.

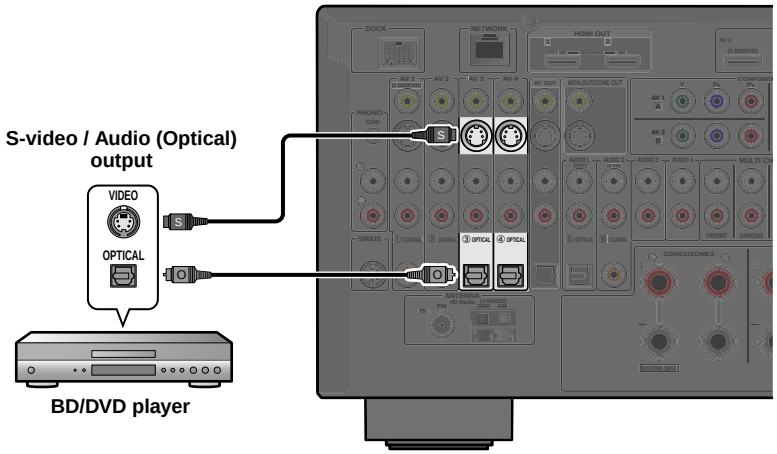


Connecting BD/DVD players and other devices with S-video cables

Connect the playback device with a S-video cable to one of the AV1-4 input jacks.

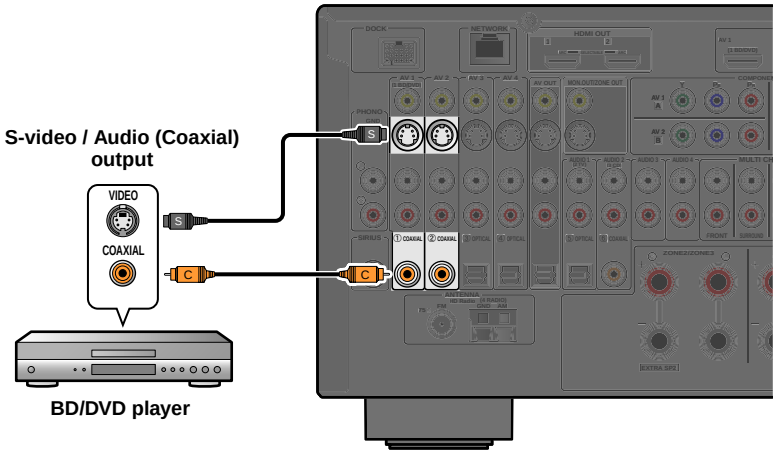
Using optical digital audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV3 or AV4 jacks.



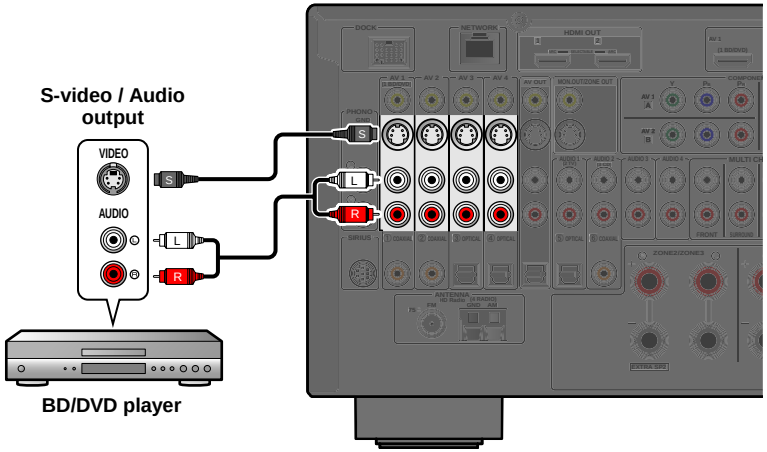
Using coaxial digital audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV1 or AV2 jacks.



Using analog stereo audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV1, AV2, AV3, or AV4 jacks.

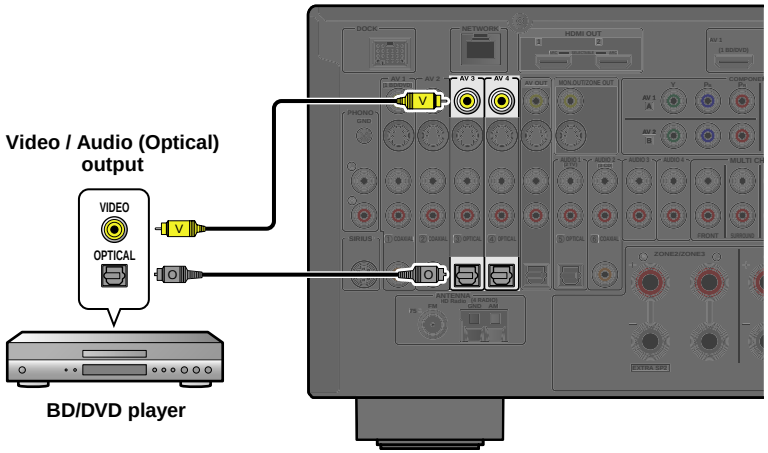


Connecting BD/DVD players and other devices with video cables

Connect the playback device with a video pin cable to one of the AV1-4 input jacks.

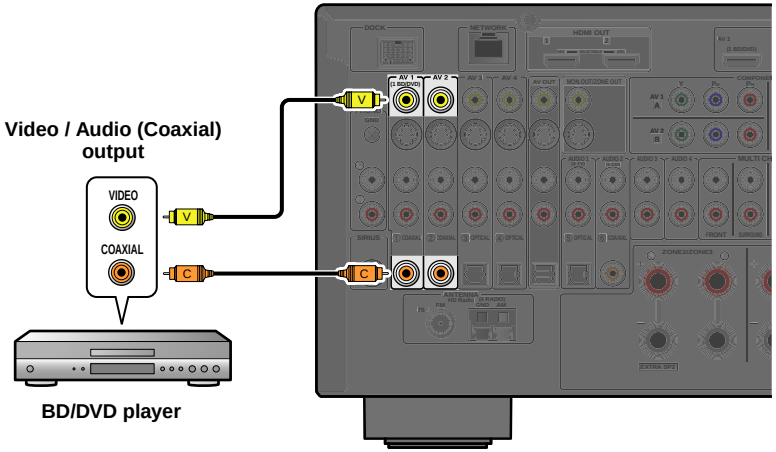
Using optical digital audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV3 or AV4 jacks.



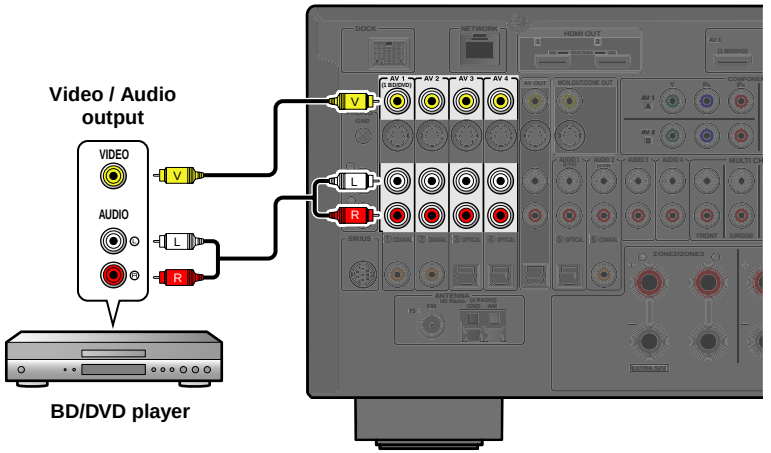
Using coaxial digital audio output sources

Connect the playback device to the AV1 or AV2 jacks.



Using analog stereo audio output sources

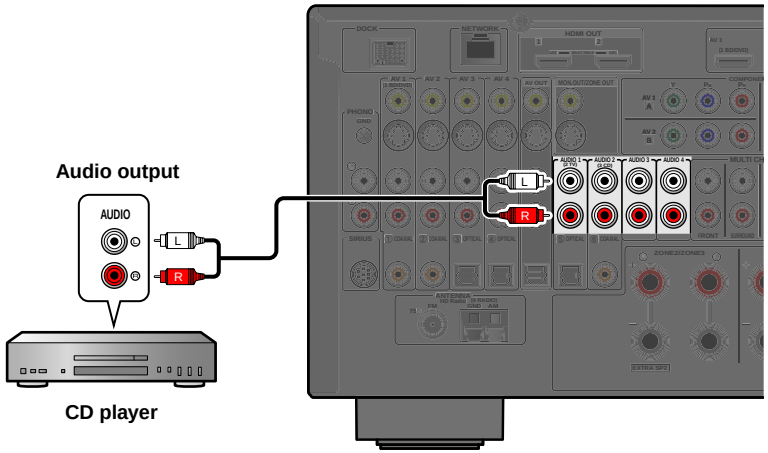
Connect the playback device to the AV1, AV2, AV3, or AV4 jacks.



Connecting CD players and other audio devices

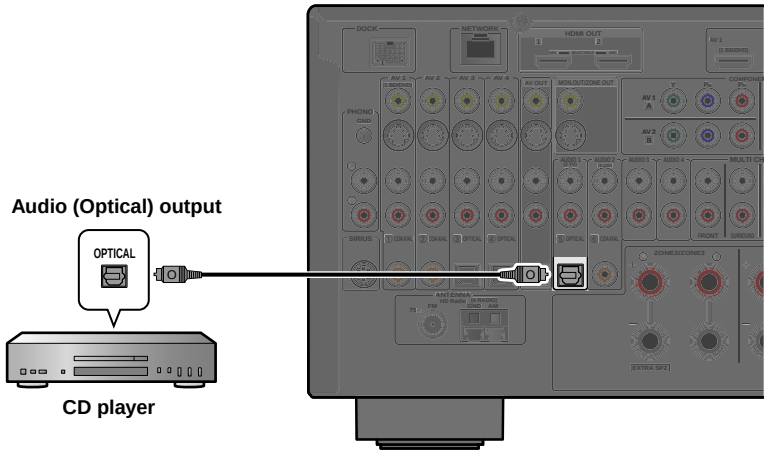
Using analog stereo output sources

Connect the playback device to the AUDIO1, AUDIO2, AUDIO3, or AUDIO4 jacks.



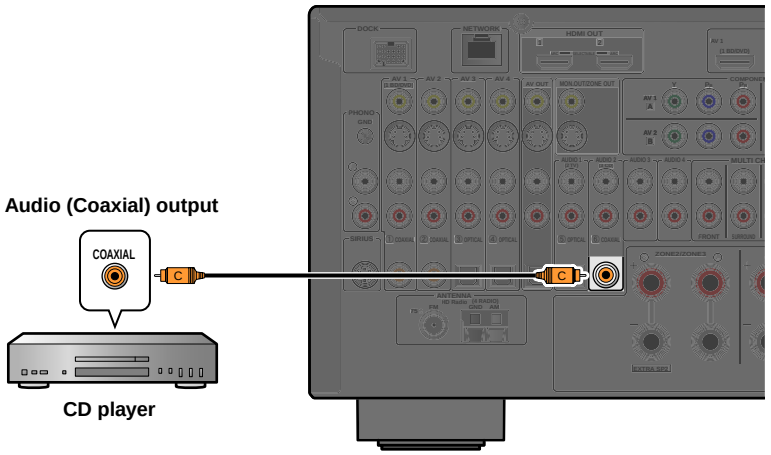
Using optical digital output sources

Connect the playback device to the AUDIO1 jack.



Using coaxial digital output sources

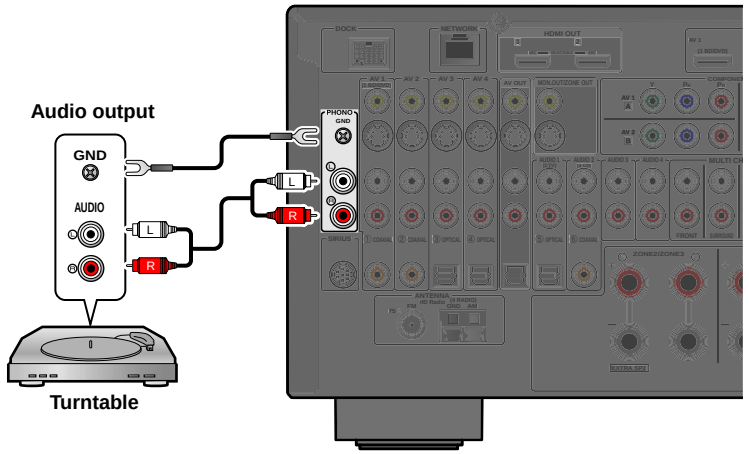
Connect the playback device to the AUDIO2 jack.



We recommend connecting audio devices with a coaxial digital output to the AUDIO2 coaxial digital jack on this unit. This connection allows you to switch to the AUDIO2 just by pressing the "CD" SCENE key (☞p. 50).

Connecting a turntable

Connect the audio output of the turntable to PHONO jacks of this unit. 1



Connect your turntable to the GND terminal of this unit to reduce noise in the signal.

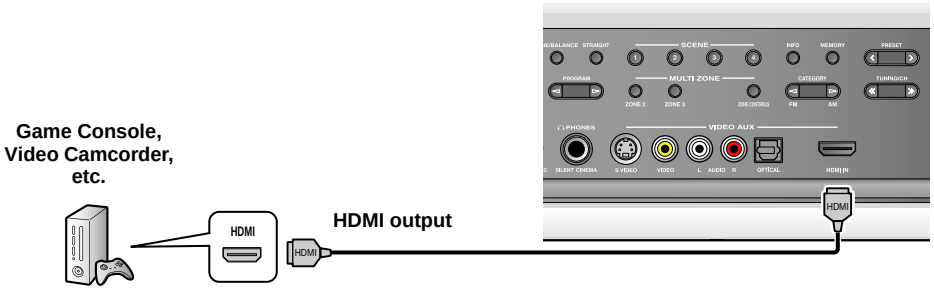
1 : When connecting a turntable with a low-output MC cartridge to the PHONO jacks, use an in-line boosting transformer or MC-head amplifier.

Connecting game consoles or video camcorders

Use the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel to temporarily connect devices such as a game console or video camcorder to the receiver.
Select the V-AUX input to use these connected devices.

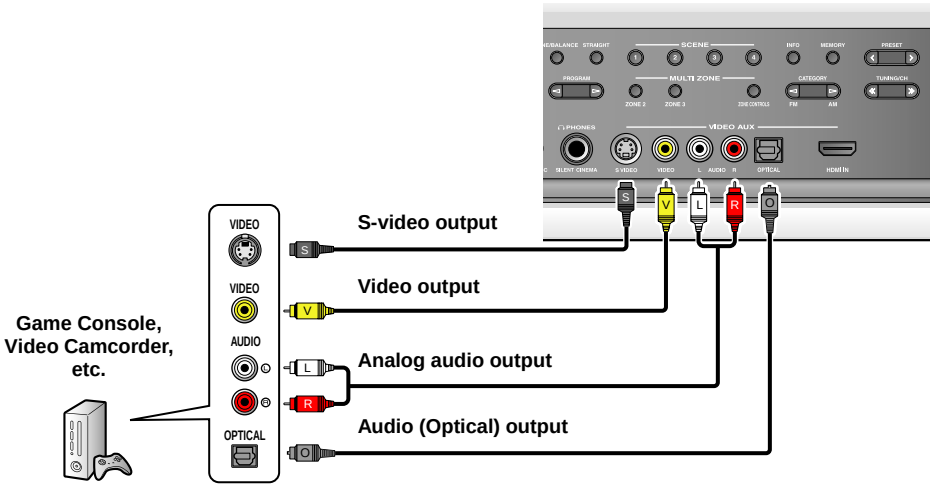
When connecting an HDMI compatible device

Connect the HDMI output of the device to the HDMI IN jack of the VIDEO AUX.



When connecting an non-HDMI compatible device

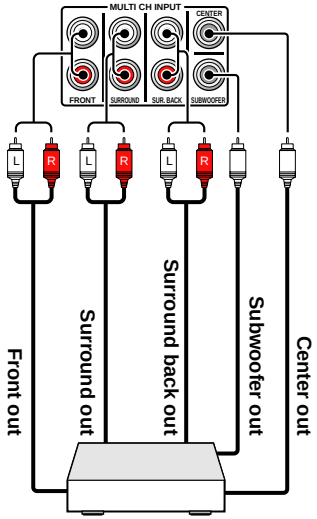
Connect the video and audio outputs of the device to the VIDEO or S-VIDEO, and AUDIO or OPTICAL jacks of the VIDEO AUX.



- Be sure to turn down the volume when connecting this unit and the other devices.
- When both the HDMI connection and the analog video/audio connection are performed between the HDMI compatible device and this unit, only the HDMI signal will be input.

Connecting a multi-format player or an external decoder

This unit has 8 sets of input jacks (FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R, SUR. BACK and SUBWOOFER) to input multi-channel analog sound signals. If your playback component, such as a DVD player or SACD player, has multi-channel analog output capability, you can enjoy up to 7.1-channel multi-channel sound. To output multi-channel sound, connect the audio output jacks of your playback component to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks of this unit, and set the input source of this unit to "MULTI CH."

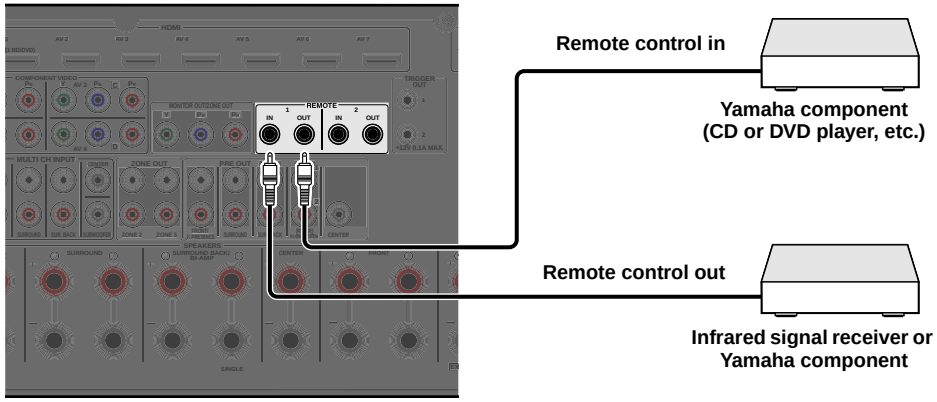


Multi-format player/External decoder (7.1-channel output)

- When you select "MULTI CH" as the input source, the digital sound field processor and tone control are automatically disabled.
- As this unit does not redirect signals input through the MULTI CH INPUT jacks to compensate for missing speakers, make appropriate settings on the multi-format player or the external decoder that suit to the speaker configuration.
- When the input source is switched to "MULTI CH," images input from a component connected to the AV1-7 or VIDEO AUX jacks can be displayed on a video monitor (☞p. 101). If your DVD player does not support multi-channel digital output, connect it to these input jacks.

Connecting a SCENE link playback-compatible device

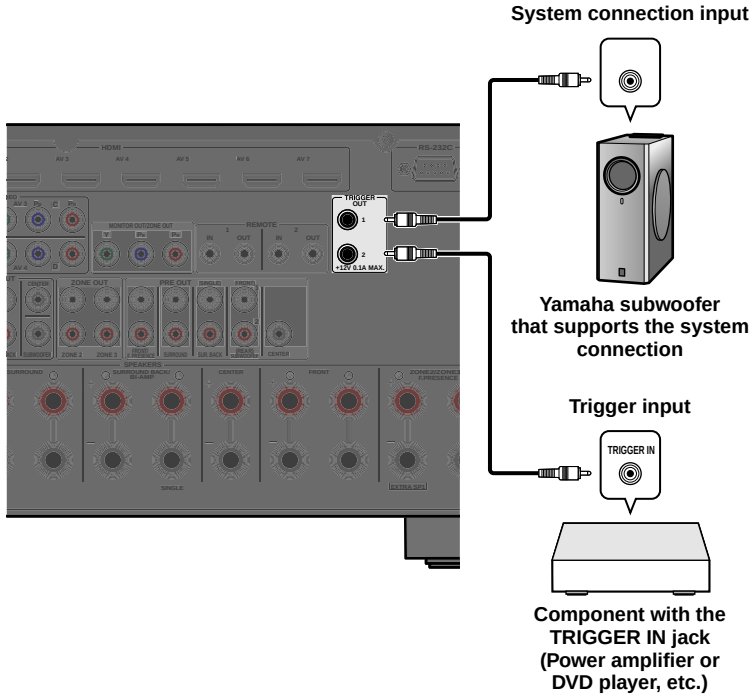
When the components are the Yamaha products and have the capability of the transmission of the remote control signals, connect the REMOTE IN and REMOTE OUT jacks to the remote control input and output jack with the monaural analog mini cable as follows.



- When a Yamaha component that supports the SCENE link playback function is connected via the REMOTE OUT jack, playback begins automatically when the SCENE function is used (☞p. 50).
- If the component connected to the REMOTE OUT jack is not a Yamaha product, set “SCENE IR” in the Scene menu to “Off” (☞p. 103).

Using the Trigger function to link external component power

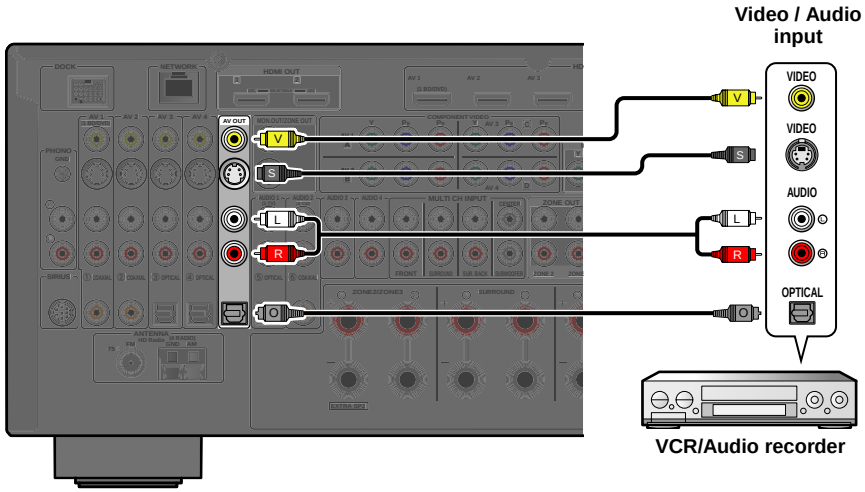
When this unit is connected to a Yamaha subwoofer that supports the system connection or the component with TRIGGER IN jack, you can turn on and off the component by using this unit.



Functions of the TRIGGER OUT jack can be specified (☞p. 125).

Connecting audio/video recording devices

This receiver can transmit selected incoming audio/video signals to external components through the AV OUT jacks. You can record these input audio and video signals to VCRs or similar devices, or send them to other TVs or external components.

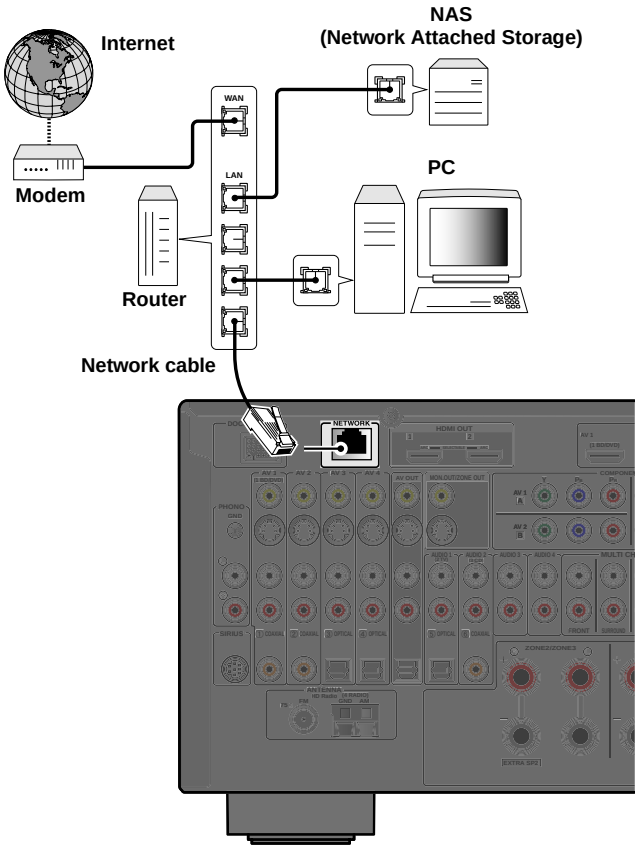


HDMI audio/video signals and component video signals cannot be transmitted from these jacks.

Connecting to the network

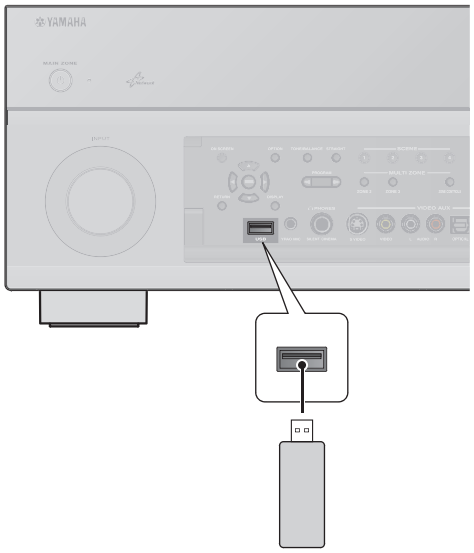
To connect this unit to your network, plug one end of a network cable (CAT-5 or higher straight cable) into the NETWORK port of this unit, and plug the other end into one of the LAN ports on your router that supports the DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server function. To enjoy Internet Radio or music files saved on PC and DLNA server such as NAS (Network Attached Storage), each device must be connected properly in the network.

- Use an STP (shielded twisted pair) cable (commercially available) to connect a network hub or router and this unit.
- If the DHCP server function on your router is disabled, you need to configure the network settings manually (☞p. 121).



Connecting a USB storage device

Connect a USB memory device or USB portable audio player to the USB port on the front panel of this unit.



USB memory device or USB portable audio player

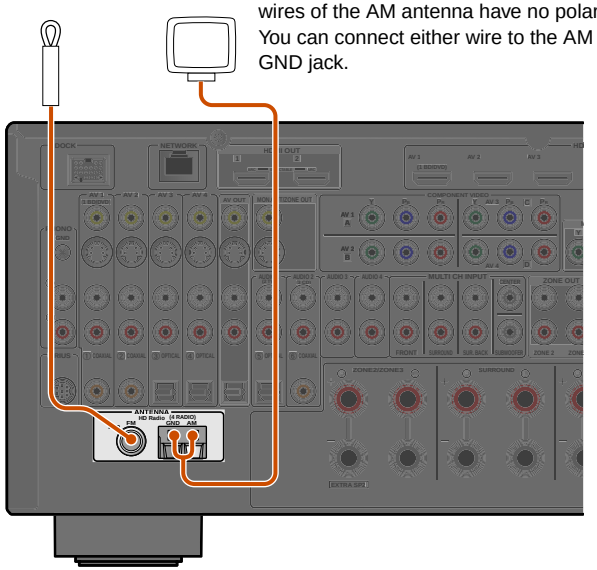
NOTE
Be careful that the USB storage device is facing the correct way when inserted into the USB port of this unit.

Connecting the FM/AM antennas

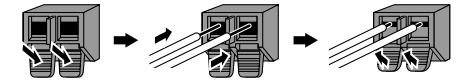
An indoor FM antenna and an AM loop antenna are supplied with this receiver. Connect these antennas properly to their respective jacks.

Indoor FM antenna

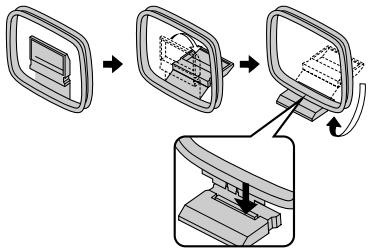
AM loop antenna
Position the AM antenna away from the receiver. The wires of the AM antenna have no polarity.
You can connect either wire to the AM jack or the GND jack.



Connecting the AM loop antenna



Assembling the AM loop antenna



■ Improving FM reception

We recommend using an outdoor antenna. For more information, consult the nearest authorized dealer.

■ Improving AM reception

Connect this unit to an outdoor antenna with a 16.4 – 32.8 ft. (5 – 10 m) vinyl-coated wire. Make sure the AM loop antenna is still connected.
Connecting the GND jack can reduce noise. Connect the jack to a store-bought ground bar or copper plate with a vinyl-covered wire and bury this new attachment in moist ground.
The GND jack is not to be connected to the ground socket of an electrical outlet.

Setting up the speaker parameters automatically (YPAO)

This unit is equipped with a Yamaha Parametric Room Acoustic Optimizer (YPAO) that adjusts the configuration, size, and volume balance of the speakers in order to provide an optimal sound field. Using YPAO allows you to automatically configure settings, such as adjusting speaker output and acoustic parameters to suit your listening room (the room in which this unit is placed). ♛1

Be aware of the following when using YPAO.

- The amount of time for measurement varies from about two to ten minutes according to settings.
- The test tone is output at high volume. Refrain from using this function at night when it may be a nuisance to others.
- Take care that the test tone does not frighten small children.

YPAO operations can be viewed on the front panel display or TV screen.

1 Check the following before using YPAO.

This unit

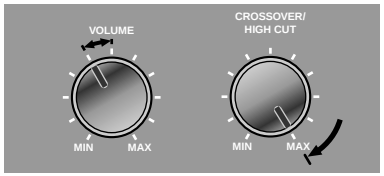
- The headphones are removed.

TV

- This unit is connected to the TV correctly.
- The power is turned on.
- The video input to which the video output from this unit has been selected.

Subwoofer

- The power is turned on.
- Volume is set to approximately half, and the cross-over frequency (if present) is set to maximum.



Subwoofer examples

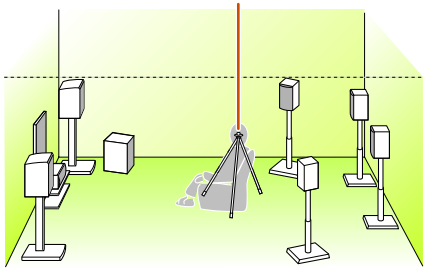
Power Amp Assign

- "Power Amp Assign" applies the appropriate speaker settings to this unit according to speaker configuration.
  Refer to "Speaker layout" and "Speaker layout utilizing an external power amplifier" for details (☞p. 16, p. 24).

2 Place the supplied YPAO microphone at ear height in your listening position.

Face the head of the YPAO microphone upwards.

YPAO microphone



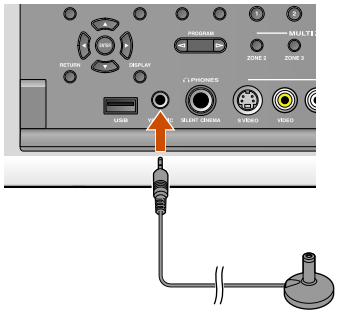
When positioning the microphone, we recommend that you use equipment that allows you to adjust the height (such as a tripod) as a microphone stand. When using a tripod, use the tripod screws to fix the microphone in place.

3 Switch this unit on.

Continues to the next page

♛1 : When you have changed the number of speakers or the locations in which they are installed, first use YPAO to adjust the speaker balance.

4 Connect the YPAO microphone to the YPAO MIC jack on the front panel.



"Mic On View ON SCREEN" appears on the front panel display, and the following display appears on the front panel display or TV screen.

5 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the "Multi Position" and press 9ENTER to set the number of listening positions to measure.

To measure at the multiple listening positions (up to 8), press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select "Yes" and press 9ENTER.

To measure at one listening position, press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select "No" and press 9ENTER.

"Multi Position" is set to "Yes" at initial factory settings. If not necessary, skip this step.

This completes preparation. To achieve more accurate results, take note of the following when measuring acoustics.

- It takes a few minutes to accurately measure acoustics for one position. Keep the room as quiet as possible while acoustics are measured.
- Wait in a corner of the room, or leave it entirely, while acoustics are measured to avoid creating an obstruction between the speakers and the YPAO microphone.

6 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select the "Measure" and press 9ENTER to start measurement.

Auto measurement starts in 10 seconds.

- To start the measurement immediately, press 9ENTER again.
- To cancel the automatic setup, press 9RETURN and then 9ENTER.

Display during measurement

Continues to the next page

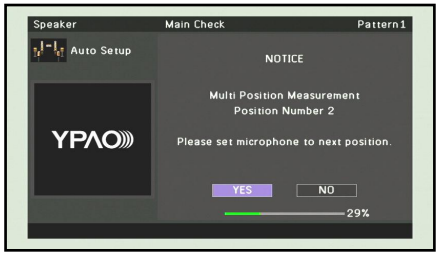
When "Multi Position" is set to "No" in step 5

The following display appears when measurement finishes without any problems.

Go to step 8.

When "Multi Position" is set to "Yes" in step 5

The following display appears when measurement at the first position finishes without any problems.

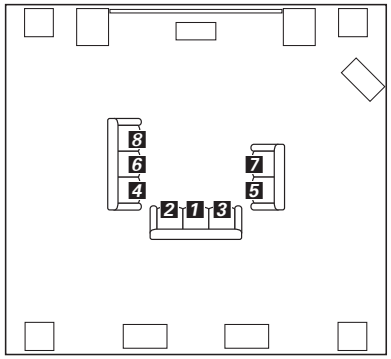


Go to step 7.

7 Replace the optimizer microphone at your choosing position and press 9ENTER to restart the automatic measurement.

Auto measurement restarts in 10 seconds.

The following illustration shows how to place the optimizer microphone to optimize the setup of this unit for eight listening positions for example. Up to 8 listening positions can be measured. 1



Repeat step 7 until the measurement at all listening positions are made.

The following display appears when measurement at the last position finishes without any problems.

NOTE

If a problem occurs, an error message or report is displayed either during or after acoustic measurement. Refer to "When an error message is displayed during measurement" (☞p. 46), or "When a warning message is displayed after measurement" (☞p. 46) to resolve the problem and measure acoustics with YPAO again.

Continues to the next page

1 : Measure from the most frequent listening position, such as directly in front of the TV, first.

Result	Displays the results of automatic acoustics measurement. Refer to "Reviewing automatic setup parameters" (☞p. 45) for details.	
Save/Exit	SAVE	Applies the result to the speaker setup and finishes the automatic measurement. ♛1
	CANCEL	Returns to the previous screen.
	EXIT	Finishes the automatic measurement without applying the result to the speaker setup.

- When the warning message appears on this display, refer to "When an error message is displayed during measurement" (☞p. 46) for details.
- Press 9RETURN to return to the previous screen.

8 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select "Save/Exit" and press 9ENTER.

9 Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select "SAVE" and press 9ENTER.

10 Press 9ENTER.

Automatic setup is completed. Disconnect the YPAO microphone.

The YPAO microphone is sensitive to heat. When you have finished measuring, store the microphone out of direct sunlight, and away from locations that may experience high temperatures, such as on top of AV equipment.

♛1 : The result of the measurement is assigned to the "Setting Pattern" currently selected. Refer "Setting Pattern" (☞p. 111) for details on "Setting Pattern."

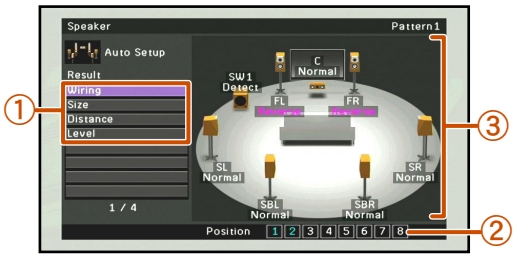
Reviewing automatic setup parameters

The results of automatic acoustics measurement can be reviewed once measurement is complete.

1 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "Result" and press 9ENTER immediately after the automatic measurement.

The Result menu can be viewed only when the automatic measurement is performed.

The results of acoustics measurement are displayed.



① **List of menu items**
Menu items available in the Result menu are displayed.

② **Number of measurement**
Indicates the number of measurements for multiple listening positions.

③ **Diagram**
Shows the speaker setup and sound adjustment as diagram.

2 Select the desired menu item (or enable a function) using 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ and 9ENTER.

Wiring	Displays the speakers connected to this unit and the polarity of each connected speaker. • "Normal" is displayed when the polarity of the connected speaker is normal. • "Reverse" is displayed when the polarity of the connected speaker is opposite.
Size	Displays the size of the connected speakers and the bass cross over frequency ("Bass Crossover"). • "Large" is displayed when the connected speaker has the ability to reproduce the low-frequency signals effectively. • "Small" is displayed when the connected speaker does not have the ability to reproduce the low-frequency signals effectively.
Distance	Displays the distance from the listening position to speakers. The unit for distance can be switched between "ft" (feet) and "m" (meter) by pressing 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ (☞p. 114).
Level	Displays the result of the adjustment of each connected speaker output level.
Setup Reload ♛1	Clears the fine-adjustment with Manual Setup and reloads the result of automatic setup. For details, refer to "Reloading automatic setup parameters."

3 Press 9RETURN to finish the Result menu.

The result of automatic setup can be fine-tuned manually by "Manual Setup." Refer to "Manual speaker setup" (☞p. 111) for details.

Reloading automatic setup parameters

If you are not satisfied with the fine-adjustment of setup parameters with Manual Setup, the result of automatic setup saved on this unit can be reloaded. Select "Setup Reload" in the Result menu.

NOTE
When automatic setup parameters are reloaded, manually configured settings are cleared. To avoid clearing manually configured settings by reloading automatic setup parameters, see "Prohibiting setting changes" (☞p. 126).

♛1 : This item is displayed after the fine-adjustment is performed with "Manual Setup." Use this item to return the settings to the result of automatic setup.

When an error message is displayed during measurement

See “Error messages” (☞p. 47) for instructions on resolving the problem and measure acoustics again.

Check the error code displayed and use YPAO to measure acoustics again as described below.

When “E-1,” “E-2,” “E-3,” “E-4” or “E-6” is displayed:

1 **Press 9ENTER.**

2 **Press 9Cursor ▷ to select “EXIT.”**

3 **Press 9ENTER to terminate YPAO, and switch the unit to standby mode.**

4 **Check that the speakers are properly connected.**

5 **Turn on the unit and use YPAO again.**

When “E-7” or “E-8” is displayed:

1 **Press 9ENTER.**

2 **Check that the environment is suitable for accurate measurement.**

3 **Press 9Cursor ▷ to select “RETRY.”**

4 **Press 9ENTER to use YPAO again.**

When “E-5” or “E-9” is displayed:

1 **Press 9ENTER.**

2 **Check that the environment is suitable for accurate measurement.**

3 **Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a option.**

PROCEED:
When “E-5” is displayed, measurement can proceed. However, the measurement in noisy environment may reduce the accuracy.
When “E-9” is displayed, resume the aborted step.
RETRY:
Restart measurement from the beginning.

4 **Press 9ENTER to execute the selected option.**

When “E-10” is displayed:

1 **Press 9ENTER.**

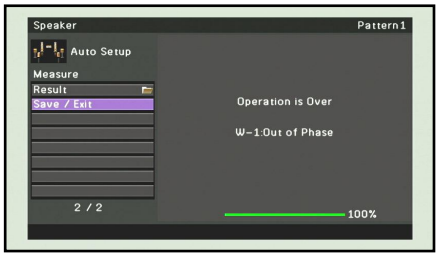
2 **Press 9Cursor ▷ to select “EXIT.”**

3 **Press 9ENTER to terminate YPAO, and switch the unit to standby mode.**

4 **Turn on the unit and use YPAO again.**

When a warning message is displayed after measurement

See “Warning messages” (☞p. 47) for instructions on resolving the problem. The speaker causing the problem can be confirmed from the TV screen display.



NOTE

Although the results of acoustics measurement can be applied when a warning message is displayed, optimal sound will not be achieved. Resolving the problem and using YPAO to measure acoustics again is recommended.

To exit YPAO with some options

1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Save/Exit” and press 9ENTER.**

2 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select one of the following options and press 9ENTER.**

SAVE:
Exits YPAO applying the results of measurement.
CANCEL:
Returns to the previous screen (warning message screen).
EXIT:
Exits YPAO without saving the results.

Message list

NOTE
If the following messages appear, resolve the problems that have occurred and carry out the measurement process again.

■ When a warning message is displayed before measurement

Connect MIC!	The YPAO microphone is not connected.	Connect the YPAO microphone to the YPAO MIC jack on the front panel.
Unplug HP!	The headphones are connected.	Remove the headphones.
Memory Guard!	The settings of this unit are protected.	Set “Memory Guard” in the Setup menu to “Off” (☞p. 126).

■ Error messages

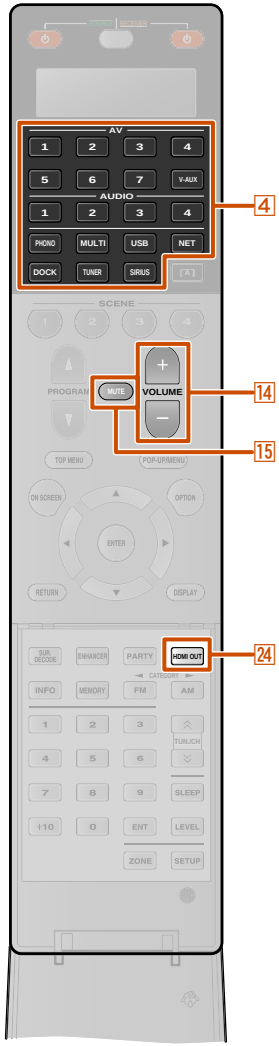
E-1: No Front SP	The unit was not able to find the front channel.	Check that the left and right front speakers are connected correctly.
E-2: No Sur. SP	The unit was only able to find one of side of the surround channels.	Check that the left and right surround speakers are connected correctly.
E-3: No F.PRNS SP	The unit was only able to find one of side of the presence channels.	Check that the left and right presence speakers are connected correctly.
E-4: SBR→SBL	Only one surround back speaker is connected and only the right side surround back channel sound is detected.	When only one surround back speaker is connected, connect to the left side (SINGLE) terminal.
E-5: Noisy	The noise is too loud, preventing accurate measurements from being taken.	Measure again in quiet surroundings. Turn off any devices in the room that may be emitting noise, or place them further away from the YPAO microphone. When this message is displayed, selecting “PROCEED” will allow you to continue measuring. However, we recommend resolving the problem and measuring again, as continuing measurement without doing so will not give accurate results.
E-6: Check Sur.	Even though surround left and right speakers are not connected, only the surround back speakers are connected.	When using surround back speakers, connection of the surround left/right speakers is necessary.
E-7: No MIC	The YPAO microphone has been removed.	While measuring, take care not to touch the YPAO microphone.
E-8: No Signal	The YPAO microphone could not distinguish a test tone.	Check that the YPAO microphone has been installed correctly. Check that each speaker has been connected and installed correctly. The YPAO microphone or the YPAO MIC jack may be broken. Inquire at the retailer where you purchased this unit, or the nearest Yamaha service center.
E-9: User Cancel	You have carried out an operation that has cancelled the measuring process.	Carry out the measuring process again. Do not operate this unit by, for example, adjusting the volume.
E-10: Internal Error	An internal error has occurred.	Carry out the measuring process again. Contact a Yamaha service center if “E-10” is displayed again.

■ Warning messages

W-1: Out of Phase	The speakers displayed are connected with the opposite polarity. Depending on the type of speakers you are using and the environment in which you have them installed, this message may occur even if the speakers are connected correctly.	Depending on the type of speakers, “W-1” may display even if the speakers are connected correctly. Check that the speaker polarity + (positive), and - (negative) are correct. If these are connected correctly, you can use the speakers normally even this message appears.
W-2: Over 24m/80ft	The speakers displayed are separated from the listening position by more than 24 m, and cannot be adjusted correctly.	Install the speakers with 24 m of the listening position.
W-3: Level Error	Volume level varies greatly for individual channels, and cannot be adjusted correctly.	Check that all speakers are installed in the same surroundings. Check that the speaker polarity + (positive), and - (negative) are correct. We recommend the same speakers or speakers with as similar specifications as possible. Adjust the volume of the subwoofer.

If “W-2” or “W-3” appears, you can apply measurement results, but they will not give optimal results. We recommend that you resolve the problem and carry out the measurement process again.

PLAYBACK



Basic playback procedure

1 Turn on external components (TV, DVD player, etc.) connected to this unit.

2 Use the 4Input selector to select the input source.

The name of the selected input source is displayed on the front panel display. 1

When USB, NET, DOCK, TUNER or SIRIUS is selected, the content window is displayed (☞p. 62).

3 Play the external component that you have selected as the source input, or select a radio station on the tuner.

Refer to the instruction manuals provided with the external component for details on playback.

For details on the following operations, refer to the corresponding pages:

- “FM/AM tuning” (☞p. 63)
- “Listening to the HD Radio™” (☞p. 66)
- “Listening to the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™” (☞p. 70)
- “Playing back tunes on the PC” (☞p. 76)
- “Playing back tunes on the USB storage devices” (☞p. 78)
- “Listening to the Internet Radio” (☞p. 80)
- “Using the Rhapsody® service” (☞p. 82)
- “Listening to the SIRIUS Internet Radio” (☞p. 86)
- “Playing back tunes from your iPod™/iPhone™” (☞p. 90)
- “Playing back tunes from Bluetooth™ components” (☞p. 94)

4 Press 14VOLUME +/- to adjust the volume.

To mute the output.

Press 15MUTE to mute the audio output.
Press 15MUTE again to unmute.

Selecting the active HDMI OUT jack

Use this function to select the HDMI OUT jack(s) used to output signal.

Press 24HDMI OUT repeatedly to select setting.

The HDMI output setting changes as follows.

OUT 1+2	Outputs the signal at both the HDMI OUT 1 and HDMI OUT 2 jacks simultaneously.
OUT 1	Outputs the signals at the HDMI OUT 1 jack.
OUT 2	Outputs the signals at the HDMI OUT 2 jack.
Off	Any signals are not output at the HDMI OUT 1 and HDMI OUT 2 jacks. Select this setting when you do not use the video monitor connected to one of the HDMI OUT jacks.

- The HDMI OUT jack that utilizes the HDMI Control function can be selected with “Control Select” (☞p. 119).
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “On,” the HDMI OUT jack selected with “Control Select” is automatically enabled in addition to the HDMI OUT jack selected here by commands from the external component supporting HDMI Control connected to the jack (☞p. 119).
- The active HDMI OUT jack(s) can be registered with the SCENE function (☞p. 102).

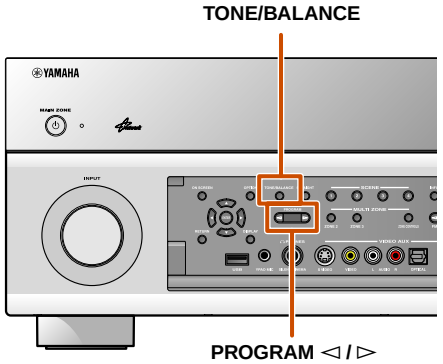
1 : You can change the input source name displayed on the front panel display as necessary (☞p. 99).

Adjusting high/low-frequency sound (Tone control)

You can adjust the balance of the high-frequency range (Treble) and low-frequency range (Bass) of sounds output from the front left and right speakers to obtain desired tone.

The tone control of the speakers or headphones can be set separately. Set the headphone tone control with the headphones connected.

1 Press TONE/BALANCE on the front panel repeatedly to select “Treble” or “Bass.”



The current setting is displayed on the front panel display.

2 Press PROGRAM ◁ / ▷ to adjust the output level in the following frequency range.

Adjustable range	-6.0 dB to +6.0 dB
Adjustment increments	0.5 dB

The display returns to the previous display soon after you release the key.

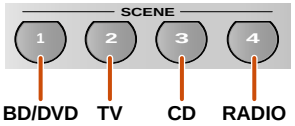
- The tone control settings are not effective when this unit is in the Pure Direct Mode or “MULTI CH” is selected as an input source.
- If you set the balance extremely off, sounds may not match those from other channels well.
- The tone control can also be adjusted in the Option menu (☞p. 60).

Changing input settings with a single key (SCENE function)

This unit has a SCENE function that allows you switch this unit on and change input sources, the settings of Audio Select, HDMI Output, Sound Program, Pure Direct Mode, Tone Control, Adaptive DRC, and Compressed Music Enhancer with one key.

Selecting a SCENE suited to an external component

At initial factory settings, SCENE functions are configured for the following components.
Select a scene according to the component that will be used for playback.



SCENE 1

Settings are configured for viewing DVD or Blu-ray Disc content. Press this key and play back content from the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player connected to the AV1 jack on this unit.

SCENE 2

Settings are configured for viewing TV content. Press this key and turn on the TV connected to the AUDIO1 jack on this unit.

SCENE 3

Settings are configured for listening to CD content. Press this key and play back content from the CD player connected to the AUDIO2 jack on this unit.

SCENE 4

Settings are configured for listening to a radio station. Press this key and tune into a radio station.

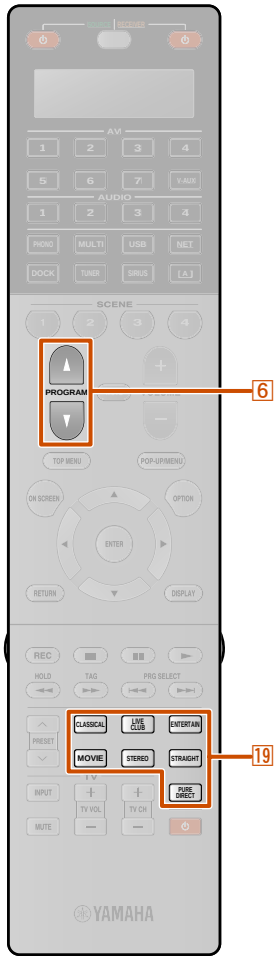
SCENE 5-12

The nothing is registered on the scenes at initial factory setting. The favorite settings can be registered on the scenes and reloaded by using “Save” and “Load” in Scene menu. For details, refer to “Scene menu” (☞p. 103).

- When switching scenes, also change the external component that the remote control operates (☞p. 129).
- We recommend that selecting a scene and editing the SCENE function are performed in the Scene menu (☞p. 102).
- This unit has eight additional scene functions. After selecting one of these scenes, one of the additional eight scenes may also be selected (☞p. 103).
- Press and hold 5 **SCENE** key for about three seconds to register the current setting to the scene.

Four scenes are available for different uses, such as playing movies or music. The following settings such as input sources, sound programs, and HDMI Output are provided at initial factory settings. Settings that are not checked (☐) are not enabled when a scene key is pressed. Use “Load” in the Scene menu to check settings to be enabled. Refer to “Adjusting settings registered with the SCENE function” for details (☞p. 103).

SCENE	Input	Audio Select	HDMI Output	Sound Program	Pure Direct Mode	Tone Control	Adaptive DRC	Compressed Music Enhancer	CINEMA DSP 3D Mode	Dialogue Lift	Extended Surround	Video Adjustment	Video Processing	Master Volume	Lipsync	Delay	Setting Pattern	PEQ Select
	☑		☑	☑		☑			☐			☐		☐	☐		☐	
1 (BD/DVD Movie Viewing)	AV1	Auto	OUT 1+2	Drama	Auto	Bass: 0.0dB Treble: 0.0dB	On	Off	On	0	Auto	Off	Off	-40.0dB	Auto	0ms	Pattern1	Natural
2 (TV Viewing)	AUDIO1	Auto	OUT 1+2	STRAIGHT	Auto	Bass: 0.0dB Treble: 0.0dB	On	On	On	0	Auto	Off	Off	-40.0dB	Auto	0ms	Pattern1	Natural
3 (CD Music Listening)	AUDIO2	Auto	OUT 1+2	STRAIGHT	Auto	Bass: 0.0dB Treble: 0.0dB	Off	Off	On	0	Auto	Off	Off	-40.0dB	Auto	0ms	Pattern1	Natural
4 (Radio Listening)	TUNER	---	OUT 1+2	STRAIGHT	Auto	Bass: 0.0dB Treble: 0.0dB	Off	On	On	0	Auto	Off	Off	-40.0dB	Auto	0ms	Pattern1	Natural



Enjoying favorite sound field effect

This unit is also equipped with a Yamaha digital sound field processing (DSP) chip. Multi-channel playback from almost any audio source can be enjoyed using a variety of sound decoders and various sound field effect programs stored on the chip. Sound field effect programs built into this unit are called “sound programs.”

Selecting sound programs and sound decoders

This unit offers sound programs in many different categories suitable for movies, music and other uses. Choose a sound program that sounds best with the source you are playing back, rather than relying on the name or explanation of the program.

> Sound programs are stored for each input source. When you change the input source, the sound program previously selected for that input source is applied again.

Selecting sound program (☞p. 54):
CLASSICAL category: Press 19**CLASSICAL** repeatedly 1
LIVE/CLUB category: Press 19**LIVE/CLUB** repeatedly 1
ENTERTAIN category: Press 19**ENTERTAIN** repeatedly 1
MOVIE category: Press 19**MOVIE** repeatedly 1

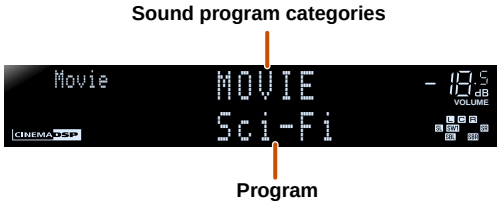
Selecting stereo reproduction (☞p. 53):
Press 19**STEREO** repeatedly 1

Selecting surround decoder:
Press 20**SUR. DECODE** repeatedly 1

Turning on Straight decoding mode (☞p. 52):
Press 19**STRAIGHT**

Turning on Pure Direct Mode (☞p. 53):
Press 19**PURE DIRECT**

Turning on Compressed Music Enhancer (☞p. 53):
Press 20**ENHANCER** repeatedly



- You can use the speaker indicators on the front panel display to check what speakers are currently outputting sound (☞p. 11).
- You can adjust sound field elements (sound field parameters) for each of the programs (☞p. 105).

Enjoying surround sound with the CINEMA DSP function

Enjoying sound programs without surround speakers

This unit allows you to use virtual surround speakers to enjoy sound field surround effects, even without any surround speakers (Virtual CINEMA DSP mode). You can even enjoy surround sound presence with just a minimal configuration of the front speakers only. This unit will switch to Virtual CINEMA DSP mode automatically when Surround is set to “None” in Configuration (☞p. 113). 2

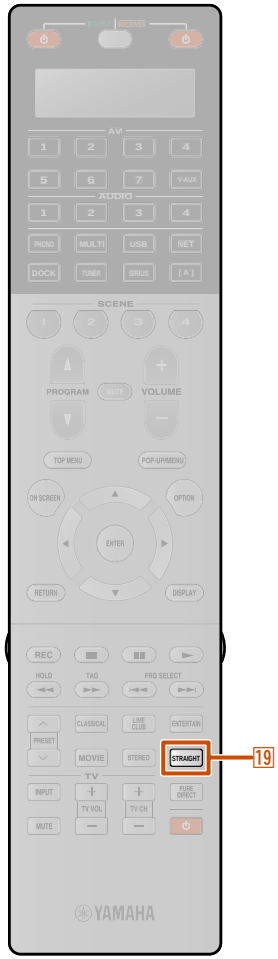
Enjoying sound programs with headphones

Even when headphones are connected, you can enjoy the reproduction sound field presence with ease (SILENT CINEMA mode). 3

1 : A sound program, stereo reproduction option or sound decoder can also be selected by pressing 6**PROGRAM** △ / ▽.

2 : However, Virtual CINEMA DSP mode is not available under the following conditions:
- When headphones are connected to this unit.
- When a “7ch Stereo” or “2ch Stereo” sound program is selected.
- When Pure Direct Mode or straight decoding mode is selected.

3 : However, SILENT CINEMA mode is not available under the following conditions:
- When a “2ch Stereo” sound program is selected.
- When Pure Direct Mode or straight decoding mode is selected.



Enjoying more spatial sound fields (CINEMA DSP 3D mode)

CINEMA DSP 3D mode creates an intensive and accurate stereoscopic sound field in the listening room. Connection of presence speakers is recommended to take full advantage of the effects of CINEMA DSP 3D mode. Do the following steps. 1

- Connect the presence speakers to the EXTRA SP1 jacks and set the speakers to use (☞p. 20).
- Enable CINEMA DSP 3D in the Option menu (☞p. 58).

When a sound program runs in CINEMA DSP 3D mode, the CINEMA DSP 3D indicator on the front panel lights up.

Lights up

Enjoying sound programs without presence speakers

This unit allows you to use virtual presence speakers to create an intensive and accurate stereoscopic sound field, even when no presence speakers are connected (Virtual CINEMA DSP 3D mode). You can even enjoy surround sound presence with front speakers, center speaker, and surround speakers.
This unit automatically switches to Virtual CINEMA DSP 3D mode when presence speakers are not available. Do the following steps.

- At minimum, connect the front speakers, center speaker, and surround speakers.
- Enable the center speaker and surround speakers in "Configuration" (☞p. 112).
- Enable CINEMA DSP 3D in the Option menu (☞p. 60).

Enjoying unprocessed playback (Straight decoding mode)

Use straight decoding mode when you want to playback sound without sound field processing. You can playback as follows in straight decoding mode.

2-channel sources such as CD

Stereo sound plays through the front left and right speakers.

Multi-channel playback sources such as BD/DVD

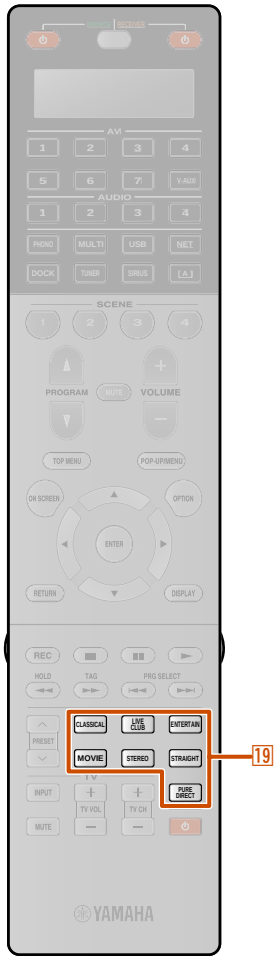
Plays back audio from a playback source without applying sound field effects, using an appropriate decoder to split the signal into multiple channels.

Press 19STRAIGHT to enable the straight decoding mode.

To disable straight decoding mode, press 19STRAIGHT again.

Previously selected program

1 : However, CINEMA DSP 3D mode is not available under the following conditions:
- When headphones are connected to this unit.
- When a "7ch Stereo" or "2ch Stereo" sound program is selected.
- When Pure Direct Mode or straight decoding mode is selected.



Enjoying Hi-Fi Sound Quality (Pure Direct Mode)

Use Pure Direct Mode to enjoy the pure high fidelity sound of the selected source. When Pure Direct Mode is enabled, this unit plays back the selected source with the least circuitry. 1

Press 19PURE DIRECT to turn Pure Direct Mode on. 2

To disable Pure Direct Mode, press 19PURE DIRECT again.

Enjoying stereo playback

Select “2ch Stereo” from the sound programs when you want to playback 2-channel stereo sound (from the front speakers only), regardless of the playback source. Selecting “2ch Stereo” will playback as follows for the playback of CD and BD/DVD sources.

2-channel sources such as CD

Stereo sound plays back through the front speakers.

Multi-channel sources such as BD/DVD

Playback channels other than the front channels in the playback source are mixed with the front channels and played back through the front speakers.

Press 19STEREO repeatedly to select “2ch Stereo.”

To disable stereo playback, press any of the 19Sound selection keys to select a sound program other than “2ch Stereo.”

Enjoying compressed music source with better sound quality (Compressed Music Enhancer)

Compressed Music Enhancer improves the sound quality of the compressed music source closer to its original depth and width. 3
This mode can be used along with any other DSP modes.

Press 20ENHANCER to turn Compressed Music Enhancer on.

Lights up when the Compressed Music Enhancer is active

To disable Compressed Music Enhancer, press 20ENHANCER again.

1 : The following features are disabled in Pure Direct Mode.
- sound program, tone control, PEQ Select, and Adaptive DRC
- displaying and operating the Option menu and ON SCREEN menu

2 : While Pure Direct Mode is on, the front panel display screen turns off in order to reduce noise. When turning Pure Direct Mode off, the screen returns on.

3 : However, Compressed Music Enhancer is not available in the following audio:
- Signals of which sampling rate is over 48kHz
- High Definition stream

Sound programs

CINEMA DSP in the table indicates the sound program for CINEMA DSP.

Category: CLASSICAL

This sound field is suitable when listening to music sources such as CDs.

Hall in Munich CINEMA DSP	This sound field simulates a concert hall with approximately 2500 seats in Munich, using stylish wood for the interior finishing as normal standards for European concert halls. Fine, beautiful reverberations spread richly, creating a calming atmosphere. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the arena.
Hall in Vienna CINEMA DSP	This is an approximately 1700-seat, middle-sized concert hall with a shoebox shape that is traditional in Vienna. Pillars and ornate carvings create extremely complex reflections from all around the audience, producing a very full, rich sound.
Hall in Amsterdam CINEMA DSP	The large, shoe box shaped hall seats about 2200 around the circle stage. Reflections are rich and pleasing while the sound travels freely.
Church in Freiburg CINEMA DSP	Located in the south of Germany, this grand, stone-built church has a pointed tower at 120 meters in height. Its long and narrow shape and the high ceiling enable the elongated reverberation time and limited initial reflection time. Thus, the rich reverberation rather than the sound itself reproduces the atmosphere of the church.
Church in Royaumont CINEMA DSP	This program features the sound field created by the refectory (dining hall) of a beautiful medieval Gothic monastery located in Royaumont on the outskirts of Paris.
Chamber CINEMA DSP	This program creates a relatively wide space with a high ceiling like an audience hall in a palace. It offers pleasant reverberations that are suitable for courtly music and chamber music.

Category: LIVE/CLUB

This sound field is suitable when listening to music sources such as CDs.

Village Vanguard CINEMA DSP	The Jazz club is on 7th Avenue, New York. This small club with the low ceiling makes the powerful reflections converge toward the stage located in the center.
Warehouse Loft CINEMA DSP	The warehouse resembles some lofts in Soho. Sound reflects off the concrete walls clearly with a lot of energy.
Cellar Club CINEMA DSP	This program simulates a live house with a low ceiling and homey atmosphere. A realistic, live sound field features powerful sound as if the listener is in a row in front of a small stage.
The Roxy Theatre CINEMA DSP	This is the sound field of a rock music live house in Los Angeles, with approximately 460 seats. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the hall.
The Bottom Line CINEMA DSP	This is the sound field at stage front in The Bottom Line, a famous New York jazz club once. The floor can seat 300 people to the left and right in a sound field offering real and vibrant sound.

Category: ENTERTAINMENT

Sound programs are optimized for video sources such as TV programs and games.

Sports CINEMA DSP	This program allows the listeners to enjoy stereo sport broadcasts and studio variety programs with enriched live feeling. In sports broadcasts, the voices of the commentator and sportscaster are positioned clearly at the center while the atmosphere of the stadium expands in an optimal space to offer the listeners a feeling of presence in the stadium.
Action Game CINEMA DSP	This sound field is suitable for action games such as car racing, fighting games and FPS games. The reality of, and emphasis on, various effects makes the player feel like they are right in the middle of the action, allowing for greater concentration. Use this program in combination with Compressed Music Enhancer for a more dynamic and strong sound field.
Roleplaying Game CINEMA DSP	This sound field is suitable for role-playing and adventure games. This program adds depth to the sound field for natural and realistic reproduction of background music, special effects and dialogue from a wide variety of scenes. Use this program in combination with Compressed Music Enhancer for a more clear and spatial sound field.
Music Video CINEMA DSP	This sound field offers an image of a concert hall for live performance of pop, rock and jazz music. The listener can indulge oneself in a hot live space thanks to the presence sound field that emphasizes the vividness of vocals and solo play and the beat of rhythm instruments, and to the surround sound field that reproduces the space of a big live hall.
Recital/Opera CINEMA DSP	This program controls the amount of reverberations at an optimum level and emphasizes the depth and clarity of human voices. "Recital/Opera" offers the reverberations of an orchestra box in front the listener at the same time as providing the acoustic positioning and feeling of presence on the stage. The surround sound field is relatively moderate, but the data for concert hall effects are used to represent the inherent beauty of music. The listener will not be fatigued even after long hours of opera entertainment.

Category: MOVIE

Sound programs optimized for viewing video sources such as movies.

Standard CINEMA DSP	This program creates a sound field emphasizing the surround feeling without disturbing the original acoustic positioning of multi-channel audio such as Dolby Digital and DTS. It has been designed with the concept of an ideal movie theater, in which the audience is surrounded by beautiful reverberations from the left, right and rear.
Spectacle CINEMA DSP	This program represents the spectacular feeling of large-scale movie productions. It reproduces a broad theater sound field that matches cinemascope and wider-screen movies with an excellent dynamic range providing everything from very small sound effects to large, impressive sounds.
Sci-Fi CINEMA DSP	This program clearly reproduces the finely elaborated sound design of the latest science fiction and special effects-featuring movies. You can enjoy a variety of cinematographically created virtual spaces reproduced with clear separation between dialogue, sound effects and background music.
Adventure CINEMA DSP	This program is ideal for precisely reproducing the sound design of action and adventure movies. The sound field restrains reverberations but puts emphasis on reproducing a powerful space expanded widely to the left and right. The reproduced depth is also restrained relatively to ensure the separation between audio channels and the clarity of the sound.
Drama CINEMA DSP	This sound field features stable reverberations that match a wide range of movie genres from serious dramas to musicals and comedies. The reverberations are modest but offer an optimum 3D feeling, reproducing effects tones and background music softly but cubically around clear words and center positioning in a way that does not fatigue the listener even after long hours of viewing.
Mono Movie CINEMA DSP	This program is provided for reproducing monaural video sources such as a classic movie in an atmosphere of a good old movie theater. The program produces the optimum expansion and reverberation to the original audio to create a comfortable space with a certain sound depth.

Category: STEREO

Sound programs are optimized for listening to stereo sources.

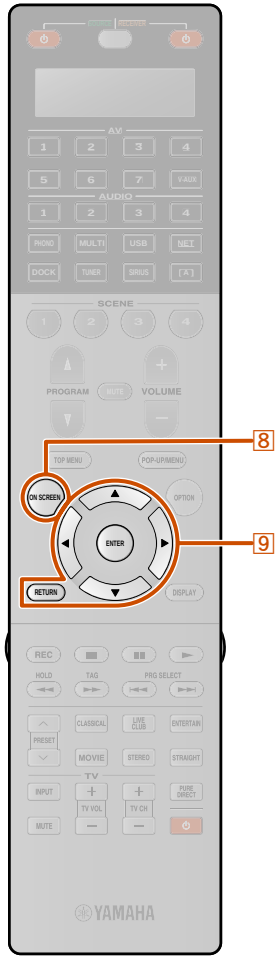
2ch Stereo	Use this program to mix down multi-channel sources to 2-channels. When multi-channel signals are input, they are down mixed to 2-channels and output from the front left and right speakers.
7ch Stereo CINEMA DSP	Use this program to output sound from all speakers. When you playback multi-channel sources, this unit down-mixes the source to 2-channels, and then outputs the sound from all speakers. This program creates a larger sound field and is ideal for background music at parties, etc.

Category: SUR.DECODE (Surround decode mode)

Select this program to playback sources with selected decoders. You can playback 2-channel audio sources in up to 7-channels using a surround decoder.

DD Pro Logic	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic decoder. This is suitable for all kinds of audio sources.
DD PLIIx Movie / DD PLII Movie	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) decoder. This is suitable for movies. 1
DD PLIIx Music / DD PLII Music	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) decoder. This is suitable for music. 1
DD PLIIx Game / DD PLII Game	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) decoder. This is suitable for games. 1
Neo:6 Cinema	Reproduces sound using the DTS Neo:6 decoder. This is suitable for movies.
Neo:6 Music	Reproduces sound using the DTS Neo:6 decoder. This is suitable for music.

1 : You cannot select the Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder in the following conditions:
- When “Surround Back” is set to “None” (☞p. 113).
- When headphones are connected.



Using the TV display to control this unit

This unit features a sophisticated on-screen display (OSD) that helps you to control the amplifier function of this unit. With the OSD, you can view information of the signals being input and the status of this unit. Visual guidance simplifies operations for menus.

Basic operations via the TV screen display

A TV screen is required to display the ON SCREEN or Option menu. Refer to “Connecting a TV monitor” for instructions on connecting a TV screen (☞p. 28).

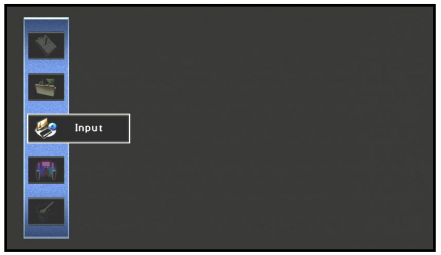
This section describes basic operations for configuring “Input,” “Scene” and “Sound Program” using the OSD.

Press 8ON SCREEN.

The ON SCREEN menu is displayed on the TV screen.

Selecting an input source

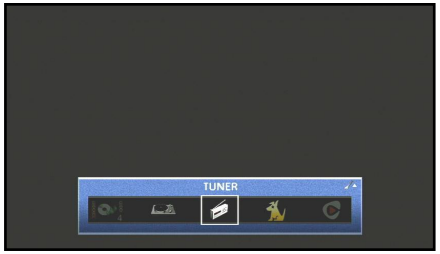
1 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Input” and press 9ENTER.



Input source icons are displayed at the bottom of the TV screen.

2 Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a Input source press 9ENTER.

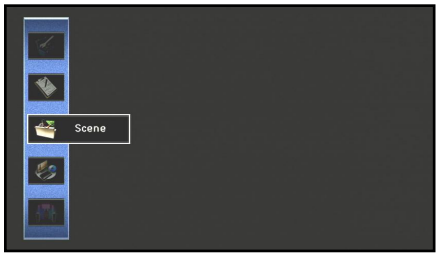
The input source is selected.



- Pressing 9RETURN displays the previous menu screen. Press 9RETURN repeatedly to close the ON SCREEN menu.
- In addition to selecting an input source, detailed settings for each input source can be configured. Refer to “Configuring input sources (Input menu)” (☞p. 98) for details.

Selecting a scene

1 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Scene” and press 9ENTER.



Scene icons are displayed at the bottom of the TV screen.

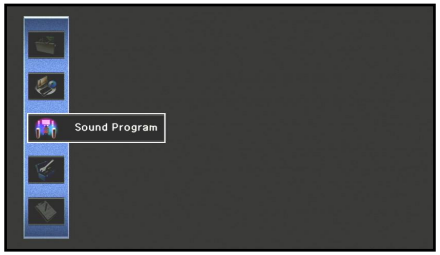
2 Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a scene and press 9ENTER.

The scene is selected.

- Pressing 9RETURN displays the previous menu screen. Press 9RETURN repeatedly to close the ON SCREEN menu.
- Refer to “Changing input settings with a single key (SCENE function)” (☞p. 50) for details on the default scene settings.
- Detailed SCENE function settings can be edited. Refer to “Editing the SCENE function (Scene menu)” (☞p. 102) for details.

Selecting a sound program

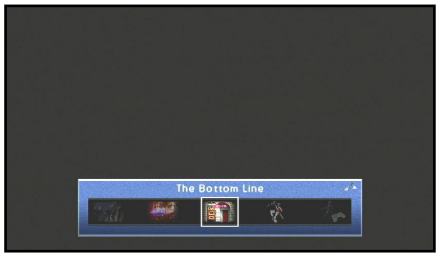
1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Sound Program” and press 9ENTER.**



Sound program icons are displayed at the bottom of the TV screen.

2 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a sound program and press 9ENTER.**

The sound program is selected.



- Pressing 9RETURN displays the previous menu screen. Press 9RETURN repeatedly to close the ON SCREEN menu.
- Refer to “Enjoying favorite sound field effect” (☞p. 51) for various sound programs.
- You can configure the detailed settings for each sound program. Refer to “Setting sound program parameters (Sound Program menu)” (☞p. 105) for details.

NOTES

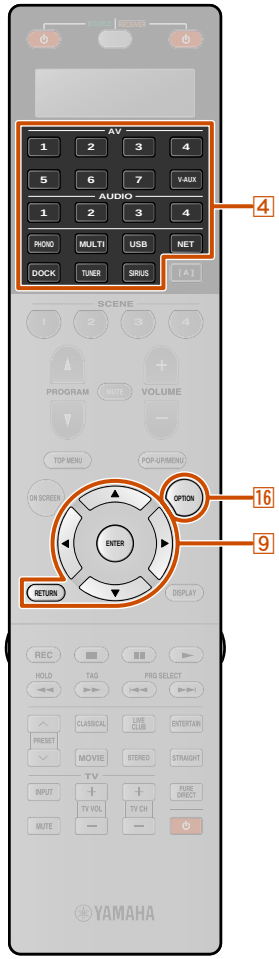
Menus can be operated and the status of this unit confirmed from the following three main displays.

- **ON SCREEN menu (☞p. 98)**
- **Option menu (☞p. 58)**
- **Content window (☞p. 62)**

These menus and status features can be used to configure more various functions in addition to selecting “Input,” “Scene” and “Sound Program.” Refer to each references for details on menus and status.

Configuring settings specific to an individual input source (Option menu)

This unit has a unique Option menu for each input source. Option menus can be used to enable features such as volume trim for compatible input sources or to display audio/video data.



Option menu display and setup

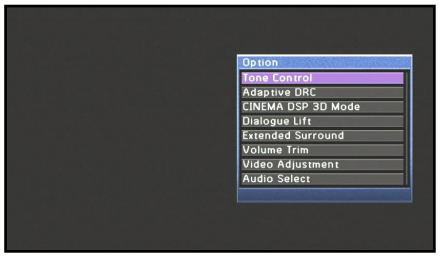
Option menu operations are displayed on the front panel display or TV screen. TV display is used here to explain operation.

1 Use 4Input selector to select an input source to which options will be applied.

2 Press 16OPTION.

The Option menu is displayed.

Option menu



The displayed Option menu settings differ depending on the input source.
For more information, refer to the “Option menu” on the next page.

3 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the desired setting and press 9ENTER.

Parameters of the selected item are displayed.

4 Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select the desired item (or enable a function).

- Press 9RETURN to display the previous screen or close the Option menu.
- The Option menu may close automatically when some functions are enabled.

5 Press 16OPTION to close the Option menu.

The keys on the remote control may not respond for a few seconds after the Option menu is closed. Should this occur, select the input source again.

Option menu

The following items are provided for each input source. "✓" indicates the available menu for each input source. ♛1

	AV1-4	AV5-7	V-AUX	AUDIO1-4	PHONO	MULTI CH	USB	PC	NET RADIO	Rhapsody	SIRIUS IR	DOCK (iPod)	DOCK (Bluetooth)	TUNER	SIRIUS
Tone Control	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Adaptive DRC	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CINEMA DSP 3D Mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Dialogue Lift ♛2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Extended Surround	✓	✓	✓	✓ ♛3											
Volume Trim	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Video Adjustment	✓		✓	✓ ♛4	✓ ♛4										
Audio Select	✓		✓	✓ ♛3	✓ ♛3										
Shuffle							✓	✓		✓		✓ ♛5			
Repeat							✓	✓		✓		✓ ♛5			
Connect													✓		
Disconnect													✓		
Pairing													✓		

♛1 : When "Tone Control," "Adaptive DRC," "CINEMA DSP 3D Mode," "Dialogue Lift," or "Extended Surround" is adjusted for an input source, the same value is applied to other input sources and "ALL" is displayed on the front panel display. When settings specific to a certain input source are selected, the input source name is displayed on the front panel display. If the name of the input source has been changed (☞p. 99), the original name of the input source is displayed.

♛2 : "Dialogue Lift" can be adjusted only when the presence speakers are available.

♛3 : This function is only available when "Coax/Opt" is assigned to this input source from "Input Assignment" in the Setup menu. Refer to "Assigning component input and output jacks" for details (☞p. 124).

♛4 : This function can be set only when "Component" is assigned to this input source from "Input Assignment" in the Setup menu. Refer to "Assigning component input and output jacks" for details (☞p. 124).

♛5 : Not available for Yamaha Wireless System for iPod.

Adjusting high/low-frequency sound

Tone Control

You can adjust the balance of the high-frequency range (Treble) and low-frequency range (Bass) of sounds output from the front left and right speakers to obtain desired tone.

Adjustable range	-6.0 dB to +6.0 dB
Adjustment increments	0.5 dB

Auto-adjusting the sound level to make even low volumes more audible

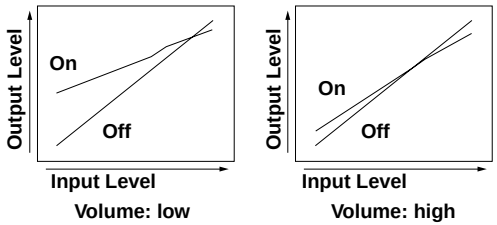
Adaptive DRC

Adjusts the dynamic range in conjunction with the volume level (from minimum to maximum). When this item is set to “On,” dialogue and sound effects are clearer. 1

Off **(Default)**	Does not adjust the dynamic range automatically.
On	Adjusts the dynamic range automatically.

When “On” is selected, the dynamic range is adjusted as follows.

If the volume level is low, the dynamic range is narrow.
If the volume level is high, the dynamic range is wide.



Enjoying more spatial sound fields

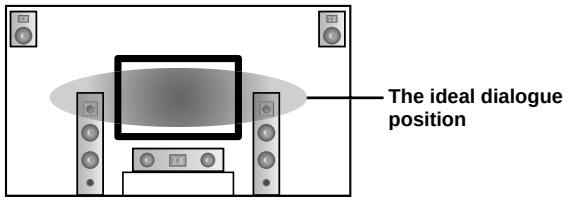
CINEMA DSP 3D Mode

When CINEMA DSP 3D is enabled, set whether to use sound programs in CINEMA DSP 3D mode (☞p. 52).

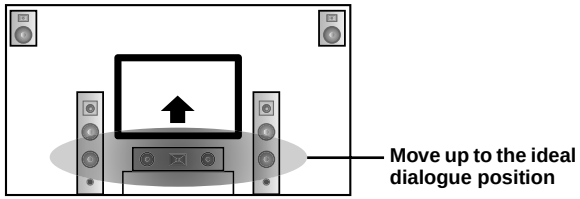
Adjusts the vertical position of dialogues

Dialogue Lift

Adjusts the vertical position of center sound such as dialogues when presence speakers are used. Increasing this parameter raises the position.



If the dialogue seems to come out from a lower position than the video monitor screen, increase this parameter.



“0” (default) corresponds to the lowest position and “5” to the highest position.

- “Dialogue Lift” can be adjusted only when the presence speakers are available.
- You cannot move the dialogue position lower than the default setting.

Selecting the 5.1-channel signal playback method

Extended Surround

Selects whether to reproduce 5.1-channel input signals in 6.1- or 7.1-channel when surround back speakers are used. 2

Auto **(Default)**	Automatically selects the most suitable decoder if a flag for reproducing surround back channel is present, and reproduces the signals in 6.1- or 7.1-channel.
DD PLIIx Movie	Always reproduces signals in 7.1-channel using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Movie decoder whether or not surround back channel signals are contained. You can select this parameter when two surround back speakers are connected.
DD PLIIx Music	Always reproduces signals in 6.1- or 7.1-channel using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music decoder whether or not surround back channel signals are contained. You can select this parameter when one or two surround back speakers are connected.
EX/ES	Automatically selects the most suitable decoder for input signals whether or not the flag for reproducing surround back channel is present, and always reproduces signals in 6.1-channel.
Off	Always reproduces original channels whether or not the flag for reproducing surround back channel is present.

1 : “Adaptive DRC” is also effective when you use headphones.
2 : AV5-6 or AUDIO1-2 are available when “Audio Return Channel” is on, and the input source is used for “TV Audio Input.”

Adjusting volume between input sources

Volume Trim

Reduces any change in volume when switching between input sources by correcting volume differences in each input source. You can adjust this parameter for each input source.

Adjustable range	-6.0 dB to +6.0 dB
Default setting	0.0 dB
Adjustment increments	0.5 dB steps

Selecting a video adjustment preset

Video Adjustment

Selects the desired “Adjustment” (☞p. 118) preset to be applied to the selected input source.

Selecting audio input jacks

Audio Select

Select the audio input jack through which source signal is input when an input source is connected to more than one jack.

Auto **(Default)**	Automatically selects input signal in the following order: (1) HDMI (2) Digital signal (3) Analog signal
HDMI	Selects only HDMI signal. When no HDMI signal is input, no sound is output.
Coax/Opt	Selects only coaxial or optical signal. When no signal is input, no sound is output.
Analog	Selects only analog signal. If no analog signal is input, no sound is output.

Shuffle playback

Shuffle

Plays back songs or albums in random order. When the shuffle function is enabled, “ ” appears on the TV screen. 1

Off	The shuffle function is turned off.
On 2	The shuffle function is tuned on.
Songs 3	Plays songs back in random order.
Albums 3	Plays albums back in random order.

Repeat playback

Repeat

Plays songs or albums repeatedly. When the repeat function is enabled, “ (Single / One[iPod])” or “ (All)” appears on the TV screen. 1

Off	The repeat function is turned off.
Single / One[iPod]	Plays a song back repeatedly.
All	When all songs have completed playback, returns to the start and repeats playback.

Connect / Disconnect Bluetooth component

Connect

Disconnect

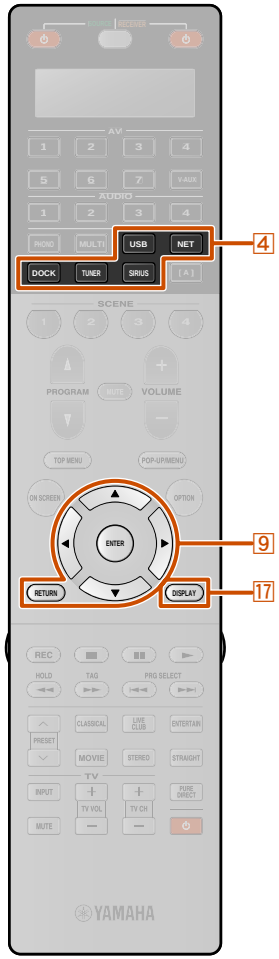
Switches communication with a Bluetooth component on and off (☞p. 94).

Pairing Bluetooth component

Pairing

Performs pairing of this unit and a Bluetooth component (☞p. 94).

1 : Not available for Yamaha Wireless System for iPod.
2 : This item is displayed only when PC, USB or Rhapsody is selected as input source.
3 : This item is displayed only when DOCK (iPod) is selected as input source.



Confirming and operating input sources from the content window

When USB, NET, DOCK, TUNER or SIRIUS is selected, the content window is displayed on the TV screen. Playback style for iPod, functions for FM/AM tuner, SIRIUS Satellite Radio, Rhapsody, SIRIUS Internet Radio, Internet Radio, PC, and USB can be set in the content window.

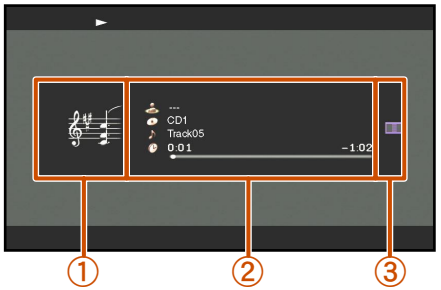
A TV screen is required to display the content window. Refer to “Connecting a TV monitor” for instructions on connecting a TV monitor (☞p. 28).

Displaying the content window on the TV screen

Press 4USB, 4NET, 4DOCK, 4TUNER or 4SIRIUS to display the content window.

The content window consists of two main displays, the Now Playing view and the Browse view.

Below is the example of the Now Playing view for DOCK (iPod).



① **Image display**
Icon for each input source or album art is displayed.

② **Information display**
Information on the current input source is displayed.

③ **Screen button area**
Buttons to operate each input source are displayed here. These buttons vary depending on the selected input. For details on operations for each input, see the following.
- FM/AM stations (☞p. 64)
- HD Radio stations (☞p. 66)
- SIRIUS channels (☞p. 70)
- PC servers (☞p. 77)
- USB storage (☞p. 79)
- Internet Radio (☞p. 81)
- Rhapsody (☞p. 82)
- SIRIUS Internet Radio (☞p. 86)
- iPod (☞p. 91)

- In the Now Playing view, press 9ENTER and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a button. Then press 9ENTER to execute the selection.
- In the Browse view, press 9Cursor ▷ and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a button. Then press 9ENTER to execute the selection.
- Press 9RETURN repeatedly to exit from the operation.

Switching the display between the Now Playing view and the Browse view

You can switch the display between the Now Playing view and the Browse view by the following methods.

- **Press 17DISPLAY to cycle between the Now Playing view and the Browse view.**

- **In the Now Playing view, press 9ENTER and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the ☰ icon. Then press 9ENTER to switch to the Now Playing view.**

- **In the Browse view, press 9Cursor ▷ and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the ♪ icon. Then press 9ENTER to switch to the Now Playing view.**

Browse view

or 17DISPLAY

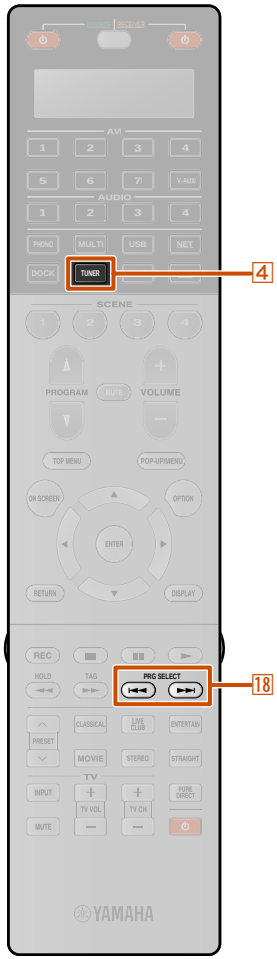
or 17DISPLAY

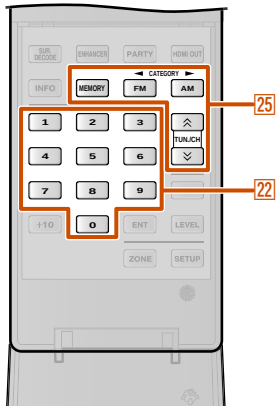
Now Playing view

When selecting “DOCK (iPod)” as input source and playing back video content of iPod/iPhone, the screen switches as follows by pressing 17DISPLAY repeatedly.
Now Playing view → Browse view →
Video playback screen (content window disappears) → Now Playing view

FM/AM tuning

When using the FM/AM tuner, adjust the direction of the FM/AM antenna connected to this unit to get the best reception.





Selecting a frequency for reception (Normal tuning)

1 **Press 4TUNER to switch to the tuner input.**

2 **Press 25FM or 25AM to select a band to receive.**

3 **Use 25TUN./CH ⌃ / ⌄ to set a frequency to receive.**

25TUN./CH ⌃

Increases the frequency. Press and hold this key for longer than a second to search automatically for a station on a higher frequency than the current one. 1

25TUN./CH ⌄

Decreases the frequency. Press and hold this key for longer than a second to search automatically for a station on a lower frequency than the current one. 1

Lights up when a broadcast is received from a station

Lights up when a stereo broadcast is received

■ Entering a frequency number

In normal tuning mode, use the 22Numeric keys to enter a frequency. Leave the decimal point out when entering a number. 2

For example, enter as follows to select a station on 98.5 MHz.

■ Registering stations manually (Manual Preset)

Select stations manually and register them as presets individually.

1 **Tune in to the station you want to register, referring to “Selecting a frequency for reception (Normal tuning).”** 3

2 **Use one of the following methods to register the station you are currently receiving.**

■ Registering to a preset number to which no station is registered

Press 25MEMORY for 3 seconds or longer.

The station will be registered automatically to the lowest open preset number (or the next number after the one registered most recently).

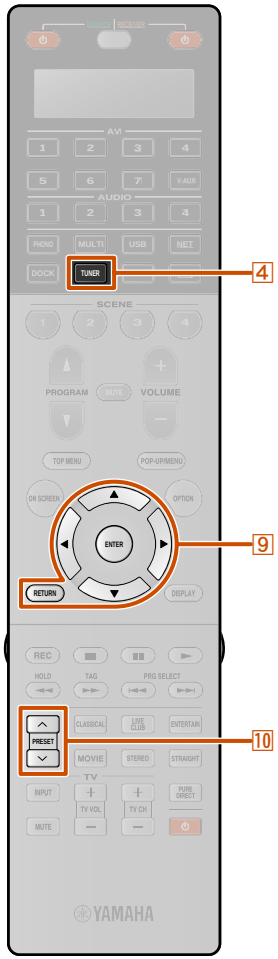
Registered frequencies

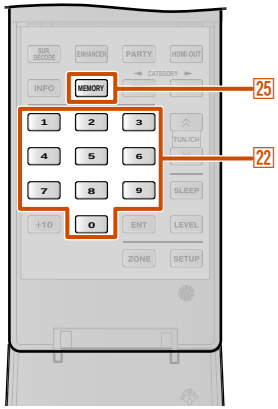
Continues to the next page

1 : When searching for a station, release the key once the search has started.

2 : “Wrong Station!” appears on the front panel display when you enter a frequency that is out of receivable range. Make sure that the frequency entered is correct.

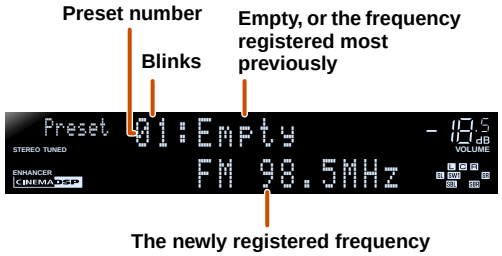
3 : When registering a sub-audio program “HD2” to “HD8” of the FM HD Radio station, press 18PRG SELECT to select the desired audio program.





■ Designating a preset number for registration

Press 25MEMORY once, to display “Manual Preset” on the front panel display. After a small wait, the preset number that the station has been registered to will appear. 1



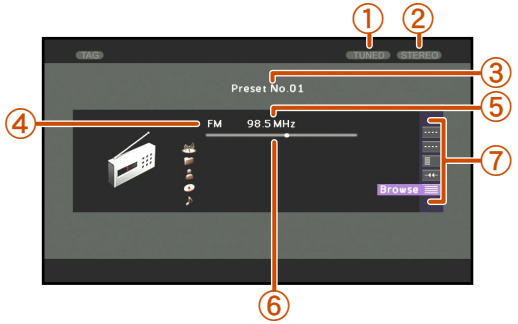
Press 10PRESET ∧ / ∨ to select the preset number to register the station to, and then press 25MEMORY to register.

To select a registered station, press 10PRESET ∧ / ∨ to select the preset number of the station. 2

Navigating the FM/AM tuner from the content window

The station currently received can be confirmed from the menu displayed on the TV screen. Various FM/AM tuner operations can be performed from the content window rather than controls on the front panel display. The content window is displayed when 4TUNER is pressed.
You can operate the FM/AM tuner from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Tuned indicator**
Lights up when a station is received.

② **Stereo indicator**
Lights up when a stereo broadcast is received. When “Auto Mode” is set to “Mono,” the indicator does not light.

③ **Preset number**
The selected preset number is displayed.

④ **Band**
The selected band (FM or AM) is displayed.

⑤ **Frequency**
The frequency currently received is displayed.

⑥ **Frequency guide**
The frequency currently received is displayed as a cursor on the bar.

⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Now Playing view” for details.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9ENTER. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Manual Tuning

You can tune in to a desired FM/AM station by specifying its frequency.

FM	Switches a band to FM.
AM	Switches a band to AM.
Tuning -	Decreases the frequency.
Tuning +	Increases the frequency.
Auto -	Automatically searches for a station on a lower frequency than the current station.
Auto +	Automatically searches for a station on a higher frequency than the current station.
Direct	Selects the frequency manually.
Memory	Registers the station currently received as a preset station. Up to 40 FM/AM stations can be registered.

1 : Press 9RETURN or wait with no operation for 30 seconds to exit the Manual Preset mode.

2 : To select a station by selecting a preset number, use the 22Numeric keys to enter the preset number of the station you want to listen. When an invalid number is entered, “Wrong Num.” appears on the front panel display. Check that you have entered the correct number.

Preset Select

You can call preset stations.

Preset -	Selects the previous preset number.
Preset +	Selects the next preset number.
Preset -8	Returns the previous page.
Preset +8	Goes to the next page.
Memory	Registers the station currently received as a preset station. Up to 40 FM/AM stations can be registered.
Direct	Selects a station directly by entering the preset number.

Utility

Auto Mode	Selects “Auto” or “Mono” when receiving the FM station (☞p. 63).

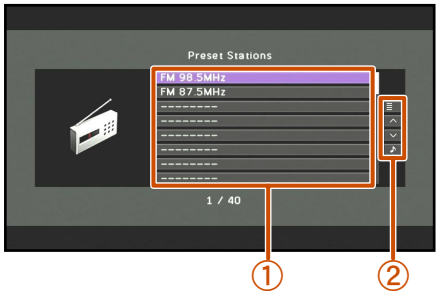
Scroll

Switches the scroll target.

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Preset station list**
The list of preset stations is displayed.

② **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9**Cursor ▷**. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor △ / ▽** and 9**ENTER**.

Utility

Auto Preset	Detects FM stations with a strong signal and automatically registers up to 40 FM stations, beginning with the next number after the current number (☞p. 65). AM stations cannot be registered by using “Auto Preset.”
Clear Preset	Clears registration of the preset station highlighted in the preset station list (☞p. 65).
Clear All Preset	Clears registration of all preset stations.

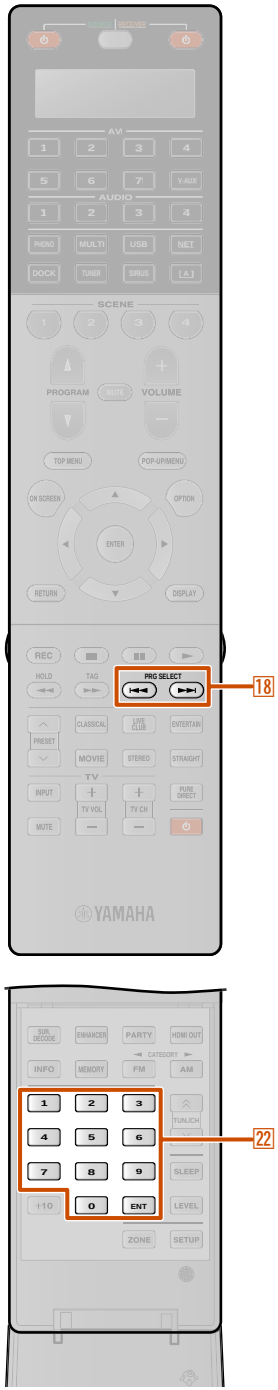
1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.



Listening to the HD Radio™

HD Radio technology is a new technology that enables FM and AM radio stations to broadcast programs digitally. Digital broadcasting provides listeners with radically improved audio quality and reception as well as new data services. Furthermore, supplemental program services allow listeners to select from up to 8 HD Radio programs multicast on a single FM HD Radio channel. For further information on HD Radio technology, visit “http://www.ibiquity.com/”.
This unit is equipped with an HD Radio reception feature, facilitating CD quality FM broadcasts as well as analog FM stereo quality AM broadcasts. In addition, this unit can receive both audio and data (such as song titles, artist names, program types, and comments) from all HD Radio programs (HD1 to HD8).

- The tuning method for HD Radio stations are same as analog FM/AM radio stations; however, you only tune into the analog part of a hybrid HD Radio station while this unit is in the monaural tuning mode (☞p. 69).
- This unit is capable of receiving both hybrid and all-digital HD Radio station signals. However, this unit may not automatically receive all-digital FM station signals and the automatic tuning operation may stop. In this case, enter the frequency of the desired all-digital FM HD Radio station directly by using 22**Numeric keys** (☞p. 63).

Selecting HD Radio™ audio programs

The HD indicator lights up in the front panel display when this unit is tuned into an HD Radio station. In this state, you can select the desired audio program if the selected FM HD Radio station provides multiple audio programs (up to 8).

When multiple audio programs are provided

Lights up when a broadcast is received from a HD Radio station

Audio program number (absolute)

Press 18PRG SELECT ⏮ / ⏭ repeatedly to select the desired audio programs.

Audio programs can also be selected using 22**Numeric keys** (1-8) and 22**ENT** when this unit is in the automatic or manual tuning mode. When the selected audio program is not available currently, “HDx Off” (“x” indicates the program number) appears.

- When reception for an audio program ceases, the HD indicator disappears from the front panel display and HD1 is automatically selected after approximately 20 seconds.
- Some audio programs may not contain data programs depending on the broadcasting station and the time period.

When only one audio program is provided

If this unit is tuned into an FM HD Radio station including only one audio program or an AM HD Radio station, you cannot select audio programs.

Lights up when a broadcast is received from a HD Radio station

Behavior of the display

This unit automatically shows the HD Radio information (Station Info, etc.) on the front panel display after 3 seconds. You can switch HD Radio information to be displayed (☞p. 67).

Audio program number (absolute)

Audio program number (relative/total)

Using the iTunes Tagging

This unit is equipped with the iTunes Tagging that enables HD Radio listeners to "tag" songs for subsequent preview and purchase on iTunes.
For details on the iTunes Tagging, visit "http://www.ibiquity.com/".

1 Tune into an HD Radio station and select HD Radio audio program (if available).

If the selected HD Radio program (or song being played) supports the iTunes Tagging, the TAG indicator lights up on the front panel display.

Lights up

2 While a song you want to tag is being played back, press 18TAG.

If a song is tagged, "StorageSuccess" and the number of stored iTunes Tagging information files (up to 50) appear in the front panel display.

- "Insufficient Data" is displayed on the front panel display if tagging is not possible.
- If a status or error message is displayed on the front panel, see "iTunes Tagging" (☞p. 154).

This unit transmits the "tag" data to the iPod/iPhone if an iPod/iPhone that supports iTunes Tagging is placed in the Universal Dock for iPod (YDS-12, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit. Otherwise, this unit stores the "tag" data (up to 50) in the internal memory and will transmit it next time your iPod/iPhone is placed in the dock.

Displaying the HD Radio™ information

You can display the HD Radio information on the front panel display. 1

Press 21INFO repeatedly to toggle the HD Radio information display modes as shown below.

Station Info
Station Info, frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

Category
Program category, frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

Artist / Song
Artist name, song title, frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

Album
Album title, frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

Tag Info
The number of iTunes Tagging information files stored in the internal memory, frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

DSP Program
Current sound field program (☞p. 54), frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

Audio Decoder
Current audio decoder (☞p. 51), frequency, audio program number (absolute)

↓

Back to "Station Info"

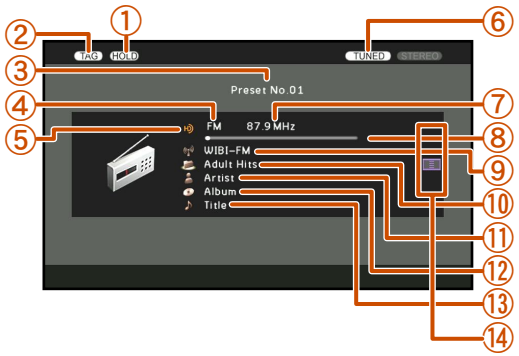
Display example (DSP Program)

1 : If the HD Radio information contains a character that cannot be recognized by this unit, the character will be displayed with a space.
When an information is unavailable, "——" appears.

Navigating the HD Radio™ tuner from the content window

A HD Radio station currently received can be confirmed from the menu displayed on the TV screen. Various HD Radio operations can be performed from the content window rather than controls on the front panel display. The content window is displayed when 4**TUNER** is pressed.
The HD Radio tuner can be operated from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Now Playing view



① **HOLD indicator**
Lights up when 18**HOLD** is pressed to activate the hold function. The artist name and song title currently received will remain displayed. Press 18**HOLD** again to cancel the hold function.

② **TAG indicator**
Lights up when the selected station supports the iTunes Tagging.

③ **Preset number**
The selected preset number is displayed.

④ **Band**
The selected band (FM or AM) is displayed.

⑤ **HD Radio indicator**
Lights up when receiving the HD Radio station.

⑥ **Tuned indicator**
Lights up when a station is received.

⑦ **Frequency**
The frequency currently received is displayed.

⑧ **Frequency guide**
The frequency currently received is displayed as a cursor on the bar.

⑨ **Channel Name**
The channel name currently received is displayed.

⑩ **Channel Category**
The category of the channel is displayed.

⑪ **Artist Name**
The artist name of the current song is displayed.

⑫ **Song Title**
The title of the current song is displayed.

⑬ **Album Name**
The album name of the current song is displayed.

⑭ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Now Playing view” for details.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9**ENTER**. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor △ / ▽** and 9**ENTER**.

Manual Tuning

You can tune in to a desired FM/AM station by specifying its frequency.

FM	Switches a band to FM.
AM	Switches a band to AM.
Tuning -	Decreases the frequency.
Tuning +	Increases the frequency.
Auto -	Automatically searches for a station on a lower frequency than the current station.
Auto +	Automatically searches for a station on a higher frequency than the current station.
Direct	Selects the frequency manually.
Memory	Registers the station currently received as a preset station. Up to 40 FM/AM stations can be registered.
Program -	Select the previous program of the HD Radio.
Program +	Select the next program of the HD Radio.
Hold	Activates the hold function. The artist name and song title currently received will remain displayed.
Tag	Applies the iTunes Tagging.

Preset Select

You can call preset stations registered.

Preset -	Selects the previous preset number.
Preset +	Selects the next preset number.
Preset -8	Returns the previous page.
Preset +8	Goes to the next page.
Direct	Selects a station directly by entering the preset number.
Memory	Registers the station currently received as a preset station. Up to 40 FM/AM stations can be registered.
Hold	Activates the hold function. The artist name and song title currently received will remain displayed.
Tag	Applies the iTunes Tagging.

Utility

Audio Mode	Selects “Auto” or “Mono” when receiving the FM (or HD Radio) station (☞p. 66). Auto — Stereo reception. HD Radio program is received by priority. Mono — Monaural reception. Reception is better in monaural mode. HD Radio program is not received.

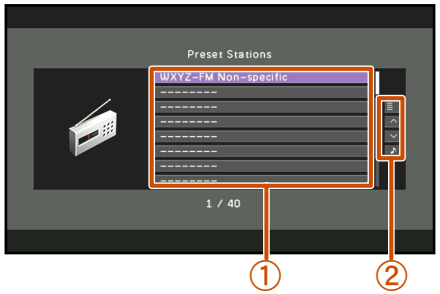
Scroll

Switches the scroll target (channel name, channel category, artist name, song name, or album name).

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Preset station list**
The list of preset stations is displayed.

② **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9**Cursor** ▷. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor** △ / ▽ and 9**ENTER**.

Utility

Auto Preset	Detect HD FM, HD AM or analog FM stations with a strong signal and automatically registers up to 40 stations, beginning with the next number after the current number (☞p. 69). Analog AM stations cannot be registered by using “Auto preset.”
Clear Preset	Clears registration of the preset station highlighted in the preset station list.
Clear All Preset	Clears registration for all preset stations.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

Listening to the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™

To listen to Satellite Radio, you'll need to connect a SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner (sold separately) to your Sirius-Ready receiver. SIRIUS Satellite Radio is available to residents of the US (except Alaska and Hawaii) and Canada.

Satellite Radio delivers a variety of commercial-free music from categories ranging from Pop, Rock, Country, R&B, Dance, Jazz, Classical and many more plus coverage of all the top professional and college sports including play by play games from select leagues and teams. Additional programming includes expert sports talk, uncensored entertainment, comedy, family programming, local traffic and weather and news from your most trusted sources.

Once you've purchased a SIRIUS tuner you'll need to activate it and subscribe to begin enjoying the service. Easy to follow installation and setup instructions are provided with the SIRIUS tuner. There are a variety of programming packages available, including the option of adding "The Best of XM" programming to the SIRIUS service. The "Best of XM" service is not available to SIRIUS Canada subscribers at this time. Please check with SIRIUS Canada for any updates using the numbers and web address below.

Family friendly packages are also available to restrict channels featuring content that may be inappropriate for children.

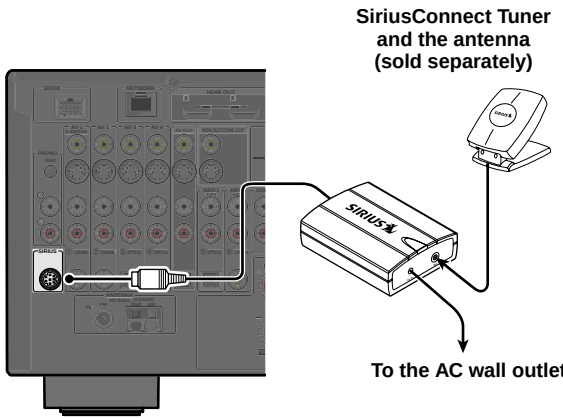
To subscribe to SIRIUS, U.S. and Canadian customers can call 1-888-539-SIRI (1-888-539-7474) or visit sirius.com (US) or siriuscanada.ca (Canada).

SIRIUS Radio Legal

SIRIUS and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All other marks and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved. SIRIUS subscription sold separately. Taxes and a one-time activation fee may apply. SIRIUS tuner required (sold separately) to receive the SIRIUS service. All programming and fees subject to change. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SIRIUS Satellite Radio System. Service not available in Alaska or Hawaii.

Connecting the SiriusConnect™ tuner

Connect the SiriusConnect tuner (sold separately) to the SIRIUS jack on the rear panel of this unit. For details, see the instruction manuals provided with the SiriusConnect tuner.



- To ensure optimal reception of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals, the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner must be placed at or near a window with no obstacles in the path to the sky. The orientation of the antenna for the best reception differs depending on the area. Refer to the instruction manuals provided with the SiriusConnect tuner for the installation of the antenna. You can mount it indoors or outdoors.
- Use the Antenna information on the front panel display or the SIRIUS information screen on the TV screen (☞p. 74) to check the antenna reception level and adjust the orientation of the antenna.
- You need to connect the SiriusConnect tuner to the AC wall outlet.

NOTES

- If "CHECK SR TUNER" or "ANTENNA ERROR" appears on the front panel display, the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner or antenna is incorrect. In such cases, check the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner and the antenna.
- If "NOT SUPPORTED" appears on the front panel display, this unit does not support the connected SiriusConnect tuner.

Activating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ subscription

Before using the SIRIUS Satellite Radio feature, you need to activate your SIRIUS Satellite Radio subscription. To activate the subscription you need the Sirius ID which is uniquely assigned to the SiriusConnect tuner. Sirius ID is 12-digit number which is indicated on the package of the SiriusConnect tuner and on the label of the SiriusConnect tuner. Sirius ID is also configured on the front panel display when you tune into the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel "0."

Displaying the Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner

1 Press 4SIRIUS.

2 Press 220 and then 22ENT to display the Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner.

"000 Sirius ID" and "xxxxxxxxxxxx" ("xxxxxxxxxxxx" indicates the 12-digit Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner) appears alternately on the front panel display.

Write down the Sirius ID in the space provided below.

ID:_____

3 Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to activate your subscription.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio online information
Contact for activation
URL: https://activate.siriusradio.com/
Phone: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (1-888-539-7474)

Status messages appear on the front panel display and the TV screen during the activation. For details, see "SIRIUS Satellite Radio™" (☞p. 154). Once the activation is finished, "SUB UPDATED" appears.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ operations

1 Press 4SIRIUS to select "SIRIUS" as the input source.

The SIRIUS Satellite Radio information (such as channel number, channel name, category, artist name, or song title) for the currently selected channel appears on the front panel display. ♛1

NOTES
- Before activating your subscription, you can only select "184" or "000."
- If a status message or an error message appears on the front panel display or TV screen, refer to "SIRIUS Satellite Radio™" (☞p. 154).

2 Search for a channel by using one of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio search modes.

All channel search mode
Selects a channel from the all channel list (☞p. 72).

Category search mode
Selects a channel by category (☞p. 72).

Direct number access mode
Selects a channel directly by entering the channel number (☞p. 72).

Preset search mode
Selects a channel from the preset channels (☞p. 73). You can preset channels by registering them to specific numbers, and later just select those numbers to tune in.

- SIRIUS Satellite Radio information can be displayed on the front panel display and the TV screen (☞p. 74).
- If you tune into a channel that you do not subscribe, "CALL SIRIUS on the front panel display" or "CALL 888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" appears on the TV screen.

♛1 : When you select "SIRIUS" as the input source, this unit automatically calls the previously selected channel.

All channel search mode

Press 25TUN./CH ⩓ / ⩔ repeatedly to search for a channel within all channels.

All channel search mode

- You can search for a channel quickly by pressing and holding 25TUN./CH ⩓ / ⩔.
- You can skip channels to the previous or next category by pressing 25CATEGORY ◁ / ▷.

Category search mode

1 Press 25CATEGORY ◁ / ▷ to select the channel category.

When you select the category, the first channel in the category is selected.

Category search mode | Category name

The first channel in the category

If you don't operate within 10 seconds, the category search mode returns to "ALL (All Channel Search)."

2 While "Category" is displayed on the front panel display, press 25TUN./CH ⩓ / ⩔ repeatedly to search for a channel within the selected channel category.

You can search for a channel quickly by pressing and holding 25TUN./CH ⩓ / ⩔.

NOTE

This unit skips the following channels in all channel search mode or category search mode. This is not a malfunction.

- channels that are locked (☞p. 74)
- channels that are not currently in service
- channels that you do not subscribe to

Direct number access mode

Press the 22Numeric keys to enter the desired three-digit channel number.

For example, to enter the number 123, press "1," "2" and then "3" of the 22Numeric keys.

- When entering a one-digit or two-digit channel number, enter the number using the 22Numeric keys and then press 22ENT to confirm your entry.
- This unit automatically accepts your entry if you do not press 22ENT within a few seconds after entering the number.
- If the selected channel is locked, "PIN:___" appears on the front panel display. Enter the 4-digit Parental Lock code number by using the 22Numeric keys or press 22ENT to cancel (☞p. 74).
- If the selected channel is not available, an advisory message may appear. For details, refer to "SIRIUS Satellite Radio™" (☞p. 154).
- If this unit is in preset search mode, a preset number is selected instead of a channel number when you press the 22Numeric keys. To switch to direct number access mode, press 25TUN./CH ⩓ / ⩔.

Registering and recalling the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ channels

Up to 40 SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels can be registered as preset channels.

Registering preset channels

1 Search for a channel to be registered.

For details on searching channels, refer to the following pages.

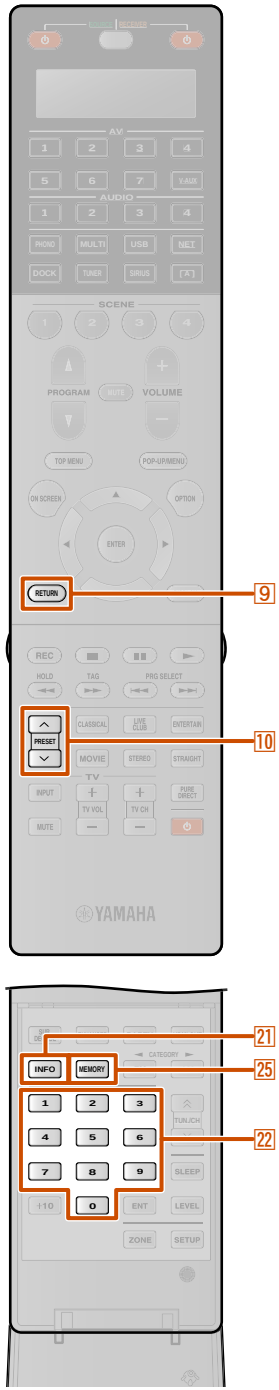
- All channel search mode (☞p. 72)
- Category search mode (☞p. 72)
- Direct number access mode (☞p. 72)

2 Use one of the following methods to register the channel currently received.

■ Registering to a preset number for which no channel has been registered

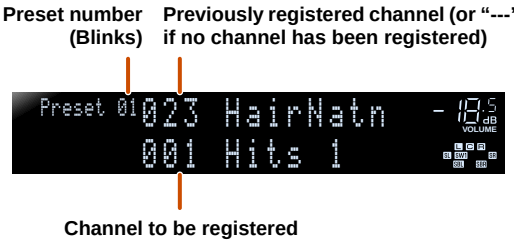
Press and hold 25MEMORY for at least 2 second.
The channel will be automatically registered to the lowest available preset number (or the next number after the last to which a channel was registered).

Preset number | Registered channel



■ Designating a preset number for registration

Press 25**MEMORY** once.



Press 10**PRESET** ∧ / ∨ to select the preset number to which the channel will be registered and then press 25**MEMORY** to register.

To cancel registration, press 9**RETURN** or do not operate the remote control for about 30 seconds.

Recalling a preset channel (Preset Search mode)

Specify preset numbers to recall registered channels.

Press 10PRESET ∧ / ∨ to change the preset numbers (1 to 40).

- Preset numbers to which no channel has been registered are skipped.
- Preset numbers can also be selected by pressing 22**Numeric keys**.

Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ information

You can display the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information on the front panel display. 1

NOTE
If a status message or an error message appears on the front panel display or TV screen, see "SIRIUS Satellite Radio™" (☞p. 154).

■ Front panel display

Press 21INFO repeatedly to toggle the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information display modes as shown below.

Artist/Song
Artist name, song title, channel number

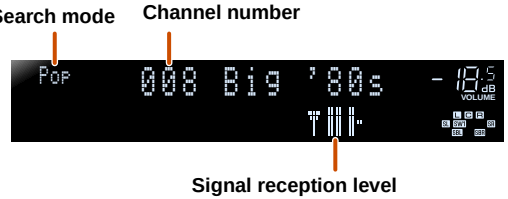
↓

Composer
Composer name, channel number

↓

Antenna Level
Antenna reception level, channel number

Signal reception level



Signal reception is shown in four levels.

↓

DSP Program
Current sound program (☞p. 54), channel number

↓

Audio Decoder
Current Audio Decoder (☞p. 51), channel number

↓

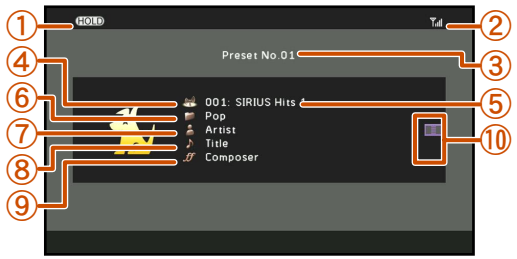
Back to "Artist/Song"

1 : If the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information contains a character that cannot be recognized by this unit, the character will be displayed with a space.
When an information is unavailable, "——" appears.

Navigating the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ tuner from the content window

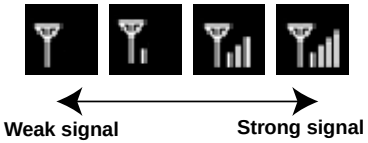
The SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel currently received can be confirmed from the menu displayed on the TV screen. Various SIRIUS Satellite Radio operations can be performed from the content window rather than controls on the front panel display. The content window is displayed when 4SIRIUS is pressed.
The SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner can be operated from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Now Playing view



① **HOLD indicator**
Lights up when 18HOLD is pressed to activate the hold function. The artist name and song title currently received will remain displayed. Press 18HOLD again to cancel the hold function.

② **Signal reception level**
Indicates the signal reception level.



③ **Preset number**
The selected preset number is displayed.

④ **Channel number**
The channel number currently received is displayed.

⑤ **Channel Name**
The channel name currently received is displayed.

⑥ **Channel Category**
The category of the channel is displayed.

⑦ **Artist Name**
The artist name of the current song is displayed.

⑧ **Song Title**
The title of the current song is displayed.

⑨ **Composer Name**
The composer name of the current song is displayed.

⑩ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See "Screen buttons on the Now Playing view" for details.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9ENTER. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Radio Control

Select a channel for reception.

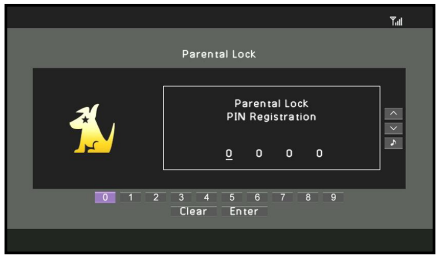
Preset -	Select the previous preset number.
Preset +	Select the next preset number.
CAT -	Select the previous category.
CAT +	Select the next category.
CH -	Scan channels downwards from the current channel.
CH +	Scan channels upwards from the current channel.
Memory	Register the current channel as a preset number. Up to 40 channels can be registered.
Direct	Specify a specific channel by manually entering the channel number.
Hold	Activates the hold function. The artist name and song title currently received will remain displayed.

Utility

Parental Lock	Restricts the access to specified channel.

When the parental lock function is enabled for a particular channel, that channel is skipped in all channel search mode and category search mode.

1 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a number, and press 9ENTER to enter the selected number.**



2 **Repeat step 1 to enter the desired 4-digit code number.**

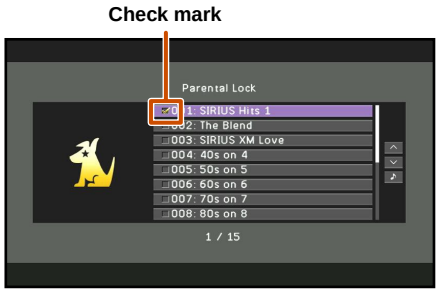
3 **Use 9Cursor ▽ to select "Enter," and press 9ENTER to confirm the 4-digit code number.**

Selecting "Clear" and pressing 9ENTER clears all the code entered.

4 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the category and press 9ENTER.**

Continues to the next page

5 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the channel to be locked and press 9ENTER.



When 9ENTER is pressed, the selected channel is received for confirmation. Each time 9ENTER is pressed after that, lock switches between on and off.

To lock channels in other categories, press 9RETURN to display the category selection screen, and follow the procedure described above.

NOTES

- If a code number is already registered and the different code number is entered, “Wrong Number” appears. Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select Parental Lock and press 9ENTER, and then enter the correct number.
- If you forget the parental lock code or want to change it, reset it using “SR PIN” (☞p. 140).

Receiving locked channels

Use direct number access mode (☞p. 72) or preset search mode (☞p. 73) to receive locked channels. When a locked channel is received, “Locked” is displayed followed by the parental lock code input screen. Use 22Numeric keys to enter the 4-digit code.

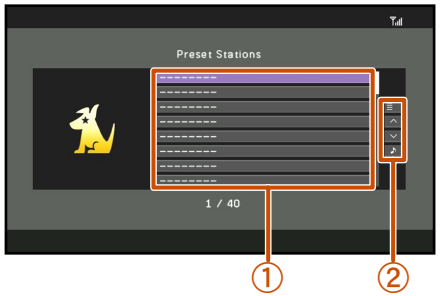
Scroll

Switches the scroll target (channel name, channel category, artist name, song title, or composer name).

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Preset station list**
The list of preset stations is displayed.

② **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9Cursor ▷. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Utility

Parental Lock	Restricts the access to specified channel (☞p. 74).
Clear Preset	Clears registration of the preset station highlighted in the preset station list.
Clear All Preset	Clears registration of all preset stations.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

Playing back tunes on the PC

You can enjoy playback of audio files stored on PCs connected to this unit via your network. To play back audio files on your PC, you need to install Windows Media Player on the PC and configure the media sharing setting of Windows Media Player.

If you do not use a DHCP server, configure the network parameters (IP address, etc.) of this unit manually (☞p. 121).

Windows Media Player setup

1 Install Windows Media Player on your PC.

You can download the installer of Windows Media Player from the Microsoft website, or use the upgrade function of the installed Microsoft Windows Media Player.

2 Turn on your PC then allow media sharing.

Activate Windows Media Player first, enable the media sharing and then select this unit as a device to which the media is shared.

NOTES

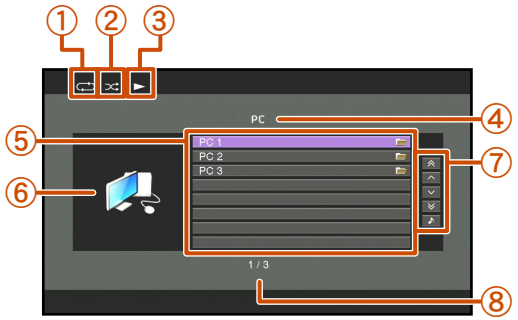
- Some security software installed on your PC (anti-virus software, firewall software, etc.) may block the access of this unit to your PC. In such cases, configure the security software appropriately.
- You can connect this unit to up to 16 PC servers, and each server must be connected to the same subnet as this unit.

Playback of PC music contents

For a complete list of status messages that appear on the front panel display and GUI screen, see “USB and Network” (☞p. 155).

The PC music contents can be operated from the menu displayed on the TV screen.
You can operate the PC contents from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Current directory name**
⑤ **Menu items**
⑥ **Album art / Input icon**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.
⑧ **Current menu number / Number of all menu items**

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9**Cursor** ▷. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor** △ / ▽ and 9**ENTER**.

10 Pages Up

10 Pages Down

Goes to 10 pages forwards or backwards.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

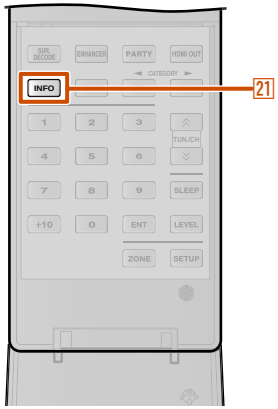
1 Press 4NET repeatedly to select “PC” as the input source.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a PC server and music file to play back.

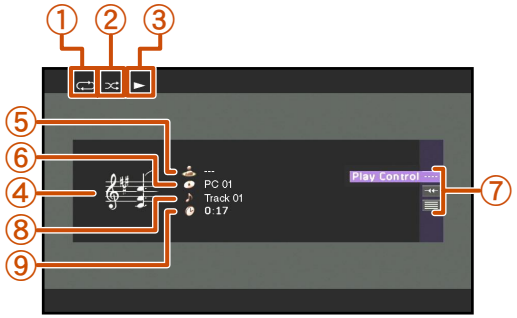
- To select a PC server, folder or file, press 9**Cursor** △ / ▽.
- To confirm the selection, press 9**ENTER**.
- To return to the previous menu, press 9**RETURN**.

3 Press 9ENTER to start playback.

The Now Playing view appears during playback.



Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Album image**
⑤ **Artist name**
⑥ **Album title**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See "Screen buttons on the Now Playing view" for details.
⑧ **Song title**
⑨ **Elapsed time**

- You can switch the information displayed on the front panel display by pressing 21**INFO** (☞p. 11).
- Album images are available only when the file contains image data.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9**ENTER**. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor △ / ▽** and 9**ENTER**.

Play Control

Operates the basic playback functions of PC.

▷ (Play)	Starts playback.
□ (Stop)	Stops playback.
▯▯ (Pause)	Stops playback temporarily.
⏮ (Skip -)	Skips to the beginning of the currently playing song. Press 9**ENTER** at the beginning of the song to skip to a previous song.
⏭ (Skip +)	Skips to the beginning of the next song.

Scroll

Switches the scroll target (artist name, album title, or song title).

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Compatibility of Digital Media Controller

A DLNA-compliant Digital Media Controller (DMC) device can also be used to control music playback. Refer to "Using a PC to control this unit over a network" (☞p. 100) for details. 1, 2

CAUTION
When DMC controls are used to adjust volume, playback volume may be unexpectedly loud. This could result in damage to this unit or the speakers. "Max Volume" can be used to specify the maximum volume level to prevent excessively loud playback (☞p. 116).

Operating basic playback functions with the remote control

Use the following remote control keys to operate (playback, stop, skip, etc.) your PC contents.

7▷	Play
7□	Stop
7▯▯	Switches between playback and pause.
7⏭	Skip forward during playback
7⏮	Skip backward during playback

Shuffle/repeat playback

Use the Option menu to apply playback shuffle and repeat settings. Refer to "Shuffle playback" (☞p. 61) and "Repeat playback" (☞p. 61) for details.

1 : A shortcut button cannot be registered when a DMC is used.
2 : Set "DMC Control" to "Disable" to automatically play back the last song played when this unit is turned on.

Playing back tunes on the USB storage devices

You can enjoy playback of WAV (PCM format only), MP3, WMA, MPEG-4 AAC and FLAC files stored on your USB memory device or USB portable player connected to the USB port on the front panel of this unit. This unit supports USB mass storage class devices (FAT 16 or FAT 32 format, except USB HDDs).

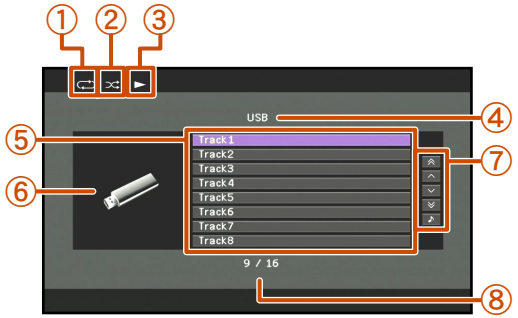
- You can play back only the files stored in the first partition.
- Some files may not be playable depending on models and types of USB storage devices.
- For a complete list of status messages that appear on the front panel display and GUI screen, see “USB and Network” (☞p. 155).
- This unit is compatible with sampling frequency of up to 48 kHz for the USB storage device.

Playback of the USB storage device

The USB storage device can be operated from the menu displayed on the TV screen.
You can operate the contents of USB storage device from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view

If you have connected the USB storage device to this unit before, playback of the music file played at the last time automatically starts.



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Current directory name**
⑤ **Menu items**
⑥ **Input icon**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.
⑧ **Current menu number / Number of all menu items**

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9**Cursor** ▷. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor** △ / ▽ and 9**ENTER**.

10 Pages Up

10 Pages Down

Goes to 10 pages forwards or backwards.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

1 Connect your USB storage device to the USB port on the front panel (☞p. 39).

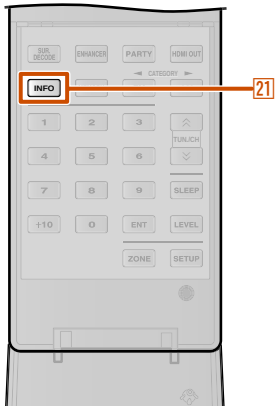
2 Rotate the INPUT selector (or press 4USB) to select “USB” as the input source.

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ to select a music file to play back.

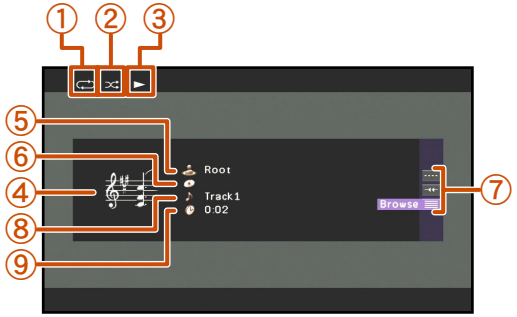
- To select a file or folder, press 9**Cursor** △ / ▽.
- To confirm the selection, press 9**ENTER**.
- To return to the previous menu, press 9**RETURN**.

4 Press 9ENTER to start playback.

The Now Playing view appears during playback.



Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Album image**
⑤ **Artist name**
⑥ **Album title**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See "Screen buttons on the Now Playing view" for details.
⑧ **Song title**
⑨ **Elapsed time**

- You can switch the information displayed on the front panel display by pressing 21**INFO** (☞p. 11).
- Album images are available only when the file contains image data.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9**ENTER**. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor △ / ▽** and 9**ENTER**.

Play Control

Operates the basic playback functions of USB.

□ (Stop)	Stops playback.
⏮ (Skip -)	Skips to the beginning of the currently playing song. Press 9**ENTER** at the beginning of the song to skip to a previous song.
⏭ (Skip +)	Skips to the beginning of the next song.

Scroll

Switches the scroll target (artist name, album title, or song title).

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Operating basic playback functions with the remote control

Use the following remote control keys to operate (playback, stop, skip, etc.) USB storage device.

7▷	Play
7□	Stop
7⏭	Skip forward during playback
7⏮	Skip backward during playback

Shuffle/repeat playback

Use the Option menu to apply playback shuffle and repeat settings. Refer to "Shuffle playback" (☞p. 61) and "Repeat playback" (☞p. 61) for details.

Listening to the Internet Radio

You can listen to Internet Radio stations using the vTuner Internet Radio station database service particularly customized for this unit, providing a database of over 2000 radio stations. Also, you can store your favorite stations with bookmarks.

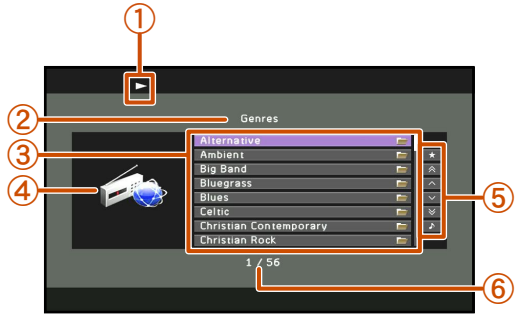
- To use this feature, your network must be connected to the Internet.
- A narrowband Internet connection (i.e. 56K modem, ISDN) will not provide satisfactory results, and a broadband connection is strongly recommended (i.e. a cable modem, an xDSL modem, etc.). For detailed information, consult with your ISP.
- If you do not use a DHCP server, configure the network parameters (IP address, etc.) of this unit manually (☞p. 121).
- Some security devices (such as firewall) may block the access of this unit to Internet Radio stations. In such cases, configure the security settings appropriately.
- This service may be discontinued without notice.
- Some Internet Radio stations may not be played.

Listening to Internet Radio

For a complete list of status messages that appear on the front panel display and GUI screen, see “USB and Network” (☞p. 155).

The Internet Radio can be operated from the menu displayed on the TV screen.
You can operate the Internet Radio from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Play icon**
② **Current directory name**
③ **Menu items**
④ **Album art / Input icon**
⑤ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.
⑥ **Current menu number / Number of all menu items**

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9Cursor ▷. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Bookmark On

The selected Internet Radio station is added to the Bookmarks list in “NET RADIO.”

Bookmark Off

This item is displayed in the bookmark directory. The selected Internet Radio station is removed from the Bookmarks list.

10 Pages Up

10 Pages Down

Goes to 10 pages forwards or backwards.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

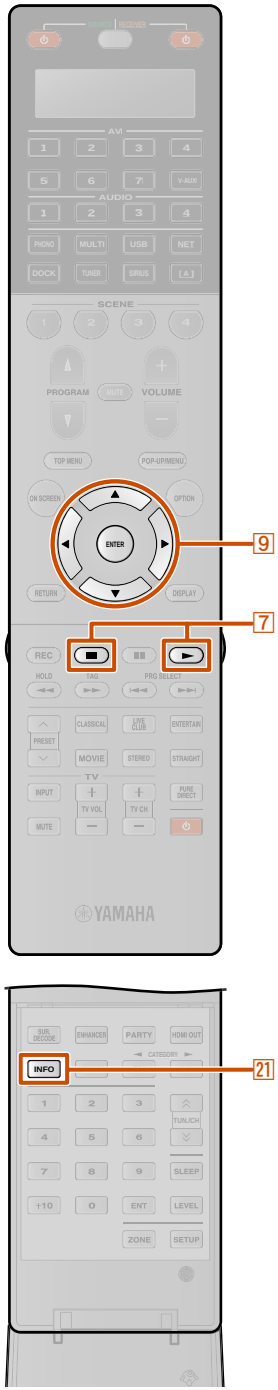
1 Press 4NET repeatedly to select “NET RADIO” as the input source.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select an item to play back.

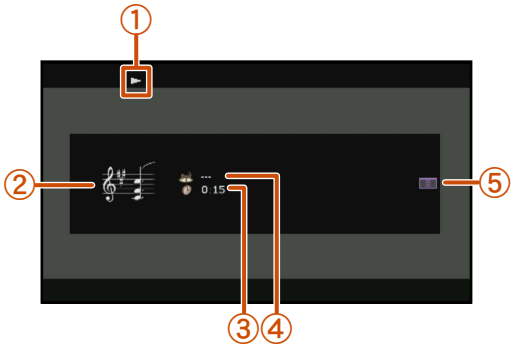
- To select an item, press 9Cursor △ / ▽.
- To confirm the selection, press 9ENTER.
- To return to the previous menu, press 9RETURN.

3 Press 9ENTER to start playback.

The Now Playing view appears during playback.



Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Play icon**
② **Album image**
③ **Elapsed time**
④ **Current station name**
⑤ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Now Playing view” for details.

You can switch the information displayed on the front panel display by pressing 21**INFO** (☞p. 11).

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9**ENTER**. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor △ / ▽** and 9**ENTER**.

Bookmark On

The station currently being played back is added to the Bookmarks list in “NET RADIO.”

Play Control

The following operation is available.

□ (Stop)	Stops playback.

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

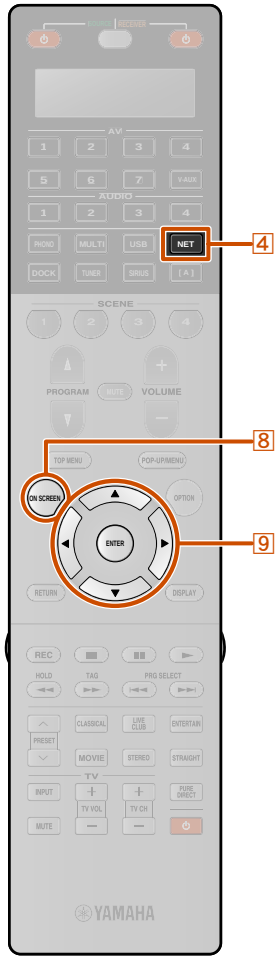
Operating basic playback functions with the remote control

Use the following remote control keys to operate (playback, stop) the Internet Radio.

7▷	Play
7□	Stop

You can also register your favorite Internet Radio stations on this unit by accessing the website with the web browser on your PC. To use this feature, you need the vTuner ID of this unit and your e-mail address to create your personal account. For details, refer to the help information on the website.
URL: http://yradio.vtuner.com/

NOTE
To clear the personal account such as vTuner ID or e-mail address, perform “NETWORK” of “INITIALIZE” in the Advanced Setup menu (☞p. 141).



Using the Rhapsody® service

Prohibition
It is strictly prohibited to modify, reproduce, reverse-engineer or use this unit and/or built-in software for use other than audiovisual purposes.

The Rhapsody® service is the power behind the Rhapsody® Media Player (the Rhapsody® player software that you can download to your computer). Rhapsody® service supplies the music, keeps My Library up to date, provides you with Rhapsody® channels, the Playlist Central online community, and manages your downloads. Your software connects to Rhapsody® service through the internet. Because your account information and Rhapsody® content are on servers instead of any individual computer, your music is infinitely portable. Much of what you see in the Display area comes from Rhapsody® service. What you can do with Rhapsody® service depends on your subscription. You can use Rhapsody® service for free, or get even more from a paid membership. The Rhapsody® service also brings you Rhapsody® Online, a streamlined, internet version of Rhapsody® that you can access from almost anywhere. Just sign in to your Rhapsody® account to start letting the Rhapsody® service work for you.
For more information, http://www.rhapsody.com/

Rhapsody® account sign-in

When you select “Rhapsody” for the first time, the sign-in screen appears. Sign in to your Rhapsody® account to start using the Rhapsody service on this unit.

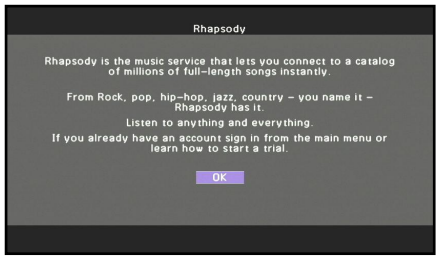
Use the Utility function later to view information for your Rhapsody® account.

1 **Press 8ON SCREEN.**

2 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Input” and press 9ENTER.**

3 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select “Rhapsody” and press 9Cursor △.**

The following display appears when “Sign In” has not been completed yet. Read the description and then press 9ENTER. 1



4 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Sign In” and then press 9ENTER.**

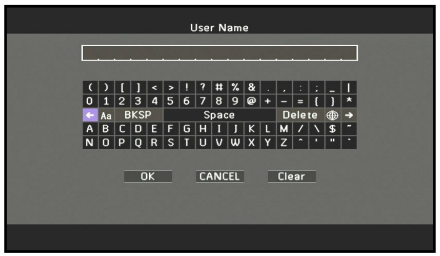
If “Rhapsody Trial” is selected, the URL for free 30-day trial service content is displayed. You can get started with a free trial by registering an account in the specified website.

Continues to the next page

1 : When “Sign In” has not been completed yet, this description can be directly displayed by pressing 4NET repeatedly to select “Rhapsody” as input source.

5 **Press 9ENTER to enter the User Name entry screen.**

6 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ and 9ENTER to enter your user name password (up to 64 characters) and then select “OK” and press 9ENTER.**



To clear the characters entered in step 6 and 8, select “CLEAR” and press 9ENTER.

7 **Press 9ENTER to enter the User Password entry screen.**

8 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ and 9ENTER to enter your password (up to 64 characters) and then select “OK” and press 9ENTER.**

“Please wait” appears followed by the confirmation screen.

NOTE

If registration failed, the error message appears. In this case, read the message and start all over again.

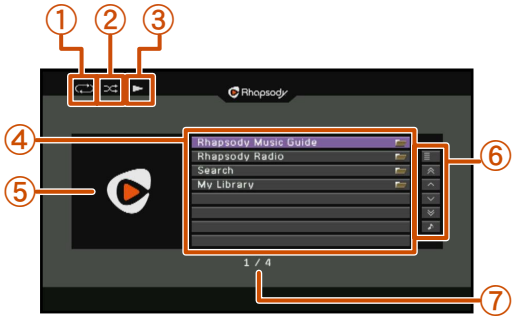
9 **Press 9ENTER.**

The Rhapsody Browse view is displayed.

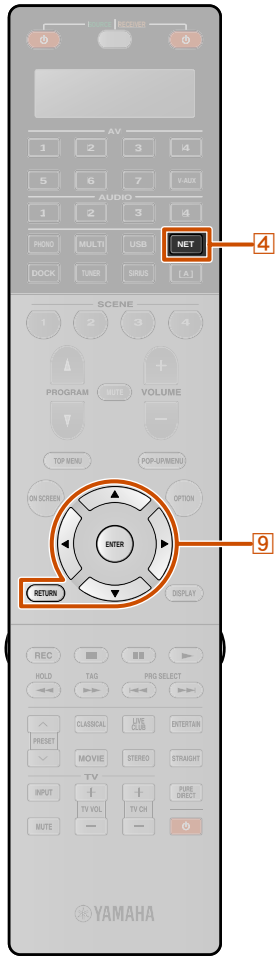
Playback of Rhapsody® contents

The Rhapsody can be operated from the content window on the TV screen.
You can operate the Rhapsody from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Menu items**
⑤ **Album art / Input icon**
⑥ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.
⑦ **Current menu number / Number of all menu items**



Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9Cursor ▷. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Utility

Play	Plays back the song or album highlighted in the list.
Add track to My Library	Adds the track currently selected to “My Library.”
Add album to My Library	Adds the album currently selected to “My Library.”
Add CH to My Library	Adds the channel currently selected to “My Library.”
Remove from My Library	Removes the content currently selected from “My Library.”

10 Pages Up

10 Pages Down

Goes to 10 pages forwards or backwards.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

You can navigate the Rhapsody menu with the following remote control buttons.

1 Press 4NET repeatedly to select “Rhapsody” as the input source.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select an item to play back.

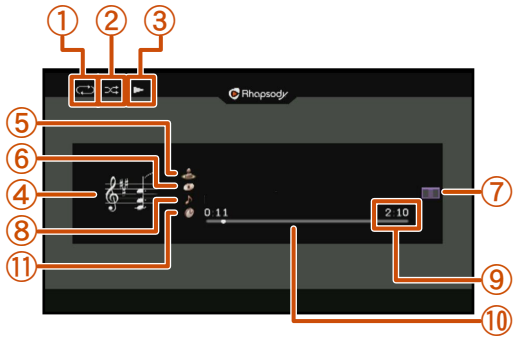
- To select an item, folder or file, press 9Cursor △ / ▽.
- To confirm the selection, press 9ENTER.
- To return to the previous menu, press 9RETURN.

Rhapsody Music Guide	Select a track from the lists organized by category (artist, album, etc.).
Rhapsody Radio	Select a network radio channel from the lists of the channels provided by Rhapsody.
Search	Use the software keyboard to search the desired item (artist, album, etc.) by keyword.
My Library	Select a track from items (artist, album, etc.) added to “My Library.”

3 Press 9ENTER to start playback.

The Now Playing view appears during playback.

Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Album image**
⑤ **Artist name**
⑥ **Album title**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Now Playing view” for details.
⑧ **Song title**
⑨ **Total playback time**
⑩ **Progress bar**
⑪ **Elapsed time**

- You can switch the information displayed on the front panel display by pressing 21INFO (☞p. 11).
- Album images are available only when the file contains image data.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9ENTER. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Play Control

Operates the basic playback functions of PC.

▷ (Play)	Starts playback.
□ (Stop)	Stops playback.
▯▯ (Pause)	Stops playback temporarily.
⏮ (Skip -)	Skips to the beginning of the currently playing song. Press 9ENTER at the beginning of the song to skip to a previous song.
⏭ (Skip +)	Skips to the beginning of the next song.

Utility

Add track to My Library	Adds the track currently selected to “My Library.”
Add album to My Library	Adds the album currently selected to “My Library.”
Add CH to My Library	Adds the channel currently selected to “My Library.”

Scroll

Switches the scroll target (artist name, album name, or song name).

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Operating basic playback functions with the remote control

Use the following remote control keys to operate (playback, stop, skip, etc.) your PC contents.

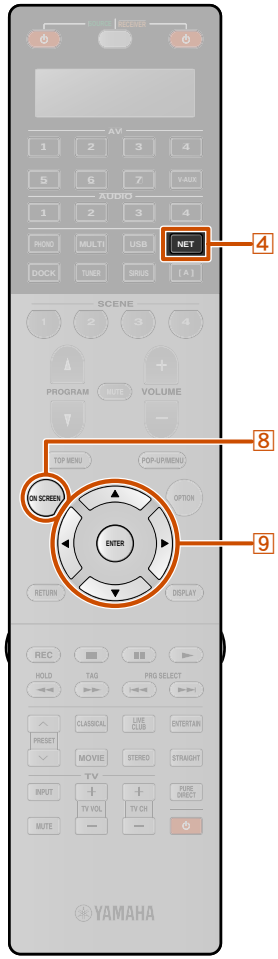
7▷	Play
7□	Stop
7▯▯	Switches between playback and pause.
7⏭	Skip forward during playback
7⏮	Skip backward during playback

Shuffle/repeat playback

Use the Option menu to apply playback shuffle and repeat settings. Refer to “Shuffle playback” (☞p. 61) and “Repeat playback” (☞p. 61) for details.

Listening to the SIRIUS Internet Radio

It’s easy to enjoy SIRIUS entertainment at home. Listen to over 80 channels of commercial-free music, plus sports talk, news and entertainment. It all comes through your audio / video receiver and high-speed Internet connection.
If you’re not a SIRIUS subscriber, you can sign up today for a PREMIUM SIRIUS Internet Radio subscription at www.sirius.com <http://www.sirius.com/>.
Current subscribers can add a PREMIUM SIRIUS Internet Radio subscription to an existing account.



SIRIUS Internet Radio account sign-in

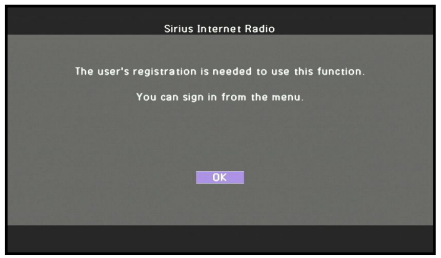
When you use the SIRIUS Internet Radio service for the first time, follow the procedure below to sign in to your account for the service.

1 **Press 8ON SCREEN.**

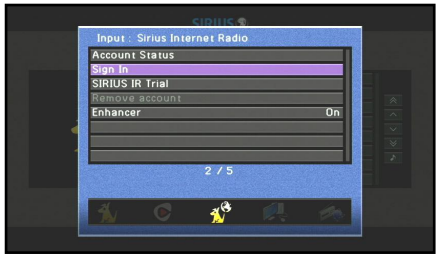
2 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Input” and press 9ENTER.**

3 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select “SIRIUS IR” and press 9Cursor △.**

The following display appears when “Sign In” has not been completed yet. Read the description and then press 9ENTER. ☝1



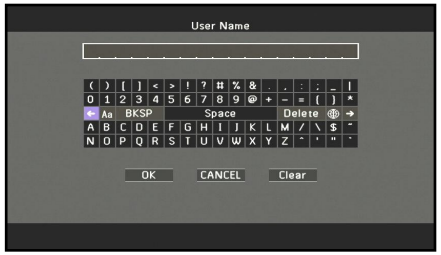
4 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Sign In” or “SIRIUS IR Trial” and then press 9ENTER.**



If “SIRIUS IR Trial” is selected, the confirmation message and the URL regarding the terms of trial service are displayed. Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select “OK” to continue. If “Successfully logged into account” is displayed, press 9ENTER to enable the Sirius Internet Radio Browse view.

5 **Press 9ENTER to enter the User Name entry screen.**

6 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ and 9ENTER to enter your user name password (up to 64 characters) and then select “OK” and press 9ENTER.**



To clear the characters entered in step 6 and 8, select “CLEAR” and press 9ENTER.

7 **Press 9ENTER to enter the User Password entry screen.**

Continues to the next page

☝1 : When “Sign In” has not been completed yet, this description can be directly displayed by pressing 4NET repeatedly to select “Sirius Internet Radio” as input source.

8 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ and 9ENTER to enter your password (up to 64 characters) and then select "OK" and press 9ENTER.**

"Please wait..." is first displayed, followed by confirmation screen.

NOTE

If registration failed, the error message appears. In this case, read the message and start all over again.

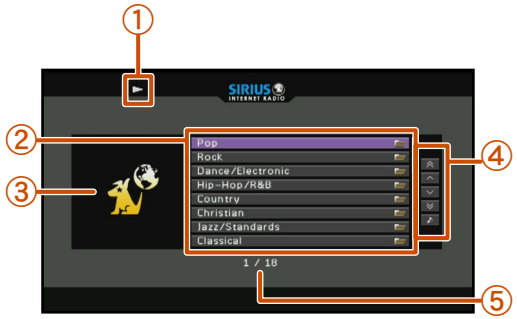
9 **Press 9ENTER.**

The Sirius Internet Radio Browse view is displayed.

Navigating the Sirius Internet Radio menu

The SIRIUS Internet Radio tuner can be operated from the content window on the TV screen.
You can operate the SIRIUS Internet Radio from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Play icon**
② **Menu items**
③ **Album art / Input icon**
④ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See "Screen buttons on the Browse view" for details.
⑤ **Current menu number / Number of all menu items**

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9Cursor ▷. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

10 Pages Up

10 Pages Down

Goes to 10 pages forwards or backwards.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

You can navigate the Sirius Internet Radio menu with the following remote control buttons.

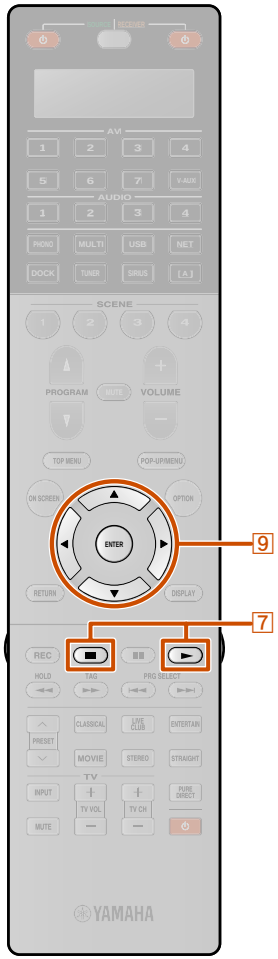
1 **Press 4NET repeatedly to select "Sirius Internet Radio."**

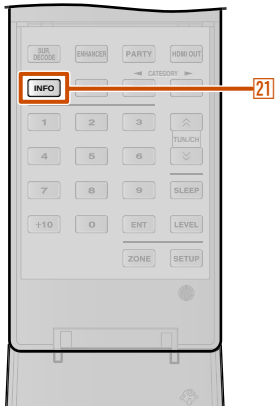
2 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ to select a music file to play back.**

- To select a file or folder, press 9Cursor △ / ▽.
- To confirm the selection, press 9ENTER.
- To return to the previous menu, press 9RETURN.

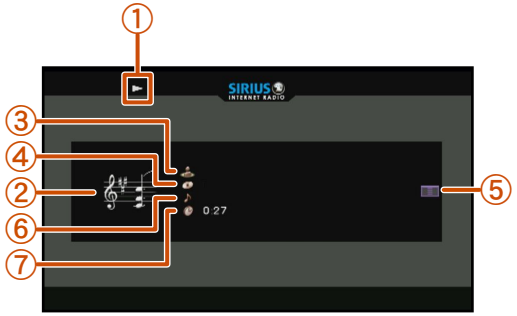
3 **Press 9ENTER to start playback.**

The Now Playing view appears during playback.





Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Play icon**
② **Album image**
③ **Artist name**
④ **Album title**
⑤ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See "Screen buttons on the Now Playing view" for details.
⑥ **Song title**
⑦ **Elapsed time**

- You can switch the information displayed on the front panel display by pressing 21**INFO** (☞p. 11).
- Album images are available only when the file contains image data.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9**ENTER**. Then select the desired one with 9**Cursor** △ / ▽ and 9**ENTER**.

Play Control

Stops the current playback.

□ (Stop)	Stops playback.

Scroll

Switches the scroll target (artist name, album name, or song name).

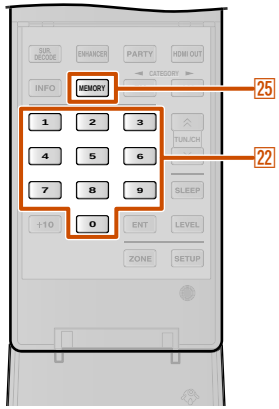
Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Operating basic playback functions with the remote control

Use the following remote control keys to operate (playback, stop, skip, etc.) your PC contents.

7▷	Play
7□	Stop



Using shortcut function

Use this feature to access the desired music sources (WAV, MP3 and WMA files on the connected PC or WAV storage devices, Internet Radio Stations, SIRIUS Internet Radio and Rhapsody® music contents) directly. You can preset up to 40 items for above input sources.

■ Assigning the items to the preset number

1 Select a desired content you want to assign to a preset number, and then play back the content.

2 Press 25MEMORY.

This unit automatically selects an empty preset number and the following display appears.

- To automatically assign the selected content to an empty preset number, press and hold 25MEMORY for at least 2 seconds with step 2. In this case, the following steps are unnecessary.
- To cancel the preset, press 9RETURN.
- When you do not complete each of the following steps within 30 seconds, the memory preset mode is automatically canceled. In this case, start over from step 2.

3 Press 10PRESET ∧ / ∨ or 22Numeric keys to select the preset number that you want to assign.

Valid numbers as the preset number are “01” to “40.”

4 Press 25MEMORY.

The following display appears on the front panel display and the preset content is set.

■ Selecting the item assigned to the preset number

Press 10PRESET ∧ / ∨ to select the preset number to which the desired item is assigned to select the item as the input source.

This unit starts the playback of the source assigned to the selected numeric button.

NOTES

- “xx:Empty” appears on the front panel display when you select the preset number to which no items are assigned.
- This unit does not recall the correct item assigned to the selected preset number in the following cases:
  - the connected USB device is incorrect.
  - the PC which stores the selected item is turned off or disconnected from the network.
  - the selected Internet Radio station, Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio is temporary unavailable or out of service.
  - the directory of the selected item has been changed.

This unit stores the relative position of the preset items in a directory or playlist, and does not recall the correct item by using 22Numeric keys if you add or delete music files to or from the same directory or playlist as the preset items. In such cases, preset the desired item to the preset numbers again.
We recommend the following methods:

USB storage devices

Create several directories containing the desired content in a directory beside the directory containing all music files, and then assign the top item of each directory to a preset number. To change the content assigned to preset numbers, replace the content in the directory to new content without deleting the directory.

PC server

Create eight playlists containing the desired content, and then assign the top item of each playlist to a preset number. To change the content assigned to preset numbers, replace the content registered with a playlist with new content without deleting the playlist.

Playing back tunes from your iPod™/iPhone™

Once you have connected a Universal Dock for iPod (such as the YDS-12, sold separately) to this unit, you can enjoy playback of your iPod/iPhone using the remote control supplied with this unit. When playing back from an iPod/iPhone, you can also use the compressed music enhancer sound programs to give compressed audio formats such as MP3 a sharper, more dynamic sound (☞p. 53). A Yamaha Wireless System for iPod (YID-W10, sold separately) can also be connected to this unit to play back iPod/iPhone with wireless connection.

- **When playing back iPod/iPhone with wired connection**
  Refer to "Connecting the Universal Dock for iPod."
- **When playing back iPod/iPhone with wireless connection**
  Refer to "Playing iPod™/iPhone™ with wireless connection" (☞p. 92).

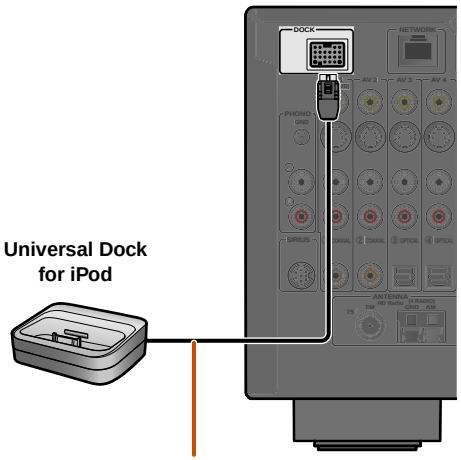
Connecting the Universal Dock for iPod

Use the dedicated cable to connect the dock to the DOCK jack on the rear panel of this unit. Refer to the operating instructions of the Universal Dock for iPod for information on how to connect your iPod/iPhone.

- iPod touch, iPod (4th Gen/5th Gen/Classic), iPod nano, iPod mini, iPhone, iPhone 3G, and iPhone 3GS are supported (As of March 2010).
- When connecting iPhone, iPhone 3G and iPhone 3GS, use a YDS-12.
- Some features may not be compatible depending on the model or the software version of your iPod/iPhone.
- Some functions may not be available for some Universal Dock for iPod models. This explanation focuses on the YDS-12.
- When an iPod that supports iTunes Tagging is connected to this unit, this unit transmits iTunes Tagging information to the iPod (☞p. 67).

CAUTION
To prevent accidents, switch this unit to standby mode before connecting the Universal Dock for iPod.

Switch this unit on and place your iPod/iPhone in the dock. The unit is now ready for playback.



Locate the wireless dock at the distance as far as from the unit.

When this unit is in standby mode, iPod/iPhone can be charged automatically (☞p. 100).

Controlling an iPod™/iPhone™

After setting your iPod/iPhone in your dock, just press 4**DOCK** to switch to DOCK input to play your iPod/iPhone.
The iPod/iPhone can be operated in the following two ways.

Menu browse control:
Plays the iPod/iPhone while viewing the menu displayed on the TV. Refer to "Playing iPod™/iPhone™ from the menu screen (Menu browse control)" (☞p. 91).

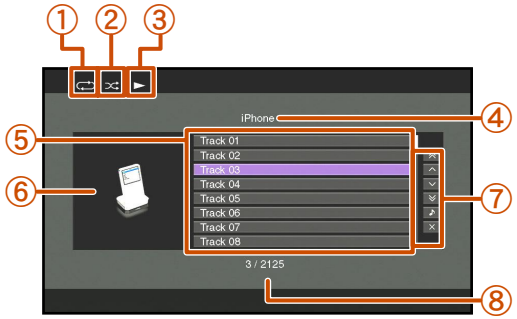
Simple remote control:
Plays audio and video through this unit while viewing the menu displayed on the iPod/iPhone screen. Refer to "Operating basic playback functions via the remote control (Simple remote control)" (☞p. 92).

- Song information (artist, album, song) is displayed on the front panel. Press 21**INFO** repeatedly to display subsequent/previous information when displaying Now Playing view in Menu browse control.
- The Yamaha logo is displayed on the iPod screen when iPod stationed in the Universal Dock for iPod (does not apply to the iPod touch or iPhone). However, the Yamaha logo is not displayed in Simple remote control.
- Manual control of the iPod/iPhone is not possible while the iPod stationed in the Universal Dock for iPod and Menu browse control is displayed.

Playing iPod™/iPhone™ from the menu screen (Menu browse control)

The iPod/iPhone can be operated from the menu displayed on the TV screen.
You can operate the iPod/iPhone from the Now Playing view or the Browse view.

Operating from the Browse view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Current directory name**
⑤ **Menu items**
⑥ **Input icon**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Browse view” for details.
⑧ **Current menu number / Number of all menu items**

Screen buttons on the Browse view

To use these buttons, first press 9Cursor ▷. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

10 Pages Up

10 Pages Down

Goes to 10 pages forwards or backwards.

1 Page Up

1 Page Down

Scrolls the list to the next or previous page.

Now Playing

Switches the display to the Now Playing view.

Close

Returns to the video playback, turning off the menu display.

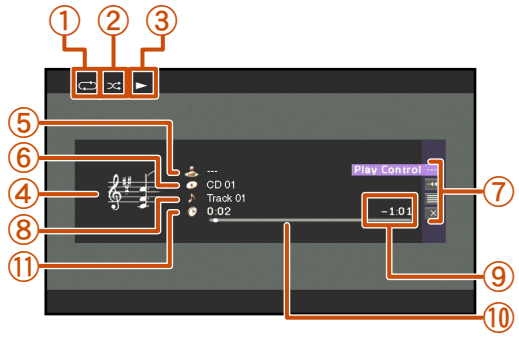
1 Press 4DOCK to switch to the DOCK input.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the content (music or video) that you want to play, and press 9ENTER. 1

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select iPod/iPhone menu items, and press 9ENTER to play.

The Now Playing view appears during playback. 2

Operating from the Now Playing view



① **Repeat icon**
② **Shuffle icon**
③ **Play icon**
④ **Album image**
⑤ **Artist name**
⑥ **Album title**
⑦ **Screen button area**
Buttons for available operations are displayed. See “Screen buttons on the Now Playing view” for details.
⑧ **Song title**
⑨ **Remaining time**
⑩ **Progress bar**
⑪ **Elapsed time**

1 : Videos will not be displayed when your iPod or Universal Dock for iPod do not support the browser function for browsing video files.
2 : When selecting the video content, the following display is not displayed.

Screen buttons on the Now Playing view

To use these buttons, first press 9ENTER. Then select the desired one with 9Cursor △ / ▽ and 9ENTER.

Play Control

Operates the basic playback functions of iPod/iPhone.

▷ (Play)	Starts playback.
□ (Stop)	Stops playback.
▯▯ (Pause)	Stops playback temporarily.
⏮ (Skip -)	Skips to the beginning of the currently playing song. Press 9ENTER at the beginning of the song to skip to a previous song.
⏭ (Skip +)	Skips to the beginning of the next song.
◁◁ (Scan -)	Searches backwards.
▷▷ (Scan +)	Searches forwards.

Scroll

Switches the scroll target (artist name, album title, or song title).

Browse

Switches the display to the Browse view.

Close

Returns to the video playback, turning off the menu display.

Operating basic playback functions via the remote control (Simple remote control)

Use the following remote control keys to operate (playback, stop, skip, etc.) your iPod/iPhone.
Press 7REC to enable the Simple remote control.
Press 7REC again to return to the Menu browse control.

4DOCK	Switches to the DOCK (iPod) input.
9Cursor △ / ▽	Move the cursor up and down to different fields.
9RETURN	Returns to the previous menu.
9ENTER	Confirms the selected menu.
7 ◁◁	Searches backwards while held down.
7 ▷▷	Searches forwards while held down.
7 ⏮	Skips to the beginning of the currently playing song. Pressing repeatedly skips one song backwards with each press.
7 ⏭	Skips to the beginning of the next song.
7 □	Stops playback.
7 ▯▯	Switches between playback and pause.
7 ▷	Switches between playback and pause.
7REC	Switches the control method between the Menu browse control and Simple remote control.

Playing iPod™/iPhone™ with wireless connection

A Wireless System for iPod (YID-W10, sold separately) can be connected to this unit to play back iPod/iPhone with wireless connection. The iPod/iPhone can be used as the remote control. 1

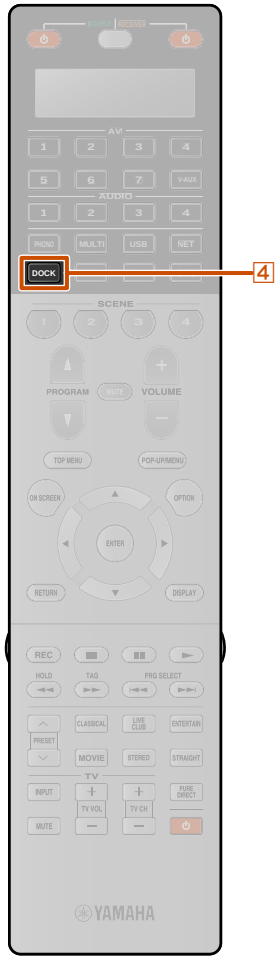
Connecting the Wireless System for iPod and playing back iPod/iPhone

Use the dedicated cable to connect the receiver of the Wireless System for iPod to the DOCK jack on the rear panel of this unit. Refer to the operating instructions of the YID-W10 for more information.

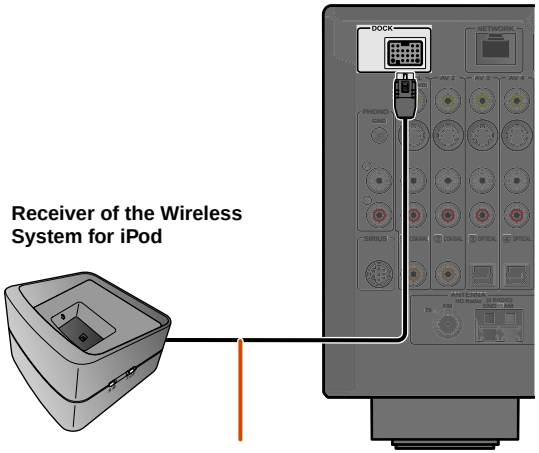
CAUTION
To prevent accidents, unplug the power cable of this unit before connecting the receiver of the Wireless System for iPod.

Continues to the next page

1 : Video signals cannot be transmitted wirelessly.

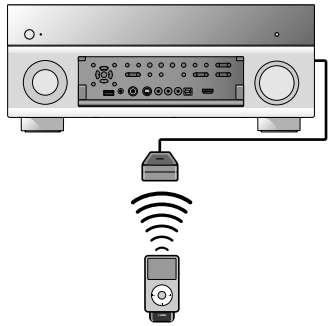


Place the iPod/iPhone in the wireless transmitter. Setup is complete.



When this unit is in standby mode, iPod/iPhone can be charged automatically, if “Standby Charge” is set to “Auto” (☞p. 100) or “Power & Input” of “iPod Interlock” is set to “On” (☞p. 101).

Use iPod/iPhone to start playback.



- This unit, which is placed in the main zone, functions as follows when iPod/iPhone controls are used to start playback.
  - The input source switches to DOCK (iPod) when this unit is turned on.
  - When this unit is in standby mode when iPod/iPhone playback starts, this unit turns on and the input source switches to DOCK (iPod). 1
- This unit automatically enters standby mode when the following operations are performed.
  - iPod/iPhone is removed from the YID-W10
  - iPod/iPhone is not operated for a while after playback is stopped

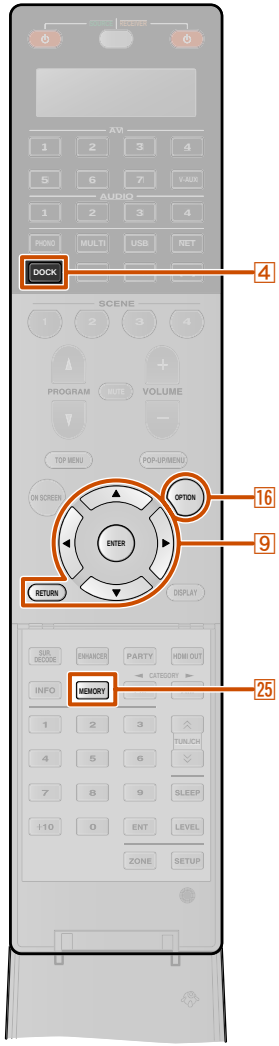
- Pressing 4DOCK also switches the input source to DOCK (iPod).
- When a menu is operated, this function is not activated.
- When “iPod Interlock” → “Power & Input” in the Input menu is set to “Off,” the power and the input source do not switch automatically (☞p. 101).

- Adjusting volume control on the iPod/iPhone also adjusts the volume (max 0.0 dB) of this unit.

- When “iPod Interlock” → “Volume” in the Input menu is set to “Off,” the volume of this unit is not adjusted when iPod/iPhone volume controls are adjusted (☞p. 101).
- This unit may restrict the volume level to prevent excessively loud play back. In such a case, gradually increase the volume level.

CAUTION
When iPod/iPhone controls are used to adjust volume, playback volume may be unexpectedly loud. This could result in damage to this unit or the speakers. If the volume suddenly increases during playback, immediately remove the iPod/iPhone from the Wireless System for iPod. “Max Volume” can be used to specify the maximum volume level to prevent excessively loud playback (☞p. 116).

1 : This function is also activated when sound of application is reproduced or ringtone is received.



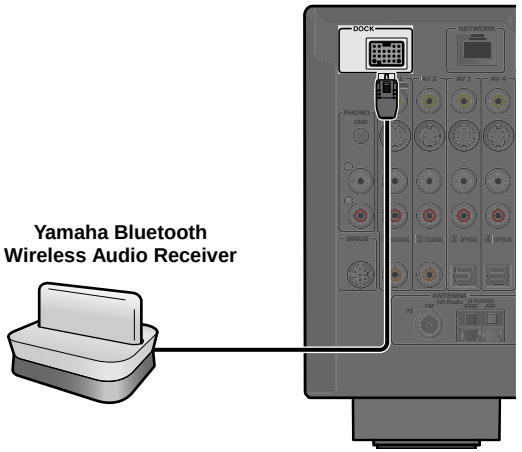
Playing back tunes from Bluetooth™ components

You can connect a Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver (such as the YBA-10, sold separately) to this unit and enjoy wireless playback from Bluetooth-compatible portable music players. 1

NOTE
When playing back from a Bluetooth component for the first time, you must first pair the devices (register the Bluetooth components). When establishing a wireless connection you must carry out pairing on both this unit and on the Bluetooth component.

Connecting a Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver

Use the dedicated cable to connect the dock to the DOCK jack on the rear panel of this unit.
The Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver connection will be complete when this unit is turned on.



CAUTION
To prevent accidents, switch this unit to standby mode before connecting a Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver.

Pairing Bluetooth™ components

Be sure to carry out pairing when connecting a Bluetooth component for the first time, or when settings have been deleted. Refer to the operating instructions of your Bluetooth component as necessary when carrying out pairing.

The Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver can be paired with up to eight Bluetooth components. When the ninth device is paired, the pairing settings for the device which has not been used for the longest period of time will be deleted.

1 Press 4DOCK to switch to the DOCK input.

2 Turn on the Bluetooth component you want to pair with and set it to pairing mode.

3 Press 16OPTION to display the Option menu and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Pairing.”

4 Press 9ENTER to start pairing.

- To cancel pairing, press 9RETURN.
- You can also press and hold 25MEMORY on the front panel to begin pairing.

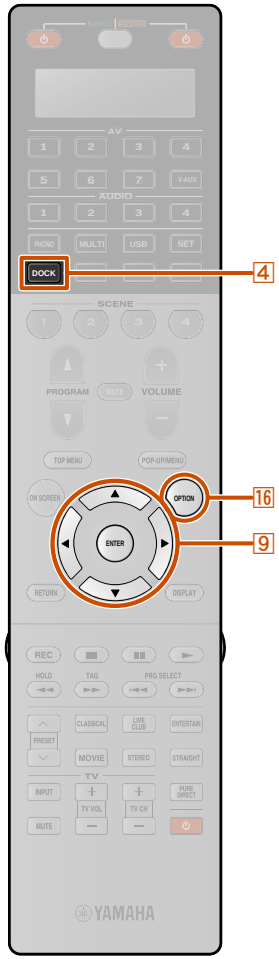
5 Make sure the Bluetooth component recognizes the Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver.

When the device is recognized, it will appear in the Bluetooth component list, for example as “YBA-10 YAMAHA.”

6 Select the Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver from the Bluetooth component list, and enter a pass key “0000” into the Bluetooth component. 2

When pairing occurs correctly

1 : This unit supports A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) of the Bluetooth profile.
2 : Depending on Bluetooth components, wireless connection is carried out right after the pairing. In this case, “BT connected” is displayed instead of “Completed.”



Using Bluetooth™ components

When pairing is complete, perform the following procedure to achieve a wireless connection between this unit and the Bluetooth component. When the wireless connection is complete, Bluetooth components can be played back.

Depending on Bluetooth components, a wireless connection is established automatically or by operating the Bluetooth components. In that case, it is not necessary to carry out the following procedure.

1 **Press 4DOCK to switch to the DOCK input.**

2 **Press 16OPTION to display the Option menu.**

3 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Connect” and press 9ENTER. 1**

When wireless connection is complete

“Not found” is displayed when there is an error connecting. Check that the following conditions have been satisfied, and try to establish a wireless connection again.

- Both this unit and the Bluetooth component are paired.
- The Bluetooth component is switched on.
- The Bluetooth component is within 32 ft. (10 m) of the Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver.

4 **Press 16OPTION to exit the Option menu.**

5 **Operate the Bluetooth component for playback.**

To disconnect a wireless connection, repeat the same steps, and in step 3, select “Disconnect.”

1 : “Disconnect” is displayed when a Bluetooth component has been connected.

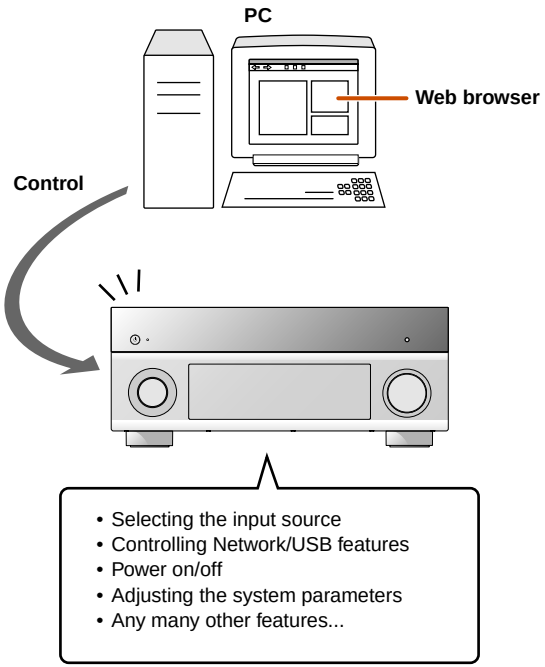
Controlling this unit by using the Web browser (Web Control Center)

Displaying and Operating Web Control Center

You can operate this unit by using a web browser. You can select the input source and sound field program, browse the iPod or network/USB contents, select the preset items, and adjust the parameters of this unit by using the graphical user interface (Web Control Center) that appears in the web browser. Check the IP address of this unit by using “IP Address” in “Network” menu (☞p. 121) in advance, and then enter the IP address to the web browser to access this unit to control it.

NOTE

When “Network Standby” is set to “On” in the Network menu, this unit can turns on and Web Control Center can be displayed on the PC even if this unit was in standby mode (☞p. 121). When “Network Standby” is set to “Off,” we recommend that “Network Standby” is set to “On” to use Web Control Center.

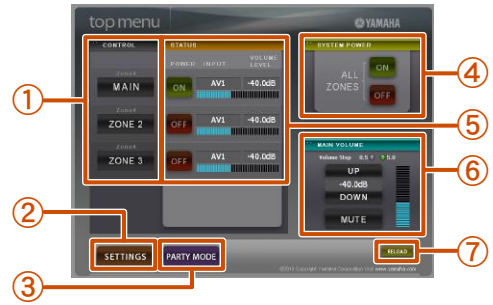


- To use this feature, this unit and your PC must be connected properly in the network. Refer to “Connecting to the network” for details on the connections (☞p. 38).
- We recommend that you use Windows Internet Explorer 8 that is installed on Windows XP or Windows 7 PC to access this unit.
- You can select whether this unit accepts the controls by using the web browser when this unit is in the standby mode.
- You can register the MAC address of the PCs you want to use to control this unit and limit the PCs that can control this unit by using the web browser. You can select that this unit allows the access to this unit by the PCs whose MAC addresses are registered to this unit or allows the access by any PCs by using “MAC Address Filter” in the “Network” setup (☞p. 121).

Features of Web Control Center for each zone

Feature	Main Zone	Zone2/Zone3
Power on/off	✓	✓
Sleep timer	✓	✓
Input select	✓	✓
Volume adjustment	✓	✓
Mute on/off	✓	✓
Content/channel select	✓	✓
Sound program	✓	—
Party Mode on/off	✓	✓
Required settings for web browse control	✓	✓

Top menu



① **CONTROL**
Changes the display to the zone control menu (☞p. 97).

② **SETTINGS**
Changes the display to the settings menu (☞p. 97).

③ **PARTY MODE**
Enables/disables the party mode (☞p. 122).

④ **SYSTEM POWER**
Turns on/off the power for all zones.

⑤ **STATUS**
Turns on/off the power for each zone, and displays the selected input source and volume level for each zone.

⑥ **MAIN VOLUME**
Adjusts the volume level or mutes the sound for the main zone. You can also switch the step for the volume control.

⑦ **RELOAD**
Reloads the current status of the receiver.

Zone control menu

You can control the selected zone.

① **PLAY INFO**
Controls the selected input for each zone.

② **TOP MENU**
Returns to the top menu.

③ **SCENE keys**
Selects the scene.

④ **POWER**
Turns on/off the power for the selected zone. You can also set the sleep timer for the selected zone.

⑤ **VOLUME**
Adjusts the volume level or mutes the sound for the main zone. You can also switch the step for the volume control.

⑥ **RELOAD**
Reloads the current status of the receiver.

Settings menu

You can make various settings regarding the web browse control.

① **Zone Rename**
Friendly Name indicates the identification name of the device (this unit) connected to the PC.
Friendly Name or the names of zones can be changed.

② **MAC Filter**
Applies the MAC address filter to this unit. Web Control Center can only be accessed from a computer with the same address as the MAC address registered here.

③ **Auto Reload**
Enables or disables the Auto Reload function which reloads the current status of the receiver every 5 minutes.

④ **Tips 1/Tips 2**
Displays the tips for use of Web Control Center.

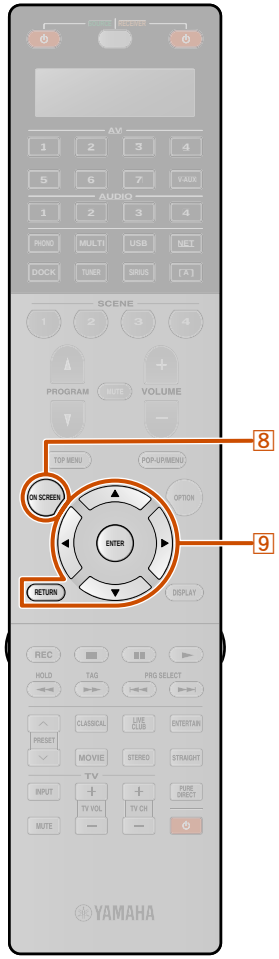
⑤ **Create Link**
Customizes the display of Web Control Center.

⑥ **iPhone** 1
Selects the zoom rate for iPhone.

⑦ **BACK**
Returns to the top menu.

⑧ **RELOAD**
Reloads the current status of the receiver.

1 : This item appears only when accessing the Web Control Center with the iPhone.



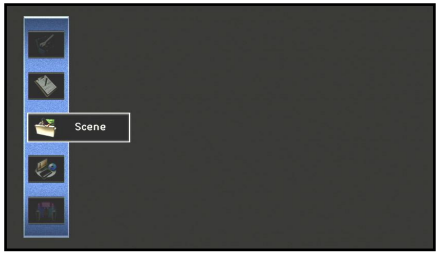
Configuring input sources (Input menu)

Settings, such as the name of an input source or the icon displayed for an input source can be changed from the Input menu.

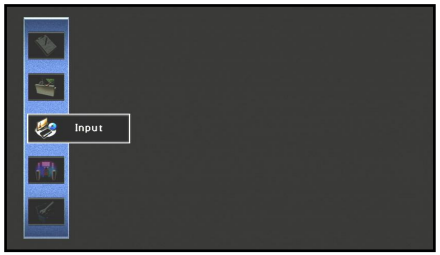
Configuring input sources

The name of an input source and its icon, as well as other input source settings, can be changed from the Input menu displayed on the TV screen.

1 **Press 8ON SCREEN.**

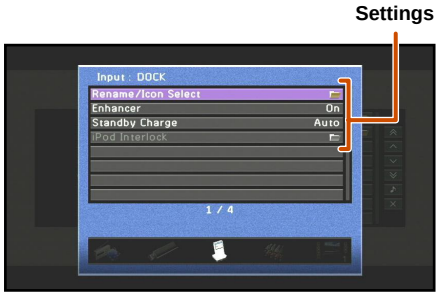


2 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Input” and press 9ENTER.**



3 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select an input source to be configured and press 9Cursor △.**

4 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select an item and press 9ENTER.**



If the selected item contains additional items, use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the desired item and press 9ENTER.

5 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to adjust the setting.**

Pressing 9RETURN displays the previous menu screen. Repeat steps 4 to 5 to adjust multiple settings.

6 **Press 8ON SCREEN to close the menu.**

Input menu

✓: available menu for each input source

	AV1-7	V-AUX	AUDIO1-4	PHONO	MULTI CH	USB	PC	NET RADIO	Rhapsody	SIRIUS IR	DOCK (iPod)	DOCK (Bluetooth)	TUNER	SIRIUS
Rename/Icon Select	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓		
Decoder Mode	✓	✓	✓											
Enhancer	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DMC Control							✓							
Account Status									✓	✓				
Sign In									✓	✓				
Rhapsody Trial									✓					
Remove Account									✓	✓				
SIRIUS IR Trial										✓				
Standby Charge											✓			
iPod Interlock											✓ 1			
Video Out					✓									

Changing an input source name or icon

Rename/Icon Select

Changes the input source name (up to nine characters) and icon displayed on the front panel display or TV screen.

1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select “Rename/Icon Select” and press 9ENTER.**

2 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to choose an icon.**

3 **Press 9Cursor ▽ and 9ENTER.**

Editing the name is available.

4 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a character, and press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to enter the selected character.**

5 **Repeat step 4 to enter the desired input source name.**

6 **Confirm the input source name by pressing 9ENTER.**

7 **Press 9Cursor ▽ to select “OK” and press 9ENTER to register the new input name.**

- To cancel the operation without applying changes, select “CANCEL” and then press 9ENTER.
- To clear the characters entered in step 5, select “CLEAR” and press 9ENTER.

1 : Not available when playing back iPod/iPhone with wired connection.

Setting the format of digital audio signals

Decoder Mode

Sets the format of digital audio to playback to DTS. For example, if the format is not automatically detected correctly even during playback of DTS format audio, this item can be used to set the playback format to DTS.

Auto **(Default)**	The audio format is automatically selected to match the format of the input audio.
DTS	Selects DTS signals only. Other input signals are not reproduced.

Selecting the sound program suitable for listening to compressed audio, such as MP3

Enhancer

Turns on/off the Compressed Music Enhancer.

Off	Turns off the Compressed Music Enhancer.
On	Turns on the Compressed Music Enhancer.

Using a PC to control this unit over a network

DMC Control

This unit can be operated via the DLNA compatible controller (e.g., Windows Media Player, etc.) to the same network as this unit. DMC stands for “Digital Media Controller.”

Disable	Disables the DMC control function.
Enable **(Default)**	Enables the DMC control function.

Confirming the account of the Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio

Account Status

Displays the current account status of Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio.

Sign in to your account for the Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio

Sign In

Sign in to your account for the Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio (☞p. 82, p. 86).

Rhapsody Trial

Displays the URL for free 30-day trial service content. Create an account in the specified website, sign in to your account with “Sign In” to get started with a free trial.

SIRIUS IR Trial

Creates a temporary account for free 30-day trial and sign in to the account automatically.

Refer to “Rhapsody® account sign-in” (☞p. 82) or “SIRIUS Internet Radio account sign-in” (☞p. 86) for details on signing in to your account.

Removing your account from the Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio

Remove Account

Removes an account registered with the Rhapsody service or SIRIUS Internet Radio.

Charging an iPod™/iPhone™ in standby mode

Standby Charge

Charges an iPod/iPhone stationed in the Universal Dock for iPod or the receiver of the Wireless System for iPod while the receiver is in standby mode.

Auto **(Default)**	This unit charges iPod/iPhone when this unit is in standby mode. While charging an iPod/iPhone, the HDMI Through/iPod Charge indicator lights. After the charging is complete, standby charge function is automatically off and the HDMI Through/iPod Charge indicator goes off. ♛1
Off	This unit does not charge iPod/iPhone.

♛1 : Standby charge function automatically turns off only when using YDS-10/11/12.

Setting the interlock functions with iPod/ iPhone (when the receiver of the Wireless System for iPod is connected)

iPod Interlock

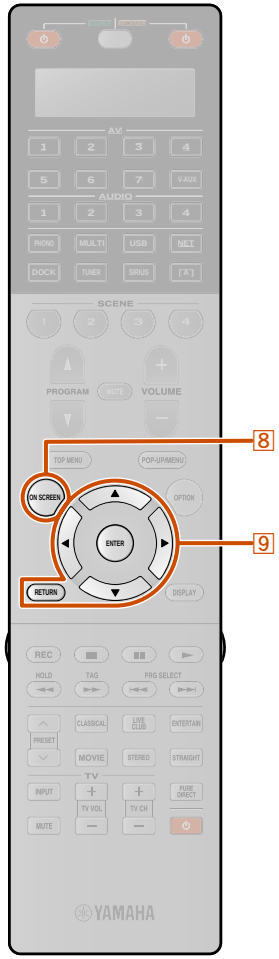
This unit can be automatically operated in conjunction with operations on iPod when the receiver of the Wireless System for iPod is connected to this unit.

Power & Input	Starting playback of iPod/iPhone turns on this unit and switches the input source to DOCK (iPod) automatically when this item is set to “On.” This unit automatically enters standby mode when iPod/iPhone is not operated for a while after playback is stopped. This interlock function is disable with “Off.”
Volume	Adjusting the volume on the iPod/iPhone also adjusts the volume of this unit when this item is set to “On.” This interlock function is disable with “Off.”

Outputting a video signal input from another input source while playing a multi-channel audio signal

Video Out

When “MULTI CH” is selected as the input source, a video signal input from another terminal can be output to the video monitor. For example, even if an audio and video component such as a DVD player that does not support a multi-channel digital audio output, the video signal can be output to the video monitor while reproducing a multi-channel analog audio signal.



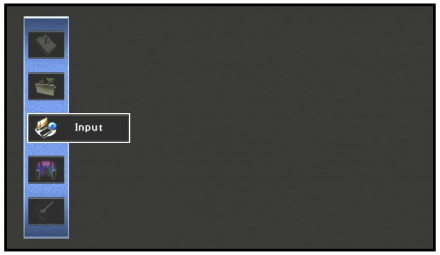
Editing the SCENE function (Scene menu)

The SCENE function (☞p. 50) can be edited from the Scene menu displayed on the TV screen.

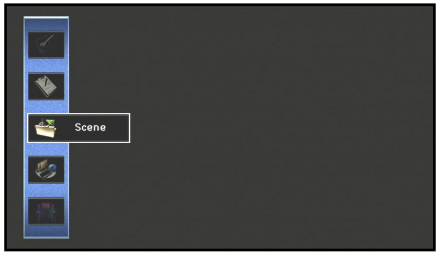
Editing a scene

Various settings, such as the name of a scene or the icon displayed for a scene, can be changed from the Scene menu.

1 Press 8ON SCREEN.



2 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Scene” and press 9ENTER.



3 Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a scene to be edited and press 9Cursor △.

4 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select an item and press 9ENTER.

If the selected item contains additional items, use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the desired item and press 9ENTER.

5 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ to adjust the setting.

Pressing 9RETURN displays the previous menu screen. Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust multiple settings.

6 Press 8ON SCREEN to close the menu.

Scene menu

- SCENE1
  - Save
  - Load
  - Rename/Icon Select
  - Reset
- SCENE2
  - Save
  - Load
  - Rename/Icon Select
  - Reset
- SCENE3
  - Save
  - Load
  - Rename/Icon Select
  - Reset
- SCENE4
  - Save
  - Load
  - Rename/Icon Select
  - Reset
- •
- •
- •
- SCENE12
  - Save
  - Load
  - Rename/Icon Select
  - Reset

Scene 5 to 12 can also be edited in the Scene menu. Select Scene 5 to 12 in the Scene menu.

Registering SCENE function settings

Save

Registers the settings currently applied to this unit for each SCENE.

Adjusting settings registered with the SCENE function

Load

Loads input sources or sound programs that have been registered with the SCENE function, or specifies whether or not an external component registered as the input source is automatically turned on when a scene is selected.

OK	Loads items indicated with a check mark in "DETAIL."
CANCEL	Cancels settings applied with "DETAIL."
DETAIL	Specifies "SCENE IR" function and displays settings registered with the SCENE function in detail. For more information, see "SCENE IR" and "Detail" at right.

SCENE IR

Specify whether or not a Yamaha BD/DVD player or CD player connected to this unit turns on automatically.

Off	Disables the SCENE IR function.
Yamaha BD/DVD Player1	Select this when a Yamaha BD/DVD player is connected to this unit.
Yamaha BD/DVD Player2	Select this if the player dose not turn on when "Yamaha BD/DVD Player1" is selected.
Yamaha CD Player	Select this when a Yamaha CD player is connected to this unit.

Detail

Display details of settings registered with the SCENE function. Items indicated with a check mark in "Setting" are loaded.

Input	☑	Displays the "Input" and "Audio Select" settings registered with the SCENE function.
HDMI Output	☑	Displays the HDMI output jack(s) registered with the SCENE function.
Mode	☑	Displays the sound program registered with the SCENE function.
Sound	☑	Displays the "Tone Control," "Adaptive DRC," and "Enhancer" settings registered with the SCENE function.
Surround	☐	Displays the "CINEMA DSP 3D Mode," "Dialogue Lift," and "Extended Surround" settings registered with the SCENE function.
Video	☐	Displays the "Video Processing" and "Video Adjustment" settings registered with the SCENE function.
Volume	☐	Displays the volume setting registered with the SCENE function.
Lipsync	☐	Displays the "Lipsync" and "Delay" settings registered with the SCENE function.
Speaker Setup	☐	Displays the "Setting Pattern" and "PEQ Select" settings registered with the SCENE function.

Changing a scene name and icon

Rename/Icon Select

Changes the scene name and icon displayed on the front panel display or TV screen.

1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select “Rename/Icon Select” and press 9ENTER.**

2 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to choose an icon.**

3 **Press 9Cursor ▽ and 9ENTER.**

Editing the name is available.

4 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a character, and press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to enter the selected character.**

Scene names may consist of up to 20 characters.

5 **Repeat step 4 to enter the desired scene name.**

6 **Confirm the scene name by pressing 9ENTER.**

7 **Press 9Cursor ▽ to select “OK” and press 9ENTER to register the new input name.**

- To cancel the operation without applying changes, select “CANCEL” and then press 9ENTER.
- To clear the characters entered in step 4, select “CLEAR” and press 9ENTER.

Resetting a scene

Reset

Restores all settings for the selected scene to their default values.

Simple registering as the SCENE

1 **Use 4Input selector to select the input source you want to register.**

2 **Set the settings such as sound program, Compressed Music Enhancer, or HDMI OUT you want to register.**

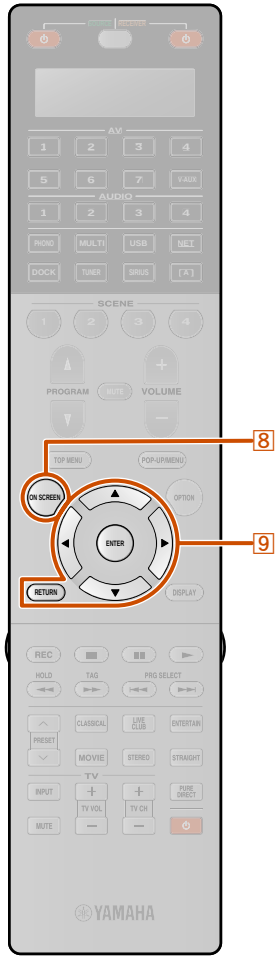
The following settings can be registered with a scene 1:
Input, Audio Select, HDMI Output, Sound Program, Pure Direct Mode, Tone Control, Adaptive DRC, Compressed Music Enhancer, CINEMA DSP 3D Mode, Dialogue Lift, Extended Surround, Video Adjustment, Video Processing, Master Volume, Lipsync, Setting Pattern, PEQ Select

3 **Press the 5SCENE key until “SET Complete” appears on the front panel display.**

Release the key when “SET Complete” is displayed

When changing “SCENE,” also change the external component that the remote control operates (☞p. 129).

1 : Settings that are not checked in the Scene menu’s “Load” item are not enabled when the corresponding scene key is pressed.



Setting sound program parameters (Sound Program menu)

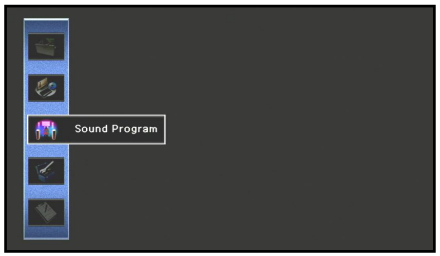
Sound effects can be adjusted from the Sound Program menu.

Editing sound programs

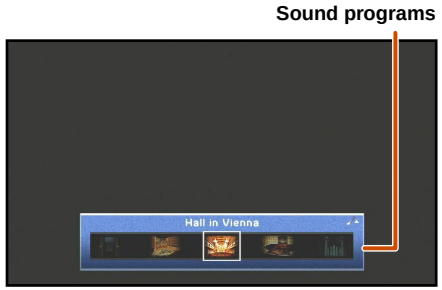
Adjust sound field elements (sound program parameters) to achieve sound effects suited to the acoustics of audio/video sources or rooms if you are not satisfied with the results achieved with default sound program settings. Follow the procedure described below to adjust sound program parameters.

1 Press 8ON SCREEN.

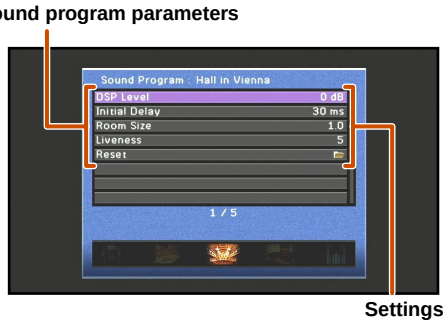
2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Sound Program” and press 9ENTER.



3 Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a sound program and press 9Cursor △.



4 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a parameter and press 9ENTER.



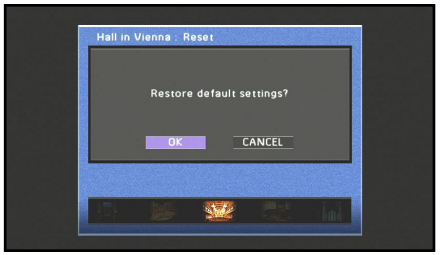
5 Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ to adjust the parameter and press 9RETURN. *1

When there are multiple parameters in the selected sound program, repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust other parameters.

6 Press 8ON SCREEN to close the Sound Program menu.

■ To initialize sound program parameters

To set the parameters of the sound program back to their default settings, use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select “Reset” in step 4 and press 9ENTER. When the following message is displayed, select “OK” and press 9ENTER to initialize.



To cancel initializing, select “CANCEL” and press 9ENTER when the message above is displayed.

*1 : An asterisk (*) appears on the left of the sound field parameter name displayed on the TV when you change the parameter from its default setting.

CINEMA DSP parameters

DSP Level

Change the effect level (level of the sound field effect to be added). You can adjust the level of the sound field effect while checking the sound effect.

Adjustable range	-6 dB to +3 dB
Default setting	0 dB

Adjust “DSP Level” as follows:
- The effect sound is too soft.
- There are no differences between effects of the sound programs.
  → Increase the effect level.
- The sound is dull.
- The sound field effect is added too much.
  → Reduce the effect level.

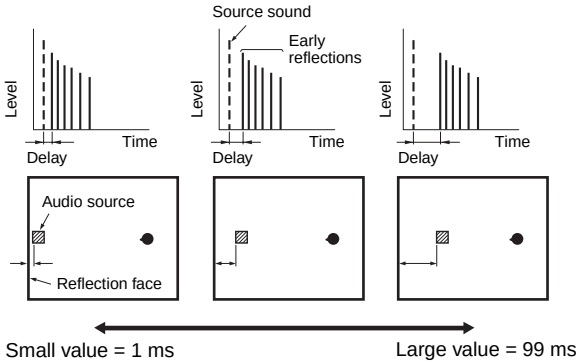
Initial Delay

Surround Initial Delay

Surround Back Initial Delay

Initial delay. Presence, surround, and surround back sound field initial delay. Changes the apparent size of the sound field by adjusting the delay between the direct sound and the first reflection heard by the listener. The smaller the value, the smaller the sound field seems to the listener.

Adjustable range	1 to 99 ms (Initial Delay) 1 to 49 ms (Surround Initial Delay and Surround Back Initial Delay)



When you adjust the initial delay parameters, we also recommend that you adjust the corresponding room size parameters likewise.

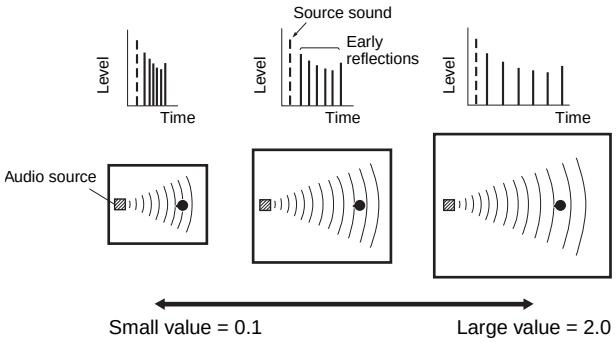
Room Size

Surround Room Size

Surround Back Room Size

Room size. Presence, surround, and surround back room size. Adjusts the apparent size of the sound field. The larger the value, the larger the surround sound field becomes. As the sound is repeatedly reflected around a room, the larger the hall is, the longer the time between the original reflected sound and the subsequent reflections. By controlling the time between the reflected sounds, you can change the apparent size of the virtual venue. Changing this parameter from one to two doubles the apparent length of the room.

Adjustable range	0.1 to 2.0



When you adjust the room size parameters, we also recommend that you adjust the corresponding initial delay parameters likewise.

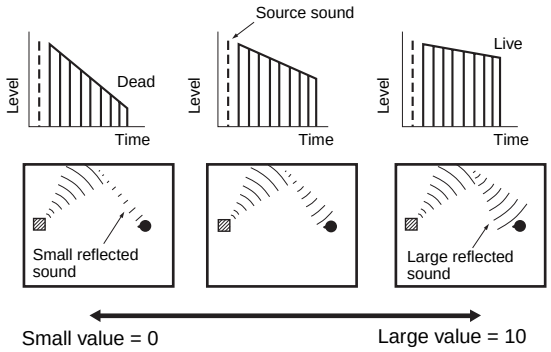
Liveness

Surround Liveness

Surround Back Liveness

Liveness. Surround and surround back liveness. Adjusts the reflectivity of the virtual walls in the hall by changing the rate at which the early reflections decay. The early reflections of an audio source decay much faster in a room with acoustically absorbent wall surfaces than in one which has highly reflective surfaces. A room with acoustically absorbent surfaces is referred to as “dead,” while a room with highly reflective surfaces is referred to as “live.” This parameter lets you adjust the early reflection decay rate and thus the “liveness” of the room.

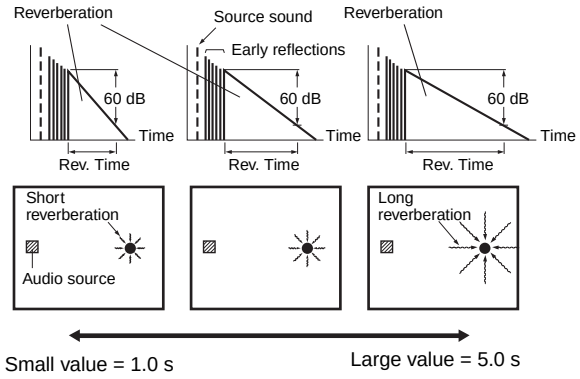
Adjustable range	0 to 10



Reverb Time

Reverberation time. Adjusts the amount of time taken for the dense, subsequent reverberation sound to decay by 60 dB at 1 kHz. This changes the apparent size of the acoustic environment over an extremely wide range. Set a longer reverberation time to get more sustaining reverberation sound, and set a shorter time to get articulate sound.

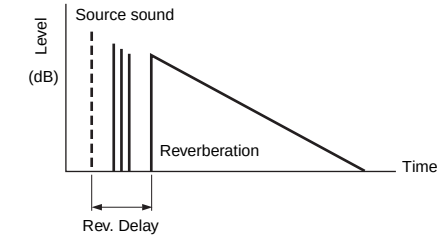
Adjustable range	1.0 to 5.0 s



Reverb Delay

Reverberation delay. Adjusts the time difference between the beginning of the direct sound and the beginning of the reverberation sound. The larger the value, the later the reverberation sound begins. A later reverberation sound makes you feel as if you are in a larger acoustic environment.

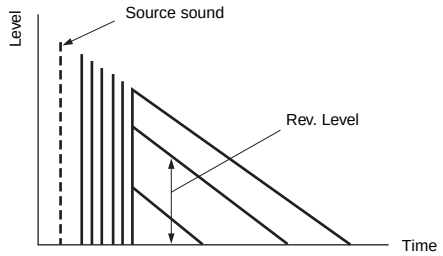
Adjustable range	0 to 250 ms



Reverb Level

Reverberation level. Adjusts the volume of the reverberation sound. The larger the value, the stronger the reverberation becomes.

Adjustable range	0 to 100%



Decode Type

Selects a surround decoder to be used with a sound program in the MOVIE category. 1

PLIIx Movie PLII Movie	Selects the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Movie (or Dolby Pro Logic II Movie) decoder.
Neo:6 Cinema	Selects the Neo:6 (Cinema) decoder.

Parameters usable in certain sound programs

2ch Stereo only

Direct

Automatically bypasses the DSP circuit and tone control circuit depending on the condition of tone control etc., when an analog audio source is played back. You can enjoy a higher quality sound.

Auto **(Default)**	Outputs sound by bypassing the DSP circuit and tone control circuit when both tone controls of “Bass” and “Treble” are set to 0 dB.
Off	Does not bypass the DSP circuit and tone control circuit.

7ch Stereo only

Center Level

Adjusts the center channel volume. 2

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	100%

Surround L Level

Adjusts the volume of the surround L channel. 2

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	100%

Surround R Level

Adjusts the volume of the surround R channel. 2

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	100%

Surround Back L Level

Adjusts the volume of the surround back L channel. 2

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	35% (7.1-channel configuration) 50% (6.1-channel configuration)

Surround Back R Level

Adjusts the volume of the surround back R channel. 2

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	35% (7.1-channel configuration) 50% (6.1-channel configuration)

Front Presence L Level

Adjusts the volume of the front presence L channel. 2

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	33%

1 : Surround decoders cannot be changed when used with the following MOVIE and ENTERTAINMENT sound programs.
- Mono Movie
- Sports
- Action Game
- Roleplaying Game

2 : Not displayed when speakers are set to be inactive.

Front Presence R Level

Adjusts the volume of the front presence R channel. [1]

Adjustable range	0 to 100%
Default setting	33%

Parameters usable in surround decoder

Decode Type

Selects a surround decoder.

Pro Logic	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic decoder. This is suitable for all kinds of audio sources.
PLIIx Movie / PLII Movie	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) decoder. This is suitable for movies. [2]
PLIIx Music / PLII Music	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) decoder. This is suitable for music. [2]
PLIIx Game / PLII Game	Reproduces sound using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) decoder. This is suitable for games. [2]
Neo:6 Cinema	Reproduces sound using the DTS Neo:6 decoder. This is suitable for movies.
Neo:6 Music	Reproduces sound using the DTS Neo:6 decoder. This is suitable for music.

Dolby PLIIx Music and Dolby PLII Music only

Panorama

Adjusts the soundscape of the front sound field. Sends front left/right channels sounds to the surround speakers as well as the front speakers for a wraparound effect.

Off **(Default)**	Disables the effect.
On	Enables the effect.

Center Width

Spreads the center channel sound to the front left and right speakers to suit your needs or preferences. Set this parameter to 0 for outputting the center sound from the center speaker only, or to 7 for outputting it from the front left/right speaker only.

Adjustable range	0 to 7
Default setting	3

Dimension

Adjusts the difference in level between the front sound field and the surround sound field. You can adjust the difference in level created by the software being played back to obtain the preferred sound balance.
The surround sound gets stronger as you make the value more negative, and the front sound gets stronger as you make the value more positive.

Adjustable range	-3 to +3
Default setting	0

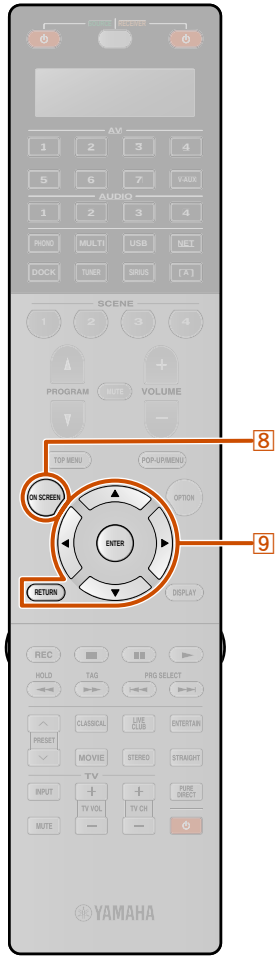
When Neo:6 Music is selected

Center Image

Adjusts the front left and right channel output relative to the center channel to make the center channel more or less dominant as necessary.

Adjustable range	0.0 to 1.0
Default setting	0.3

[1] : Not displayed when speakers are set to be inactive.
[2] : You cannot select the Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder in the following conditions:
- When “Surround Back” is set to “None” (☞p. 113).
- When headphones are connected.



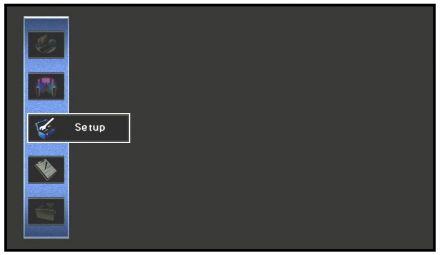
Setting various functions (Setup menu)

Various settings, such as speaker volume or HDMI functions, can be changed from the Setup menu.

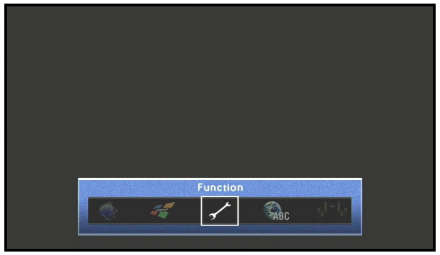
Operating the Setup menu

1 **Press [8]ON SCREEN.**

2 **Press [9]Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "Setup" and press [9]ENTER.**



3 **Use [9]Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select a menu and press [9]ENTER.**



Setup menus

Speaker	Adjusts parameters for speakers, such as speaker status, and volume adjustment for each speaker (☞p. 111).
Sound	Sets functions related to audio output, such as adjustment of maximum volume and of dynamic range (☞p. 115).
Video	Sets video output functions, such as video conversion settings (resolution and aspect ratio) (☞p. 117).
HDMI	Sets HDMI functions, such as the HDMI Control function and output destination for HDMI sound (☞p. 118).
Network	Sets network status, such as IP Address or MAC Address Filter (☞p. 121).
Multi Zone	Sets multi-zone functions, such as volume adjustment for speakers in the secondary zone (☞p. 122).
Function	Sets functions such as the Auto Power Down function, that make the unit easier to use (☞p. 123).
Language	Selects the language of the menus and messages displayed on TV screen (☞p. 126).

4 **Use [9]Cursor △ / ▽ to select an item and press [9]ENTER.**

When the selected item contains detailed ones, use [9]Cursor △ / ▽ to select the detailed item and press [9]ENTER.

5 **Use [9]Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ to adjust the setting.**

Pressing [9]RETURN displays the previous menu screen. Repeat steps 4 to 5 to adjust multiple settings.

6 **Press [8]ON SCREEN to close the menu.**

Setup menu

- Speaker
  - Auto Setup
  - Manual Setup
- Sound
  - Lipsync
  - Dynamic Range
  - Max Volume
  - Initial Volume
  - Pure Direct Mode
  - Adaptive DSP Level
- Video
  - Analog to Analog Conversion Processing
- HDMI
  - HDMI Control
  - Control Select
  - ARC (Audio Return Channel)
  - TV Audio Input
  - Audio Output
  - Standby Through
- Network
  - IP Address
  - Network Standby
  - MAC Address Filter
- Multi Zone
  - Zone2 Set
  - Zone3 Set
  - Monitor Out Assign
  - Party Mode Set
  - Zone Scene Rename
  - Zone Rename
- Function
  - Auto Power Down
  - Input Assignment
  - Display Set
  - Trigger Output1
  - Trigger Output2
  - Memory Guard
- Language

Manages settings for speakers

Speaker setup items

Auto Setup	Optimizes the speaker configuration automatically.
Manual Setup	Manually adjusts parameters for speakers.

Automatic speaker setup

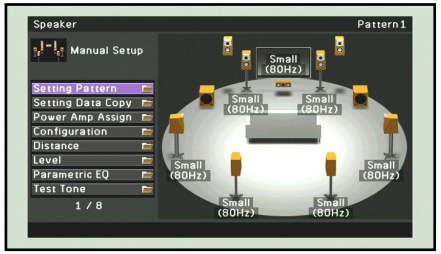
Auto Setup

Optimizes the speaker configuration automatically using YPAO (☞p. 41).

Manual speaker setup

Manual Setup

The following parameters can be specified manually.



Setting Pattern	Registers two speaker setting patterns and switches between the two.
Setting Data Copy	Copies “Setting Pattern” data.
Power Amp Assign	Adds the extra speakers to the 7.1-channel speaker connection.
Configuration	Manually manages speaker configuration, such as speaker size (sound production capacity), and bass audio processing.
Distance	Manually adjusts the output of each speaker based on distance to the listening position.
Level	Manually adjusts the volume of each speaker.
Parametric EQ	Selects an equalizer to adjust speaker output characteristics.
Test Tone	Generates test tones.

Setting Pattern

Registers two patterns for “Power Amp Assign,” “Configuration,” “Level,” “Distance,” and “Parametric EQ” settings and switches between the two setting patterns.
When the automatic speaker setup (YPAO) is performed, the result of measurement is registered on the currently selected Setting Pattern.

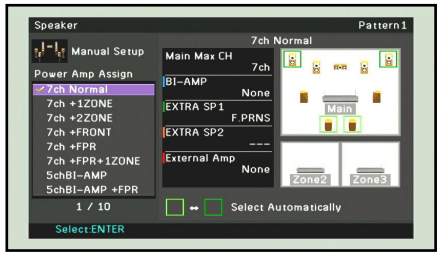
Setting Data Copy

Copies “Setting Pattern” data in the specified direction.

Pattern1 ► 2	Copies Pattern1 settings to Pattern2.
Pattern2 ► 1	Copies Pattern2 settings to Pattern1.

Power Amp Assign

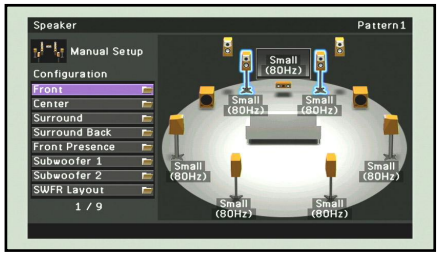
In addition to the 7.1-channel speaker connection, various speaker configurations are possible using the presence speakers connection, bi-amp connection or multi-zone function (☞p. 20, p. 21).



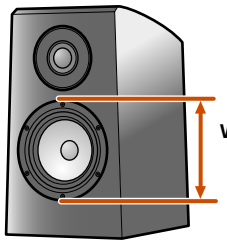
7ch Normal	Enables the normal 7-channel speakers and front presence speakers (☞p. 16).
7ch + 1ZONE	Enables the normal 7-channel speakers and zone2 and zone3 speakers (☞p. 18). The Zone assigned to EXTRA SP1 can be selected from Zone2 or Zone3.
7ch + 2ZONE	Enables the normal 7-channel, Zone2 and Zone3 speakers (☞p. 19). The Zone assigned to EXTRA SP1/EXTRA SP2 can be selected from Zone2 or Zone3.
7ch + FRONT	Enables the normal 7-channel speakers and external front speakers (☞p. 24).
7ch + FPR	Enables the normal 7-channel speakers and external presence speakers (☞p. 24).
7ch + FPR + 1ZONE	Enables the normal 7-channel speakers, external presence speakers and zone speakers (☞p. 25). The Zone assigned to EXTRA SP1 can be selected from Zone2 or Zone3.
5ch BI-AMP	Enables the bi-amp connection (☞p. 18).
5ch BI-AMP + FPR	Enables the bi-amp connection and external presence speakers (☞p. 25).
5ch BI-AMP + SB	Enables the bi-amp connection and external surround back speakers (☞p. 25).
5ch BI-AMP + SB + FPR	Enables the bi-amp connection, external surround back and presence speakers (☞p. 26).

Configuration

Displays the speakers connected to this unit or changes the sizes of the speakers.



In the “Configuration,” you can select the speaker size characteristic (Large or Small). Select the size (sound reproduction capacity) that matches your speakers.



Woofer diameter
- 6-1/4 in (16 cm) or larger → Large
- 6-1/4 in (16 cm) or smaller → Small

When speaker size is set to “Small,” low-frequency components of the speakers that you configured are produced from the subwoofer (or from the front speakers if there is no subwoofer).

Front

Selects the size (sound reproduction capacity) of the front speakers. ♛1

Large	Select this for large speakers. The front speakers will produce all of the front channel frequency components.
Small **(Default)**	Select this for small speakers. The subwoofer will produce front channel low-frequency components. The crossover frequency can be selected from 40Hz, 60Hz, 80Hz **(Default)**, 90Hz, 100Hz, 110Hz, 120Hz, 160Hz, or 200Hz. All frequencies below the selected frequency will be sent to the subwoofer.

Center

Selects the size of the center speaker.

Large	Select this when a large center speaker is connected.
Small **(Default)**	Select this when a small center speaker is connected. The crossover frequency can be selected from 40Hz, 60Hz, 80Hz **(Default)**, 90Hz, 100Hz, 110Hz, 120Hz, 160Hz, or 200Hz when selecting this. All frequencies below the selected frequency will be sent to the subwoofer.
None	Select this when there is no center speaker. The front speakers will produce center channel audio.

♛1 : When “Subwoofer1” and “Subwoofer2” are set to “None,” you can only choose “Large.” If the front speaker setting is “Small” and you change “Subwoofer1” and “Subwoofer2” to “None,” it will automatically change to “Large.”

Surround
Selects the size of the surround speakers.

Large	Select this when the surround speakers are large.
Small **(Default)**	Select this when the surround speakers are small. The crossover frequency can be selected from 40Hz, 60Hz, 80Hz **(Default)**, 90Hz, 100Hz, 110Hz, 120Hz, 160Hz, or 200Hz when selecting this. All frequencies below the selected frequency will be sent to the subwoofer.
None	Select this when no surround speakers are connected. The front speakers will produce surround channel audio signals.

- When set to “None,” no sound is produced from the surround back speaker even if that speaker is connected.
- When set to “None,” the sound programs will change to Virtual CINEMA DSP mode.

Surround Back
Selects the size of the surround back speakers.

Largex1	Select when one large surround back speaker is connected.
Largex2	Select when two large surround back speakers are connected.
Smallx1	Select when one small surround back speaker is connected.
Smallx2 **(Default)**	Select when two small surround back speakers are connected.
None	Select this when no surround back speakers are connected.

- When there are no surround speakers are connected, the setting will automatically change to “None.”
- You can set surround back audio signals, including from the playback source, to be mixed down and produced from a single speaker (6.1-channel layout) or produced from left and right surround speakers (5.1-channel layout).

Front Presence
Specify connection of front presence speakers.

Use **(Default)**	Select this when front presence speakers are connected.
None	Select this when front presence speakers are not connected.

Subwoofer1 / Subwoofer2
Confirms the subwoofer.

Use **(Default)**	Select this when subwoofer is connected. During playback, the subwoofer will produce audio from the LFE (low-frequency effect) channel and bass audio from other channels. 1 Select the phase of the subwoofer from the following items if the bass audio is lacking or unclear. Normal **(Default)** — Does not change the subwoofer phase. Reverse — Reverses the subwoofer phase.
None	Select this when subwoofer is not connected. The front speakers will produce audio from the LFE (low-frequency effect) channel and bass frequency audio from other channels, when both “Subwoofer1” and “Subwoofer2” are set to “None.”

SWFR Layout
Select a layout of two subwoofers connected to this unit.

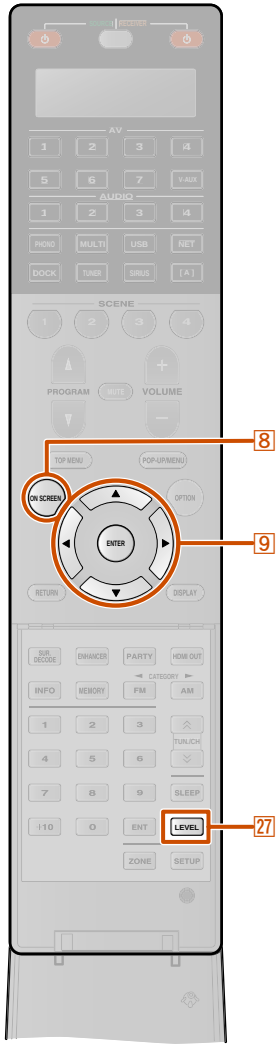
Left + Right	Select when two subwoofers are arranged with one to the left and one to the right of this unit.
Front + Rear	Select when two subwoofers are arranged with one in front of and one behind this unit.
Monaural x2 **(Default)**	Select when two subwoofers are arranged in a manner not suited to either or the other setting options.

Extra Bass
Allows the front channel low-frequency components to be produced exclusively by the subwoofer, or by both the subwoofer and the front speakers.

Off **(Default)**	Depending on the size of the front speakers, either the front speakers or the subwoofer produce the front channel low-frequency components.
On	The subwoofer and the front speakers produce the front channel low-frequency components.

When “Subwoofer1” and “Subwoofer2” are set to “None” or “Front” is set to “Small,” “Extra Bass” is disabled.

1 : Enabling “Extra Bass” allows both the subwoofer and the front speakers to produce bass audio.



Distance

Adjusts the timing at which the speakers produce audio so that sounds from the speakers reach the listening position at the same time.

Selecting adjustment units

Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the unit for distance (meters or feet), and press 9ENTER.

Setting distances for each speaker

Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the speaker you want to configure, and press 9ENTER.
Then use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to set the distance from the speaker to your listening position.

Adjustable range	1.0 ft. to 80.0 ft. (0.30 m to 24.00 m)
Default setting	10.0 ft. (3.00 m)
Adjustment increments	0.2 ft. (0.05 m)

Level

Separately adjusts the volume of each speaker.
Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the desired speaker, and press 9ENTER.
Then use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to adjust the volume for the selected speaker.

Adjustable range	-10.0 dB to +10.0 dB
Default setting	0.0 dB
Adjustment increments	0.5 dB

You can also adjust the volume of each speaker by using 27LEVEL.
Press 27LEVEL and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the desired speaker. Then use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to adjust the volume for the selected speaker.

Parametric EQ

Adjusts sound quality of tone using a parametric equalizer.

PEQ Select

Select an equalizer type.

Manual	Manually adjust equalizer sound.
Flat	Adjust individual speakers to achieve the same characteristics. Select this option if speakers offer the same quality.
Front	Adjust individual speakers to achieve the same characteristics as the front left and right speakers. Select this option if front left and right speakers offer significantly greater quality than other speakers.
Natural	Adjust all speakers to achieve a natural sound. Select this if high-frequency sounds seem too strong when "PEQ Select" is set to "Flat."
Through **(Default)**	Disable the equalizer.

PEQ Data Copy

Select 1 of the 3 parametric equalizer types acquired with automatic setup and manually copy that information to the manual adjustments.

Flat ▶ Manual	Copy the "Flat" parametric equalizer information acquired with automatic setup.
Front ▶ Manual	Copy the "Front" parametric equalizer information acquired with automatic setup.
Natural ▶ Manual	Copy the "Natural" parametric equalizer information acquired with automatic setup.

Front L / Front R / Center / Surround L / Surround R / Surround Back L / Surround Back R / Front Presence L / Front Presence R / Subwoofer1 / Subwoofer2

The parametric equalizer can be used to manually adjust sound quality for individual speakers.
Set "PEQ Select" to "Manual" and use "PEQ Data Copy" to copy information acquired with automatic setup. This information can be used as a basis for performing manual adjustments.

1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "Band / Gain," "Freq. / Gain," or "Q / Gain" and press 9ENTER.**

2 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ repeatedly to adjust the parameter and use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to adjust the gain.**

3 **Press 9ENTER to exit the edit window.**

4 **Repeat steps 1 to 3 to configure other parameters.**

To reset all parameter settings for the selected speaker, select "Yes" in "Reset" and press 9ENTER.

5 **Press 8ON SCREEN to close the menu.**

Test Tone

Turns the test tone generator on or off.

Off **(Default)**	Does not generate test tones.
On	Generates test tones. While “On” is selected, test tones are produced constantly.

You can use the test tone in a variety of circumstances. For example, you can adjust the volume balance settings for each speaker, or whenever you adjust the settings on the internal parametric equalizer, you can listen to the actual effect while operating this unit. Turn the test tone off when you have finished making adjustments.

Setting the audio output function of this unit

Sound setup items

Lipsync	Adjusts the delay between video and audio output.
Dynamic Range	Selects the dynamic range adjustment method for Dolby Digital and DTS playback.
Max Volume	Sets the maximum volume for this receiver.
Initial Volume	Sets the initial volume for when this receiver is turned on.
Pure Direct Mode	Selects whether or not this unit outputs video signal in Pure Direct Mode.
Adaptive DSP Level	Adjusts the level of DSP effect in conjunction with the volume level.

Synchronizing audio/video output

Lipsync

Adjusts the delay between audio and video output (Lipsync function).
Selects a compensation method for the delay between audio and video output.

Auto **(Default)** 1	When connecting to a TV via HDMI, automatically adjusts output timing if the TV supports an automatic lipsync function.
Manual	Manually adjusts the correction time. Select this when the monitor does not support the automatic lipsync function.

Adjustable range	0 ms to 250 ms
Default setting	0 ms
Adjustment increments	1 ms

1 : This setting is effective at the HDMI OUT jack selected by using 24 HDMI OUT.

Auto-adjusting Dolby Digital and DTS dynamic range

Dynamic Range

Selects the dynamic range adjustment method for audio bitstream (Dolby Digital and DTS) signal playback.

MAX **(Default)**	Produces audio without adjusting the dynamic range.
STD	Adjusts the dynamic range for optimum volume for regular home use.
MIN/AUTO	(MIN) Sets the dynamic range suitable for low volume or a quiet environment, such as at night, for bitstream signals except for Dolby TrueHD signals. (AUTO) Adjusts the dynamic range for Dolby TrueHD signals based on input signal information.

Setting the maximum volume

Max Volume

Specify the maximum volume level so that sound is not too loud. The default setting of +16.5 dB produces the highest volume.

Adjustable range	-30.0 dB to +16.5 dB (maximum volume)
Default setting	+16.5 dB
Adjustment increments	5.0 dB

Setting the startup volume

Initial Volume

Sets the initial volume for when this receiver is turned on. When this parameter is set to “Off,” the volume is set at the level when the receiver last entered standby mode. 1

Adjustable range	Off, Mute, -80.0 dB to +16.5 dB
Default setting	Off
Adjustment increments	0.5 dB

Video signal output in Pure Direct Mode

Pure Direct Mode

Selects whether or not this unit outputs video signal in Pure Direct Mode.

Auto **(Default)**	Automatically output video signal when the input source equipping video signal input jacks or content window is selected. If no video signal is input, only the wall paper is displayed.
Video Off	Does not output video signal including the wall paper.

Adjusting DSP effect and volume level

Adaptive DSP Level

Automatically adjust the level of DSP effect in conjunction with the volume level.

Off	Disables automatic adjustment of the level of DSP effect.
On **(Default)**	Adjusts the degree of DSP effect in conjunction with volume level. The higher the volume level, the less the DSP effect applied. The lower the volume level, the greater the DSP effect applied. This feature also corrects sound effect according to the result of automatic measurement.

1 : When you set “Max Volume” at a lower level than “Initial Volume,” “Max Volume” has priority.

Setting this unit's video output function

Video setup items

Analog to Analog Conversion	Enable or disable video conversion between analog video jacks.
Processing	Enable or disable adjustment of resolution, aspect ratio and video signal correction for video signal converted to HDMI video.

Analog-to-analog video conversion

Analog to Analog Conversion

Enables or disables video conversion between analog video jacks.

Off	Disables video conversion between analog video jacks.
On **(Default)**	Enables video conversion between analog video jacks.

- Analog-to-HDMI video conversion is always possible unless video signals are being input at the HDMI input jacks or 1080p-resolution analog video signals are being input (☞p. 161).
- This unit does not convert 480 line video signals and 576 line video signals interchangeably.
- 480p-, 576p-, 1080i- and 720p-resolution video signals can not be output at the S-video and video jacks of MON.OUT/ZONE OUT (☞p. 161).
- The converted video signals are only output at the MONITOR OUT jacks.
- When composite video or S-video signals from a VCR are converted into component video signals, the picture quality may suffer depending on your VCR.
- Unconventional signals input at the composite video or S-video jacks cannot be converted or may be output abnormally. In such cases, set "Analog to Analog Conversion" to "Off."

Adjusting video with conversion of video signal to HDMI

Processing

Adjust video with conversion of video input to HDMI video.

Off **(Default)**	Video are not adjusted with processing.
On	Video are adjusted with processing.

Resolution 1

Auto **(Default)**	Automatic upscaling in accordance with TV resolution.
480p (576p)	Upscaling to 480p (576p).
720p	Upscaling to 720p.
1080i	Upscaling to 1080i.
1080p	Upscaling to 1080p.
Through	No upscaling.

- When a TV is connected to this unit via the HDMI jack, this unit automatically detects a resolution that the TV supports. Only the detected resolution can be selected.
- If this unit cannot detect the resolution that the TV supports, set "MONITOR CHECK" in the Advanced Setup menu to "SKIP" (☞p. 141) and try again.

1 : This item can be set, when "Processing" is set to "On."

Aspect 1

Specifies the method used to convert video signal with a 4:3 aspect ratio (480i/576i/480p/576p) to the 16:9 aspect ratio (720p/1080i/1080p).

Through **(Default)**	Does not adjust the aspect ratio of video signal sources.
16:9 Normal	Transmits 4:3 aspect ratio video signals to a 16:9 TV with black bands on either side of the screen.
Smart Zoom	Adjusts video images with an aspect ratio of 4:3 to fit video monitors with an aspect ratio of 16:9. When “Aspect” is set to “Smart Zoom,” the edges of video images may be distorted with display on the video monitor.

Adjustment

Adjusts video quality. The preset feature can also be used to save up to six preferred video quality settings. Select a preset and then adjust the following parameters.

Contrast Enhancement	When this item is set to “Auto,” image contrast is enhanced. “Off” **(Default)** disables the contrast enhancement function.
Resolution Enhancement	When this item is set to “Auto,” image resolution is enhanced. “Off” **(Default)** disables the resolution enhancement function.
Noise Reduction	When this item is set to “Auto,” image noise is reduced. “Off” **(Default)** disables the noise reduction function.
Brightness	Adjusts image brightness. Control range: -100 to +100 Initial setting: 0
Contrast	Adjusts image contrast. Control range: -100 to +100 Initial setting: 0
Saturation	Adjusts image saturation. Control range: -100 to +100 Initial setting: 0

Setting HDMI functions

HDMI setup items

HDMI Control	Turns the HDMI Control on or off.
Control Select	Choose an HDMI OUT jack on which HDMI Control function is enabled.
ARC (Audio Return Channel)	Turns the Audio Return Channel function on or off.
TV Audio Input	Chooses automatically selected audio input in conjunction with TV operation when the HDMI Control is turned on.
Audio Output	Specifies whether or not audio signal is output through this unit and a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks.
Standby Through 2	Turns the Standby Through function on or off.

1 : This item can be set, when “Processing” is set to “On.”
2 : This item appears depending on “HDMI Control.”

Receiver operation via TV (HDMI Control)

HDMI Control

Set the HDMI Control function to “On” to operate devices connected via HDMI. If the TV or other external components support HDMI Control (e.g., Panasonic VIERA Link), you can use the remote controls of those devices to operate some of this unit’s functions, and to synchronize this unit with the operation of those devices.
Refer to “Using the HDMI Control function” (☞p. 143) for setting instructions.

Off **(Default)**	Sets HDMI Control to “Off.”
On	Sets HDMI Control to “On.” ♛1

If this unit is connected to HDMI devices that do not support the HDMI Control function, these functions will not operate.

Selecting an HDMI OUT jack for the HDMI Control function

Control Select

Select the HDMI OUT jack that utilizes the HDMI Control function.
Refer to “Using the HDMI Control function” (☞p. 143) for setting instructions.

OUT1(TV1)	Applies the HDMI Control function for the HDMI OUT 1 jack.
OUT2(TV2)	Applies the HDMI Control function for the HDMI OUT 2 jack.

We recommend to unplug and plug again the power cable of this unit and the TV when changing the Control Select.

Listening to TV audio via single HDMI cable (Audio Return Channel)

ARC (Audio Return Channel)

You can enable or disable the Audio Return Channel function. When using a TV that supports Audio Return Channel function and the function is enabled, the TV’s audio output is transmit to this unit via an HDMI cable.
The TV audio input to this unit is regarded as the input source selected in “TV Audio Input.” ♛2
By means of this function, you do not need to connect the TV’s audio output (digital audio output or analog audio output) to the unit.

Off **(Default)**	Sets the Audio Return Channel to “Off.”
On	Sets the Audio Return Channel to “On.”

When the TV audio is input to the unit using Audio Return Channel, “TV” is displayed on the front panel display.

- “ARC (Audio Return Channel)” is enabled only for the HDMI OUT 1 or 2 jack selected with “Control Select.”
- Refer to “Single HDMI cable input to TV audio with Audio Return Channel function” (☞p. 145) for setting instructions.

Selecting an input source to assign audio input for the TV

TV Audio Input

Select the input source that receives audio signals from TV while the HDMI Control function is on.
When the TV is set to output sounds via this unit, the TV audio input is automatically selected to the input source assigned here. ♛2

TV1

Audio input	AUDIO1-4
Default setting	AUDIO1

TV2

Audio input	AUDIO1-4
Default setting	AUDIO3

- “TV Audio Input” is enabled only for the HDMI OUT 1 or 2 jack selected with “Control Select.”
- Refer to “Switching the input source on this unit automatically when listening to TV audio” (☞p. 144) for instructions.

♛1 : When the HDMI Control is “On,” the Standby Through function is automatically enabled. When this unit enters standby mode, the audio and video signals from the last-selected HDMI input source will continue to be transmitted to the TV. The HDMI input source can only be changed using the remote control.

♛2 : While the Audio Return Channel function is on, the jack selected for the input source cannot be used.

Specify whether or not audio signal is output through this unit and a TV connected via the HDMI OUT jack

Audio Output

Choose whether audio from an external component, such as a BD/DVD player, connected via HDMI is played back through this unit or through a TV.

Amp

Specify whether or not audio signal is output through this unit.

Off	Audio is not output through this unit.
On **(Default)**	Audio is output through this unit. When this setting is selected, audio from the external component is output in a format compatible with this unit.

OUT1

Specify whether or not audio signal is output through a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 1 jack.

Off **(Default)**	Audio is not output through a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 1 jack.
On	Outputs audio through a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 1 jack. When this setting is selected, audio from the external component is output in a format compatible with the TV.

OUT2

Specify whether or not audio signal is output through a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 2 jack.

Off **(Default)**	Audio is not output through a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 2 jack.
On	Outputs audio through a TV connected via the HDMI OUT 2 jack. When this setting is selected, audio from the external component is output in a format compatible with the TV.

When “HDMI Control” is set to “On,” the settings of “Amp” and the HDMI OUT jack (OUT1 or OUT2) selected with “Control Select” are interlocked with “HDMI Control.”

Transmitting HDMI audio/video to the TV during standby mode (Standby Through)

Standby Through

This function allows audio/video signals from HDMI inputs to continue to be transmitted to a TV when this unit is in standby mode.

When the Standby Through function is “On,” audio/video signals continue to be output to the TV from the last HDMI input source before this unit enters standby mode. The HDMI input source can be selected using 4**AV1-7** or 4**V-AUX** in standby mode.

Off **(Default)**	Sets Standby Through to “Off.”
On	Transmits audio/video signals from the selected HDMI input source to the TV.

- When “HDMI Control” is “On,” Standby Through function is automatically enabled and “Standby Through” is not displayed.
- When the Standby Through function is on, the HDMI Through/iPod Charge indicator on the front panel lights during the standby mode. This unit consumes 2 to 5 W of power.
- Input source can be selected during Standby Through.

Adjusting this unit's network parameters

Network setup items

IP Address	Selects whether this unit acquires network parameters (IP address, etc.) from the network's DHCP server automatically, or whether these parameters are specified manually.
Network Standby	Selects whether or not commands are accepted over the network when this unit is in standby mode.
MAC Address Filter	Sets the MAC address filter to restrict network access to this unit.

Specifying network parameters (IP address, etc.)

IP Address

Selects whether or not this unit automatically acquires network parameters (IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, primary DNS server and secondary DNS server) from a network device such as a router equipped with DHCP function.

DHCP

Off	Select this setting to specify IP address manually.
On **(Default)**	Select this setting to acquire IP address from the network's DHCP server automatically.

Manual Setup

IP Address	Specifies the IP address assigned to this unit. An IP address used by another device on the same network may not be used.
Subnet Mask	Specifies the subnet mask assigned to this unit.
Default Gateway	Specifies the IP address of the default gateway.
DNS Server (Primary)/DNS Server (Secondary)	Specifies the IP addresses of the primary and secondary Domain Name System (DNS) servers.

If the network has only one DNS address, enter that address in "DNS Server (Primary)." If the network has two or more DNS addresses, enter one of the addresses in "DNS Server (Primary)" and the other in "DNS Server (Secondary)."

Turning this unit on by the command over the network when in the standby mode

Network Standby

Selects whether or not to turn this unit on by the command over the network when in the standby mode.

Off **(Default)**	Disables to turn this unit on by the command over the network.
On	Enables to turn this unit on by the command over the network.

When "Network Standby" is set to "On," this unit can be turned on by the command over the network during the standby mode with the power consumption of about only 5W.

Setting the MAC Address Filter

MAC Address Filter

Sets the MAC address filter to restrict access to this unit in LAN.

Mode

Off **(Default)**	Disables the MAC address filter function.
On	Permits access to this unit only by network devices with specified MAC addresses.

Address Setup

Specifies the MAC addresses of network devices permitted to access to this unit when "MAC Address Filter" is set to "On."

Setting this unit's multi-zone function

Multi Zone setup items

Zone2 Set	Sets the Zone2 functions.
Zone3 Set	Sets the Zone3 functions.
Monitor Out Assign	Displays the menus of Zone2 or Zone3 on the TV monitor.
Party Mode Set	Enable or disable the party mode function.
Zone Scene Rename	Changes the scene names of Zone2 or Zone3.
Zone Rename	Changes the name of Zone2 or Zone3.

Adjusting Zone2 or Zone3 volume

Zone2 Set

Zone3 Set

Volume

Selects whether or not volume level adjustment of Zone2 or Zone3 speakers is enabled.

Fixed	Disables volume level adjustment of Zone2 or Zone3 speakers.
Variable **(Default)**	Enables volume level adjustment of Zone2 or Zone3 speakers.

When setting the Power Amp Assign function, "Volume" is automatically set to "Variable." Refer "Speaker layout" (☞p. 16) for details on the Power Amp Assign function.

Max Volume

Specify the maximum volume level in Zone2 so that sound is not too loud.

Adjustable range	-30.0 dB to +16.5 dB (maximum volume)
Default setting	+16.5 dB
Adjustment increments	5.0 dB

Initial Volume

Specify the initial volume level in Zone2 when this unit is turned on.

Adjustable range	Off, Mute, -80.0 dB to +16.5 dB
Default setting	Off
Adjustment increments	0.5 dB

Mono

Switches between stereo and monaural modes for Zone2 audio signal.

Off **(Default)**	Does not convert Zone2 audio signal to monaural sound.
On	Converts Zone2 audio signal to monaural sound.

Displaying the video on the TV monitor in Zone2 and Zone3

Monitor Out Assign

Sets component video, S-video or video (MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT) jacks for main zone, Zone2 or Zone3 use. When a TV monitor in the main zone is connected via one of the HDMI OUT jacks, MON.OUT jacks can be used to connect another monitor in Zone2 or Zone3.

Main **(Default)**	Outputs the video signals for the main zone.
Zone2 ♛1	Outputs the video signals for Zone2.
Zone3 ♛1	Outputs the video signals for Zone3.

Setting the party mode

Party Mode Set

In party mode, the main zone sources can be played in Zone2 and Zone3 simultaneously (☞p. 149). The party mode function can be enabled or disabled individually for Zone2 and Zone3.

Target : Zone2

Disable	Disables the party mode function in Zone2.
Enable **(Default)**	Enables the party mode function in Zone2.

Target : Zone3

Disable	Disables the party mode function in Zone3.
Enable **(Default)**	Enables the party mode function in Zone3.

♛1 : The ON SCREEN menu, Option menu and content window can be displayed on the monitor for Zone2 and Zone3. For details on features of Zone2 OSD, refer to "Features of the Zone2/Zone3 OSD" (☞p. 148).

Changing Zone2 and Zone3 scene names

Zone Scene Rename

Editing the name of the selected scene in Zone2 or Zone3.

1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "Zone Scene Rename" and press 9ENTER.**

2 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a zone and press 9ENTER.**

3 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a scene you want to rename and press 9ENTER.**

4 **Press 9ENTER.**

Editing the name is available.

5 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a character, and press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to enter the selected character.**

6 **Repeat step 5 to enter the desired scene name.**

7 **Confirm the zone name by pressing 9ENTER.**

8 **Press 9Cursor ▽ to select "OK" and press 9ENTER to register the new scene name.**

- To cancel the operation without applying changes, select "CANCEL" and press 9ENTER.
- To clear the characters entered in step 5, select "CLEAR" and press 9ENTER.
- Scene names may consist of up to 20 characters.

Changing Zone names

Zone Rename

Editing the name of the selected zone.

1 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "Zone Rename" and press 9ENTER.**

2 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a zone you want to rename and press 9ENTER.**

3 **Press 9ENTER.**

Editing the name is available.

4 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select a character, and press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to enter the selected character.**

5 **Repeat step 4 to enter the desired zone name.**

6 **Confirm the zone name by pressing 9ENTER.**

7 **Press 9Cursor ▽ to select "OK" and press 9ENTER to register the new zone name.**

- To cancel the operation without applying changes, select "CANCEL" and press 9ENTER.
- To clear the characters entered in step 4, select "CLEAR" and press 9ENTER.
- Zone names may consist of up to 9 characters.

Making the receiver easier to use

Function setup items

Auto Power Down	This unit enters standby mode if no operations are performed.
Input Assignment	Assigns the input jack to the selected input source.
Display Set	Specifies menu items displayed on TV screen and the front panel.
Trigger Output1	Specifies TRIGGER OUT 1 jack function.
Trigger Output2	Specifies TRIGGER OUT 2 jack function.
Memory Guard	Protects some settings against accidental modification.

Entering standby mode automatically when no operations are performed

Auto Power Down

If you do not operate this unit or use the remote control for an extended period of time, it will automatically go into standby mode (Auto Power Down function). This function's default setting is "Off." When you want to enable this function, set the amount of time to pass before this unit will enter standby.

4Hours	Goes into standby mode, when you have not operated this unit for four hours.
8Hours	Goes into standby mode, when you have not operated this unit for eight hours.
12Hours	Goes into standby mode, when you have not operated this unit for twelve hours.
Off **(Default)**	Auto Power Down function is disabled.

This unit starts a countdown of 30 seconds before entering the standby mode. Pressing any key of the remote control during the countdown cancels entering the standby mode and reset the timer.

Assigning component input and output jacks

Input Assignment

Assigns the coaxial or optical input jack(s) to the selected input source when this unit's initial settings do not correspond to your needs. Change the parameter to reassign the respective jacks and effectively connect more components.
Once the input jacks are reassigned, the corresponding component can be selected using the Input selector buttons.

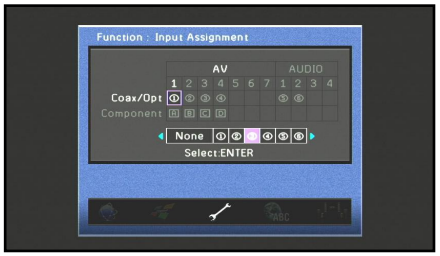
Example: Assigning the OPTICAL input jack to "AV1."

1 Press 9ENTER to display the "Input Assignment" screen.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ to select the cell at the intersection with the "AV1" and "Coax/Opt" and then press 9ENTER.

3 Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select "③" and then press 9ENTER.

Select "None" to clear the existing assignment.



The choices indicate the following jacks.
①, ②, ⑥ : COAXIAL jacks
③, ④, ⑤ : OPTICAL jacks
A, B, C, D : COMPONENT VIDEO jacks
The choices indicate the jacks marked the same alphanumeric on the rear of this unit. For details on marks on the rear of this unit, refer to "Rear panel" (☞p. 10).

4 Press 9RETURN to apply change and return to the previous screen.

- A specific item cannot be selected more than once for the same type of jack.
- Only component, coaxial and optical jacks can be reassigned.
- Coaxial and optical jacks cannot be assigned to the input at the same time.

Specifying menu display

Display Set

Specify front panel display brightness and TV screen wall paper.

Front Panel Display

Specify front panel display brightness and message scroll pattern.

Dimmer	Adjustable range: -4 - 0 Reduce brightness of the front panel display. As the value is lowered, the panel display darkens.
Scroll	Selects the manner in which display scrolls when the total number of characters exceeds the display area on the front panel display. Select “Continue” for continuous scrolling of all characters. Select “Once” to scroll through all characters once and then halt scrolling for display of only the first 14 characters.

Wall Paper

Specify the wall paper displayed on the TV screen when no video signal is input. Select one that you prefer.

Picture 1-3	Displays an image on the TV screen when there is no video signal.
Gray	Displays a gray background on the TV screen when there is no video signal.

Setting TRIGGER OUT functions

Trigger Output1

Trigger Output2

Synchronizes TRIGGER OUT 1 or 2 jack function with the power status of each zone or input switching.

Trigger Mode

Specify the condition that activates TRIGGER OUT 1 or 2 jack function.

Power **(Default)**	TRIGGER OUT 1 or 2 jack function is synchronized with the power status of the zone specified with “Target Zone.”
Source	TRIGGER OUT 1 or 2 jack function is synchronized with input switching in the zone specified with “Target Zone.” Electronic signal is transmitted according to the “Target Source” setting.
Manual	Select this to manually switch the output level for electronic signal transmission with “Manual.”

Target Zone

Specify the zone with which TRIGGER OUT 1 or 2 jack function is synchronized.

Main	When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Power,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with the power status of the main zone. When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Source,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in the main zone.
Zone2	When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Power,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with the power status of Zone2. When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Source,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in Zone2.
Zone3	When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Power,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with the power status of Zone3. When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Source,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in Zone3.
All **(Default)**	When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Power,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with the power status of the main zone or Zone2 or Zone3. When “Trigger Mode” is set to “Source,” electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in the main zone or Zone2 or Zone3.

Target Source

Specify the output level of electronic signal transmitted each time input is switched.

Low 1	Terminates electronic signal transmission when the input source specified with this option is selected.
High **(Default)** 2	Electronic signal is transmitted when the input source specified with this option is selected.

This setting is available only when “Trigger Mode” is set to “Source.”

Manual

Manually switch the output level for electronic signal transmission. This setting can also be used to confirm proper function of the external component connected via the TRIGGER OUT 1 or 2 jack.

Low 1	Stops the electronic signal transmission.
High **(Default)** 2	Transmits the electronic signal.

This setting is available only when “Trigger Mode” is set to “Manual.”

Prohibiting setting changes

Memory Guard

Prohibits setting changes to prevent careless changes being made to the settings on Setup menu.

Off **(Default)**	Settings are not protected.
On	Prohibits changes to the settings on Setup menu until it is returned to “Off.” While set to “On,” the unit displays “Memory Guard!” when an attempt is made to change the settings.

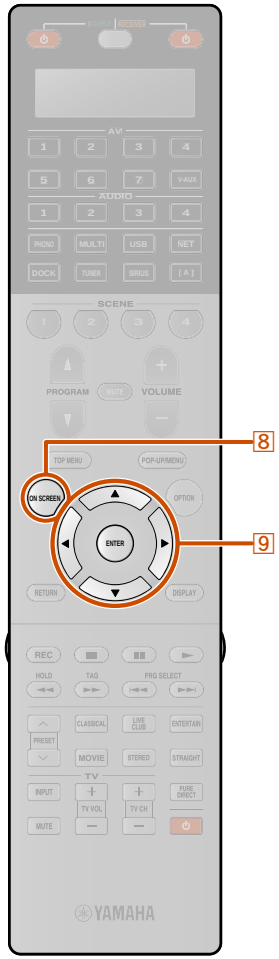
Language

Select the language used for display of menus and messages. 3

Choices: English (English), 日本語 (Japanese), Français (French), Deutsch (German), Español (Spanish), Русский (Russian)

For details on selecting a language, refer to “Language selection” (☞p. 2).

1 : This unit outputs 0 V when selecting “Low.”
2 : This unit outputs 12 V when selecting “High.”
3 : Content window information is displayed in the language in which that information was released.

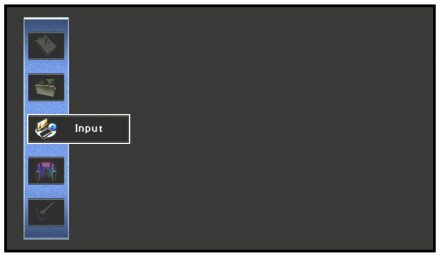


Confirming information of this unit (Information menu)

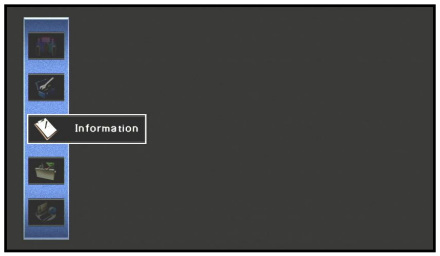
A variety of information for this unit can be displayed.

Selecting information

1 **Press 8ON SCREEN.**



2 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Information” and press 9ENTER.**



3 **Use 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ to select an Information menu and press 9ENTER.**

Audio Signal information

Displays information on the current audio signal.

Format	Signal format. When this unit is unable to detect a digital signal, it automatically switches to analog input.
Sampling	The number of samples taken per second from a continuous signal to make a discrete signal.
Channel	The number of source channels in the input signal (front/surround/LFE). For example, a multi-channel soundtrack with 3 front channels, 2 surround channels and LFE is displayed as “3/2/0.1”.
Bitrate	The number of bits passing a given point per second.
Dialogue	The dialogue normalization level preset to the current input bitstream signal.

- “---” is displayed when this unit cannot display the corresponding information.
- Some high-definition audio bitstream contents may not include the discrete surround back left and right channel signals, but are encoded at a sampling rate of 192 kHz.
- Even when direct bitstream output settings are applied, some players convert the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus bitstreams to the Dolby Digital bitstreams, while converting DTS-HD Master Audio or DTS-HD High Resolution Audio bitstreams to DTS bitstreams.

Video Signal information

Displays information on the current video signal.

HDMI Signal	Source video signal type and video signal output to this unit’s HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks.
HDMI Resolution	Input signal (analog or HDMI) and output signal (HDMI) resolution.
Analog Resolution	Resolution of the source video signal and the analog video signal output to this unit’s MONITOR OUT jacks.
HDMI Error	Error message for HDMI sources or connected HDMI devices (☞p. 150). This information is displayed only when the error come up.

HDMI Monitor information

Displays information on the TV screen connected to this unit’s HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks.

Interface	Displays information on the current connection interface.
Video Resolution	Displays the frequency for each video resolution of the TV currently connected.

Network information

Displays information on the network status. Refer to “Adjusting this unit’s network parameters” (☞p. 121) for details on setting the network status.

IP Address / Subnet Mask / Default Gateway	Displays the status of the current IP address assigned to this unit.
DNS Server (P) / DNS Server (S)	Displays the IP address of the primary and secondary DNS (Domain Name System) servers.
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address filter set to this unit.
Status	Displays the network status of this unit.

System information

Displays information on the current settings of the advanced setup.

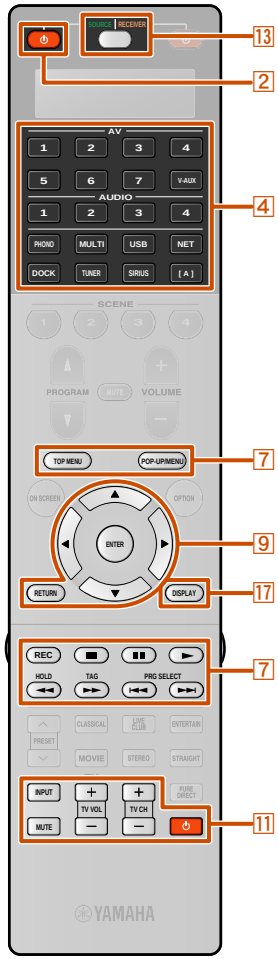
Remote ID	Displays the Remote ID set to this unit.
TV Format	Displays the TV format set to this unit.
Speaker Impedance	Displays the speaker impedance set to this unit.
System ID	Displays the system ID of this unit.
Firmware Version	Displays the current version of the firmware installed to this unit.

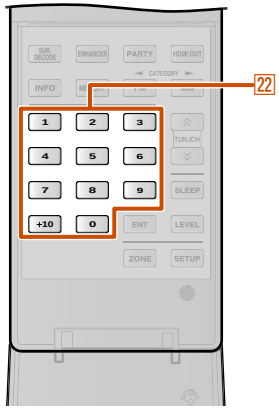
When detecting the latest firmware over a network:
- exclamation point appears on the Information menu icon
- message indicating that the latest firmware is released appears in the System information

In this case, update the latest firmware by using “NETWORK” of “FIRM UPDATE” in Advanced Setup menu.

Zone information

Displays information on the currently selected input and the volume of Zone2 or Zone3.

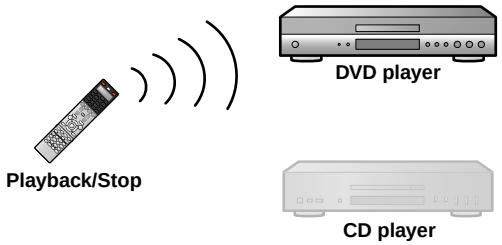




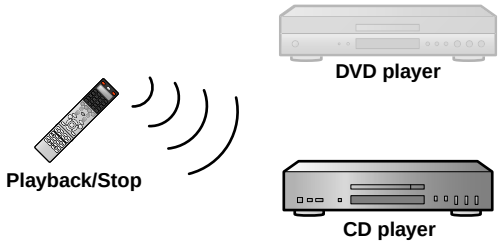
Controlling the remote control to operate various functions

You can operate an external component such as TV and DVD player with the remote control of this unit by setting the code for external component (remote control code). The remote control code can be set for each input source. Individual setting allows you to switch external components seamlessly depending on the selected input source.

Selecting input source connected to DVD player



Selecting input source connected to CD player



13**SOURCE/RECEIVER** glows orange when operation of this unit is enabled.
13**SOURCE/RECEIVER** glows green when operation of an external component is enabled.

Keys connecting external components

The remote control keys for controlling external components are available only when the external components have corresponding control keys.

2SOURCE ⏻
Switches an external component on and off.

7External component operation keys
Functions as a recording or playback key of an external component, or a menu display key.

9Cursor, 9ENTER, 9RETURN
Operates the menus of external components.

11TV control keys 1

11INPUT	Switches video inputs of TV.
11MUTE	Mutes TV volume temporarily.
11TV VOL +/-	Controls the volume of TV.
11TV CH +/-	Switches TV channels.
11⏻	Turns on and off TV.

17DISPLAY
Switches an external component display.

22Numeric keys
Functions as numeric keys of an external component.

1 : When remote control codes for external components are registered with 4Input selector or 11⏻ (11TV control keys), the following operations are possible.
- When a TV remote control code is registered with the 4Input selector, 7TOP MENU, 7POP-UP/MENU, 9Cursor, 17DISPLAY and 22Numeric keys and 11TV control keys can be used to control the TV selected with 4Input selector.
- When a remote control code for a device other than a TV is registered with 4Input selector, keys including the 9Cursor, 7TOP MENU, 7POP-UP/MENU, 17DISPLAY and 22Numeric keys can be used to control external components, and the 11TV control keys can be used to control the TV registered with 11⏻.
- When a TV remote control code is registered with 11⏻, only 11TV control keys can be used to control the TV.

Customizing the remote control

Use the setup mode of the remote control to customize the remote control.

1 Open the cover of the remote control and press 28SETUP.

"SETUP" appears in the display window on the remote control.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select the desired setup mode.

Pressing 13SOURCE/RECEIVER repeatedly can also change the setup mode.

Setup mode	Descriptions	Page
SETUP	Top setup mode menu.	—
LEARN	Learning mode. Use this feature to program codes from other remote controls.	132
PRESET	Preset mode. Use this feature to change the remote control code of each control area.	131
RENAME	Renaming mode. Use this feature to change the name of each control area.	134
MACRO	Macro programming mode. Use this feature to set the macro program.	135
CLEAR	Clearing mode. Use this feature to clear the configurations of this unit.	136
ERASE	Erase mode. Use this feature to erase the learned functions of each button.	137
EX-IR	Extended IR code mode. This feature is for the authorized custom installers only.	—

3 After the configurations, press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.

NOTE
If no operation is performed for 30 seconds, this unit automatically exits from the setup menu.

Setting remote control codes

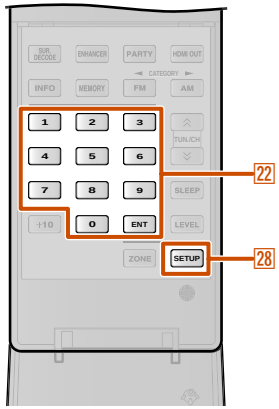
Default remote control code settings

The following remote control codes are assigned to input sources at factory default settings. For a complete list of available remote control codes, refer to "Remote Control Code Search" in the CD-ROM.

Control area	Category	Manufacturer	Remote control code
AV1	Blu-ray player/ recorder	Yamaha	2064
AV2	—	—	—
AV3	—	—	—
AV4	—	—	—
AV5	—	—	—
AV6	—	—	—
AV7	—	—	—
V-AUX	—	—	—
AUDIO1	—	—	—
AUDIO2	CD player	Yamaha	5095
AUDIO3	—	—	—
AUDIO4	—	—	—
PHONO	—	—	—
MULTI	—	—	—
USB	—	—	—
NET	—	—	—
DOCK	—	—	—
TUNER	—	—	—
SIRIUS	—	—	—
[A] 1	—	—	—

NOTES
- You may not be able to operate your Yamaha component even if a Yamaha remote control code is preset as listed above.
  In this case, try setting another Yamaha remote control code.
- If this unit's remote control is unable to control other components with specification of the corresponding remote control code, it can be programmed using other remote controls (☞p. 132).

1 : Use [A] for external component operations only. Set these keys to remote control codes if you want to perform external component operations without linking to input source selection of this unit. For example, it may be convenient to assign remote control codes for devices such as TVs.



Registering remote control codes for external component operations

The following section describes how to register remote control code using an example of the registration of the remote control codes of a Yamaha BD player connected to AV2 jack.

- Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Settings will be automatically stopped if more than 30 seconds passes since the last operation. To reset, repeat from step 2.
- Remote control code of an external component cannot be set from the name or model number of a unit. Use "Remote Control Code Search" in the CD-ROM to search the available remote control codes from the category or manufacturer of external components.
- If multiple remote control codes exist, first set the first code in the list, if it does not work then try the other codes.

1 Use "Remote Control Code Search" in the CD-ROM to search the available remote control codes from the category or manufacturer of external components.

"2064" can be used for a Yamaha BD player.

2 Press 28SETUP.

"SETUP" appears in the display window on the remote control.

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "PRESET" and press 9ENTER. 2

The remote control enters the preset mode. "PRESET" and name of the currently selected control area appears in the display window alternately.

4 Press 4AV2 to switch the input source to AV2. 1

Perform the following steps to register the selected input source here to the remote control code.

5 Press 9ENTER.

The current code setting appears.

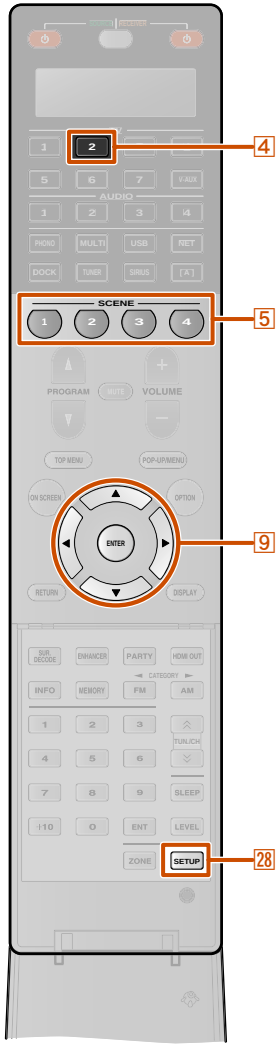
6 Enter a remote control code "2064" using 22Numeric keys.

A remote control code can be entered using 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷.

Continues to the next page

1 : To control a TV independently from the input source using the 11TV control keys, press 11⏻ in step 4 and enter the remote control code for the TV. The 11TV control keys can be used to control the TV regardless of the selected input source.

2 : 22ENT can also be used for remote control settings as well as 9ENTER.



7 **Press 9ENTER to set the number.**

"OK" appears in the display window if setting was successful.

"NG" appears in the display window if the setting was unsuccessful. In this case, start over from step 3.

If you continuously want to set up another code for another control area, repeat steps 4 to 7.

8 **Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.**

If operation is not possible and the manufacturer of your component has more than one code, try each of them until you find the correct one.

NOTES

- "ERROR" appears in the display window on the remote control if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or when you press more than one button simultaneously.
- The supplied remote control does not contain all possible codes for commercially available audio and video components (including Yamaha components). If operation is not possible with any of the remote control codes, program the new remote control function using the learning feature (☞p. 132) or use the remote control supplied with the component.
- Functions programmed using the learning mode take priority over remote control code functions.

Switching between BD player linked to scene selections

Press 5SCENE and at the same time press 4AV2 and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.

"OK" appears in the display window if setting was successful.

Then you can operate the external components by switching the input source to AV2, or selecting AV2 in the registered scene.

Same steps for operating other external components, press 5SCENE and at the same time press the input source key selected in step 3 and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.

Programming from other remote controls

The remote control of this unit can receive remote control signals from other remote controls and learn the remote control operation. If a key on the remote control does not work after being assigned with an external component's function or if the remote control code for that function is not provided, use this learning feature to make the function operable with the remote control.

- Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Settings will be automatically stopped if more than 30 seconds passes since the last operation. To reset, repeat from step 1.
- If the remote control of the external component uses infrared rays, this remote control can learn most of its functions. The remote control may not recognize special or consecutive signals.
- The keys may not operate the assigned functions depending on operating conditions of this unit.

1 **Press 28SETUP.**

"SETUP" appears in the display window.

2 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "LEARN" and press 9ENTER.**

Continues to the next page

3 Select the operation mode (SOURCE, RECEIVER or TV mode) for which functions will be assigned to remote control keys.

- Selecting the SOURCE mode
  Press 4**Input selector** to enter SOURCE mode.
  In this mode, remote control functions for the selected input source can be assigned to this unit's remote control.
- RECEIVER mode
  Press 12**RECEIVER** ⏻ to enter RECEIVER mode.
  In this mode, remote control functions for external amplifier can be assigned to this unit's remote control.

NOTE
When remote control functions are assigned for this mode, it may be impossible to operate this unit using the remote control.

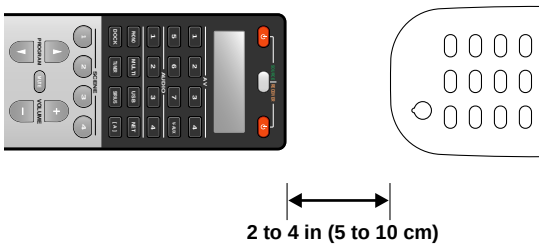
- TV mode
  Press 11⏻ to enter TV mode.
  In this mode, remote control functions for a TV can be assigned to this unit's remote control.

Remote control functions can be assigned to this unit's remote control keys as follows.

Mode	Keys
SOURCE	Keys for operating external components such as 2**SOURCE** ⏻, 7**External component operation keys** and 9**Cursor** △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷.
RECEIVER	Keys for operating this unit such as 7**External component operation keys**, 9**Cursor** △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷ and 22**Numeric keys**.
TV ♛1	11**TV control keys**

4 Place this remote control about 2 to 4 in (5 to 10 cm) apart from the remote control of the external component on a flat surface so that their infrared transmitters are aimed at each other and then press 9ENTER.

"PRES KEY" appears in the display window.

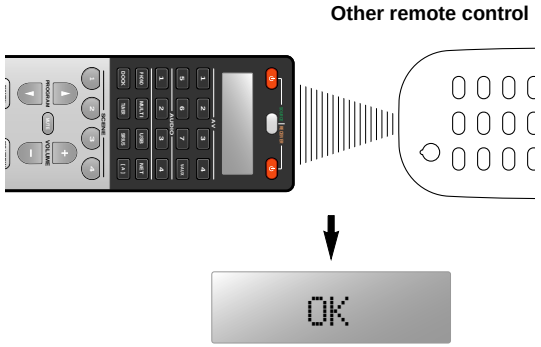


5 Press a key to which you want to assign the function.

"START" appears in the display window.

6 Press and hold the key you want to program on the other remote control until "OK" appears in the display window.

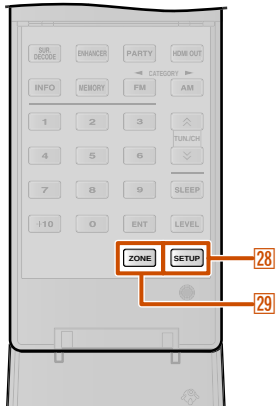
"NG" appears in the display window if learning was unsuccessful. In this case, start over from step 3.



When you want to program another function, repeat steps 3 to 6.

Continues to the next page

♛1 : Once 11**TV control keys** are set in TV mode, the TV can always be controlled.
When 11**TV control keys** are set in SOURCE mode, the TV specified in SOURCE mode can be controlled when the input source is selected.



7 **Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.**

NOTES

- "ERROR" appears in the display window on the remote control if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or when you press more than one button simultaneously.
- This remote control can learn approximately 200 functions. However, depending on the signals learned, "FULL" may appear in the display before you program 200 functions. In this case, clear unnecessary programmed functions to make room for further learning (☞p. 137).
- Learning may not be possible in the following cases:
  - when the batteries in the remote control for this unit or other components are weak.
  - when the remote control is exposed to direct sunlight.
  - when the function to be programmed is continuous or uncommon.

Changing source names in the display window

The name of the control area (input source) that appears in the display window on the remote control can be changed.

1 **Press 28SETUP.**

"SETUP" appears in the display window.

2 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "RENAME" and press 9ENTER.**

3 **Press 4Input selector or 5SCENE to select the desired control area.**

4 **Edit the name of the control area.**

To locate the position to edit, press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷.
To select a character, press 9Cursor △ / ▽.

Press 9Cursor △ to change the character in the following order, or press 9Cursor ▽ to go in the reverse order: A to Z, a to z, 0 to 9, space, symbols (-, +, /, :).

5 **Press 9ENTER to set the new name.**

"OK" appears in the display window on the remote control if renaming was successful.

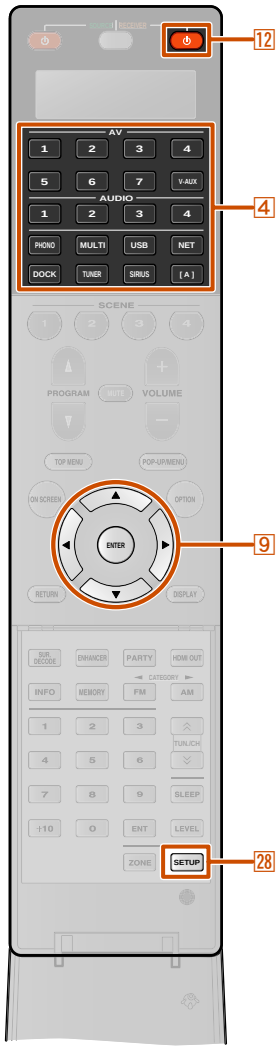
When you want to rename the another control area, press 4Input selector to select the desired control area and then press 9ENTER and then carry out the operations of steps 4 to 5.

- Press 12RECEIVER ⏻ to rename the control area for the receiver.
- Press 11⏻ to rename the control area for the TV monitor.
- Press 5SCENE key to rename the control area for the scenes. When rename the control area for the scenes of each zone, press 29ZONE to select a zone before step 1.

6 **Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.**

NOTE

"ERROR" appears in the display window on the remote control if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or when you press more than one button simultaneously.



Macro programming features

The macro programming feature makes it possible to perform a series of operations with the press of a single button. For example, when you want to play a CD, normally you would turn on the components, select the CD input, and press the play button to start playback. The macro programming feature lets you perform all of these operations simply by pressing the macro button. The buttons listed as macro buttons below are factory set with macro programs. You can also program your own macros.

Pressing macro	To automatically transmit these signals		
	First	Second	
RECEIVER ⏻	Turns on this unit	—	
AV1-7		Switches the input source to:	AV1-7
V-AUX			V-AUX
AUDIO1-4			AUDIO1-4
PHONO			PHONO
MULTI			MULTI
USB			USB
NET			NET
DOCK			DOCK
TUNER			TUNER
SIRIUS			SIRIUS
[A]		—	

Recalling programmed macro operations

1 Press 28SETUP.

"SETUP" appears in the display window.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "MACRO" and press 9ENTER.

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "ON" and press 9ENTER.

Press a macro button (12RECEIVER ⏻ or 4Input selector) to perform the macro operation assigned to the button.

To exit the macro operation mode, press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select "OFF" and press 9ENTER.

NOTES

- While the remote control is running a macro program (the transmission indicator flashes), it does not accept any other operation.
- Continue to aim the remote control at the component the macro is operating until the macro operation is complete.

Programing macro operations

You can program your own macro to transmit several remote control commands in sequence at the press of a button. Be sure to set up remote control codes or perform learning operations before programming the macro.

NOTE

We do not recommend that you program continuous operations (for example, volume control) in a macro.

1 Press 28SETUP.

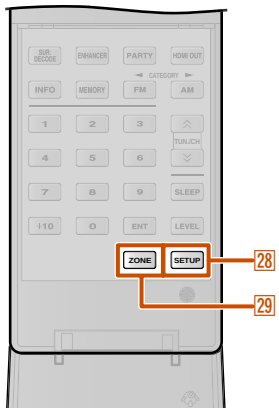
"SETUP" appears in the display window.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "MACRO" and press 9ENTER.

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "EDIT" and press 9ENTER.

4 Press the macro button (12RECEIVER ⏻ or 4Input selector) that you want to assign the macro operations to.

Continues to the next page



5 Press the buttons for the functions you want to include in the macro operation in sequence.

Press 13SOURCE/RECEIVER to switch the controlled component.

Example

Set the input source to AV2 → Turn on the DVD player → Turn on the video monitor
Step 1 (“MACRO1”): Press 4AV2.
Step 2 (“MACRO2”): Press 13SOURCE/RECEIVER repeatedly to select the controlled component until MACRO2 and AV2 alternately appear in the display. And then, press 2SOURCE ⏻.
Step 3 (“MACRO3”): Press 11⏻.

6 Press 9ENTER for 3 seconds or longer to confirm the program.

You can set up to 10 steps (10 functions). After you have set 10 steps, “FULL” appears.

7 Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.

NOTE

“ERROR” appears in the display window if you press more than one button simultaneously.

Clearing configurations

Clear all changes made in each function set, such as learned functions, macros, renamed control area names and setup remote control ID.

Clearing function sets

1 Press 28SETUP.

“SETUP” appears in the display window.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select “CLEAR” and press 9ENTER.

3 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select the operations that you want to and press 9ENTER.

Operations assigned to the following modes can be cleared.

Operation modes
LEARN, PRESET, RENAME, MACRO, RESET

4 Press 4Input selector, 12RECEIVER ⏻, or 11⏻ to select the desired clear mode. 1

- “All” mode is set at first. When no mode is selected in this step, settings of all modes are cleared.
- The other keys are used for the following operation modes.
  - “RENAME”: 5SCENE key 2
  - “MACRO”: Macro button (12RECEIVER ⏻ or 4Input selector)

5 Press and hold 9ENTER for about 3 seconds.

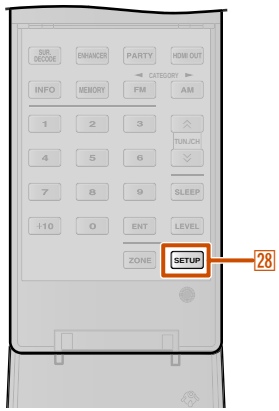
When the clearing is successful, “OK” appears in the display window.

NOTES

- “NG” appears in the display window if clearing was unsuccessful.
- “ERROR” appears in the display window if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or if you press more than one button simultaneously.

6 Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup mode.

1 : “RESET” initializes the settings of all modes. When selecting “RESET” in step 2, you cannot select the clear mode in step 4.
2 : To clear the rename of each zone, press 29ZONE to select the desired zone before step 1.



Clearing the function learned for each key

1 **Press 28SETUP.**

"SETUP" appears in the display window.

2 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "ERASE" and press 9ENTER.**

3 **Press 4Input selector, 12RECEIVER ⏻ or 11⏻ to select the mode for which remote control key operation will be cleared.**

4 **Press 9ENTER.**

"PRES KEY" appears in the display window.

5 **Press and hold the button you want to clear for about 3 seconds.**

If clearing is successful, "OK" appears in the display window.

- To continue resetting other keys, repeat step 3 to 5.
- Once you clear a learned function, the button reverts to the factory setting (or to the manufacturer setting if you have set remote control codes).

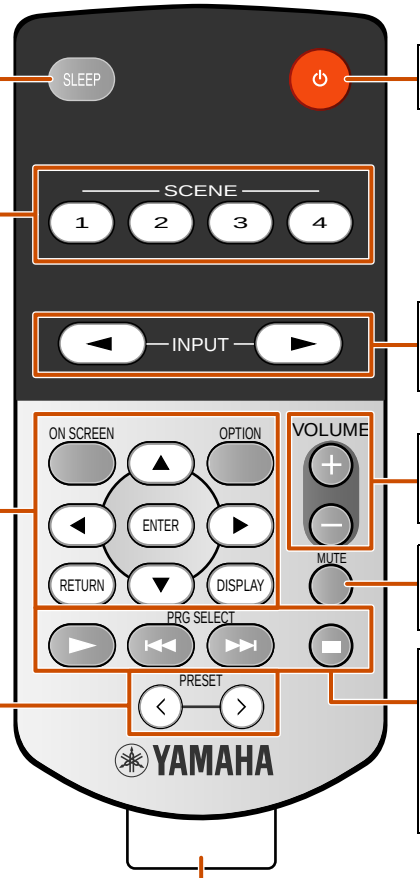
6 **Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.**

NOTES

- "NG" appears in the display window on the remote control if clearing was unsuccessful.
- "ERROR" appears in the display window if you press more than one button simultaneously.

Simplified remote control

Use the supplied simplified remote control to make basic controls of this unit.



SLEEP
Switches this unit to standby mode automatically after a specified period of time has elapsed (sleep timer) (☞p. 13).

SCENE
Switch the input source and the sound program with a single button (☞p. 50).

These buttons function as well as the following identical buttons on the main remote control.

- 8 ON SCREEN
- 9 Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷
- 9 ENTER
- 9 RETURN
- 16 OPTION
- 17 DISPLAY

PRESET
Selects a preset station (☞p. 64, p. 73).

⏻ (Power)
Turns on or off this unit.

INPUT ◁ / ▷
Select the input source (☞p. 48). ♛1

VOLUME +/-
Adjust the volume level (☞p. 48).

MUTE
Mutes the audio output (☞p. 48).

Input source operation keys
Operate song playback, stop and skip functions for USB or DOCK, or select an audio program for HD Radio.

Remove the insulation sheet before using the remote control.

Setting the controlling zone of the simplified remote control

Use this feature to set the controlling zone (☞p. 149) and remote control ID (☞p. 140) of the simplified remote control.

Setting the remote control ID

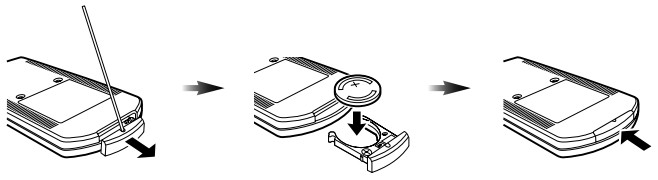
- ID1: Press and hold ◁ (left cursor) and 1 for 3 seconds.
- ID2: Press and hold ◁ (left cursor) and 2 for 3 seconds.

Setting the controlling zone

- Main zone: Press and hold ▷ (right cursor) and 1 for 3 seconds.
- Zone2: Press and hold ▷ (right cursor) and 2 for 3 seconds.
- Zone3: Press and hold ▷ (right cursor) and 3 for 3 seconds.

Replacing the battery in the simplified remote control

Change the battery when the operation range of the simplified remote control decreases.



Use a straight pin to remove the cover. → **Replace the battery with a new CR2025 battery.** → **Close the cover.**

NOTES

- Insert the battery according to the polarity markings (+ and -).
- If the batteries run out, immediately remove them from the simplified remote control to prevent an explosion or acid leak.
- If a battery starts leaking, dispose of it immediately. Be careful not to let the leaking battery acid touch your skin or clothing.
- Before inserting new batteries, wipe the compartment clean.
- Dispose of batteries according to your regional regulations.

♛1 : To select the detailed input for USB or NET (PC, NET RADIO, Rhapsody, or SIRIUS IR), use PRESET or SCENE function to select the desired one.

Extended functionality that can be configured as needed (Advanced Setup menu)

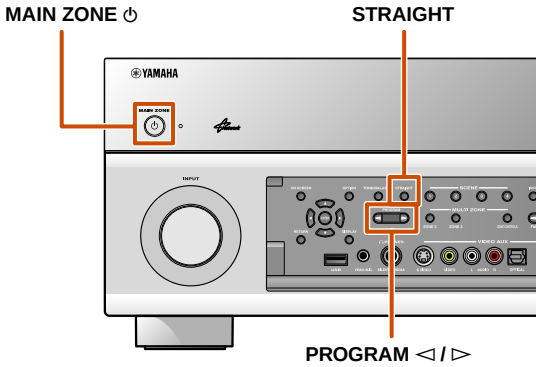
The Advanced Setup menu can be used for unit initialization and other useful extended functions. The Advanced Setup menu can be operated as follows.

Displaying/Setting the Advanced Setup menu

1 Switch this unit to the standby mode.

2 Press MAIN ZONE ⏻ while pressing and holding STRAIGHT on the front panel.

Release STRAIGHT when “ADVANCED SETUP” is displayed on the front panel display.
After a few seconds, the top menu items are displayed.



3 Press PROGRAM ◁ / ▷ repeatedly to select the item to be set from the following items.

In the Advanced Setup menu, you can set the following settings.

SPEAKER IMP.	Sets the impedance of speakers.
REMOTE SENSOR	Activate or deactivate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor.
REMOTE CON AMP	Changes the remote control ID of a receiver.
SIRIUS PIN	Resets the parental lock code for the SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner.
TV FORMAT	Specifies the TV’s color encoding format.
MONITOR CHECK	Removes the up-scaling limitation on HDMI video output.
RECOV./BACKUP	Save and restore the settings of this unit.
INITIALIZE	Initializes various settings for this unit.
FIRM UPDATE	Update the firmware of this unit.
VERSION	Check the version of firmware currently installed on this unit.

4 Press STRAIGHT repeatedly to select the value you want to change.

5 Switch this unit to the standby mode, and then switch it on again.

The settings become effective and the unit is powered on.

Setting the impedance of speakers

Changes the unit settings depending on the impedance of the speakers connected. 💡1

6ΩMIN	Select the impedance when 6 Ω speakers are connected.
8ΩMIN **(Default)**	Select the impedance when speakers above 8 Ω are connected.

Remote sensor

Activate or deactivate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor on the front panel of this unit.

ON **(Default)**	Activate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor
OFF	Deactivate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor

“ON” is recommended in most cases.

💡1 : For detailed procedures of speaker impedance settings, refer to “Changing speaker impedance” (☞p. 21).

Avoiding crossing remote control signals when using multiple Yamaha receivers

The remote control of the unit can only receive signals from a receiver which has an identical ID (remote control ID). When using multiple Yamaha AV receivers, you can set each remote control with a unique remote control ID for its corresponding receiver.
On the contrary, if you are setting the same remote control ID for all receivers, you can use one remote control to operate 2 receivers.

ID1 **(Default)**	Receives the remote control signals set in ID1.
ID2	Receives the remote control signals set in ID2.

ID1 is set for both remote control and receiver by default. To avoid crossing remote control, change the remote control ID for both remote control and receiver.

■ To change the remote control ID

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Settings will be automatically stopped if more than 30 seconds passes since the last operation. To reset, repeat from step 1.

1 Press 28SETUP.

2 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "PRESET" and press 9ENTER.

3 Press 12RECEIVER ⏻ and press 9ENTER.

4 Enter the desired remote control ID code.

To switch to ID1:
Enter "5019" using 22Numeric keys or 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷.

To switch to ID2:
Enter "5020" using 22Numeric keys or 9Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷.

5 Press 9ENTER to set the number.

"OK" appears in the display window if setting was successful.

"NG" appears in the display window if the setting was unsuccessful. In this case, start over from step 4.

6 Press 28SETUP again to exit from the setup menu.

Returns to ID1 after the remote control code is initialized (☞p. 136).

Resetting the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ parental lock code

Reset the SIRIUS Satellite Radio parental lock code to the factory default setting. If you forget the code, it can be reset.

RESET	Resets the code to the factory default setting.
CANCEL **(Default)**	Cancels resetting of the parental lock code.

Changing TV format

Change the color encoding format of OSD to PAL or NTSC (default), to match the format used by the TV connected via the HDMI OUT 1-2 or VIDEO (MONITOR OUT) jack.

Removing HDMI video output up-scaling limits

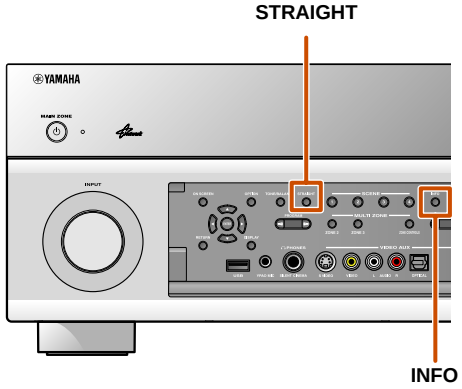
Removes the up-scaling limitation on video resolution when this unit and a TV are connected via HDMI jacks.
If a resolution supported by the monitor cannot be detected when configuring the up-scaling settings, this setting will remove the output limitation.

YES **(Default)**	Video output signals of a resolution not supported by the TV will not be transmitted.
SKIP	This unit ignores the TV's support capability and transmits input video signals to the TV.

Recovery and backup of the system settings

Save and restore the settings of this unit.

1 Press STRAIGHT repeatedly to select "BACKUP" or "RECOVERY" and press INFO on the front panel.



RECOVERY	Restores settings for this unit that have been saved.
BACKUP	Saves the current settings of this unit.

2 Press INFO to execute the "BACKUP" or "RECOVERY." 1

- The settings except the system settings of this unit such as HD Radio tag or the account informations on Rhapsody and SIRIUS Internet Radio cannot be saved.
- "RECOVERY" cannot be selected if settings have not be previously saved.

Initializing various settings for this unit

Initializes various settings stored in this unit and sets it back to default.
Select the items to be initialized from the following.

DSP PARAM	Initializes all parameters for the sound programs.
VIDEO	Resets video conversion settings (resolution/aspect ratio) in the Setup menu.
NETWORK	Resets the settings of network such as IP address or the account of vTuner.
ALL	Resets this unit to default factory settings.
CANCEL **(Default)**	Does not initialize.

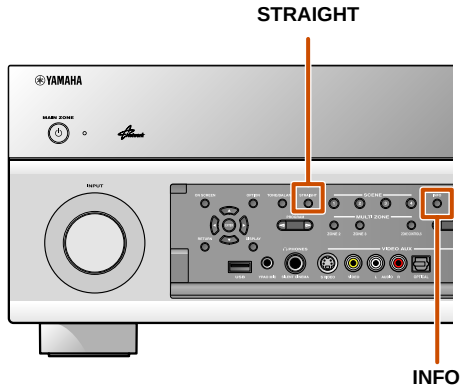
When an option other than CANCEL is selected, the applicable default settings will be restored when the unit switches to standby mode.

1 : After performing "RECOVERY," turn off this unit.

Firmware update

Update the firmware of this unit. For details on updating the firmware, refer to information supplied with updates.
When this unit detects the latest firmware over a network, the message indicating that the firmware is released is displayed in the System information (☞p. 128).

1 Press STRAIGHT repeatedly to select “USB” or “NETWORK.”



USB **(Default)**	Updates the firmware of this unit using a USB flash drive.
NETWORK	Updates the firmware of this unit over a network.

2 Press INFO to start update with the selected option.

- Do not use this feature unless the firmware must be updated.
- Be sure to read the information supplied with updates before updating firmware.

Firmware version

Check the version of firmware currently installed on this unit.

About the latest firmware

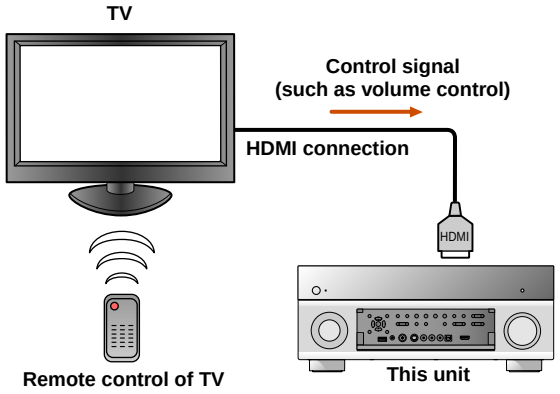
When installing the latest firmware, the new functions or fix of failure may be served.

- The latest firmware can be downloaded from our website.
- While displaying the ON SCREEN menu or “System” from Information menu, the information on the latest firmware is displayed via a network.

Using the HDMI Control function

This unit supports the HDMI Control function, which allows you to operate external components via HDMI. If devices that support HDMI Control (e.g., Panasonic VIERA Link-compatible TVs, DVD/Blu-ray Disc players, etc.) are connected ♛1, remote controls for those devices can be used to perform the following operations:

- Power synchronization (on/standby)
- Volume control, including Mute
- Changing the volume of the audio output signal device (either the TV or this unit)



NOTE

The following is an example of how to connect this unit, a TV, and a DVD/BD player. Follow the instructions in your TV and DVD/BD player manuals, as well as the ones written below.

- Set the TV's HDMI Control function to "On"
- Follow the AV amplifier connection instructions, and connect this unit to the TV

1 Connect the TV that supports the HDMI Control function to this unit's HDMI output jack.

2 Connect the DVD/BD player that supports the HDMI Control function to this unit's HDMI input jack.

3 Turn on the TV and this unit.

Refer to the TV's instruction manual on how to operate external components.

4 Set the TV and this unit's HDMI Control function to "On."

This unit	Confirm that "HDMI Control" is set to "On" (☞p. 119) and select the HDMI OUT jack connected to the TV in "Control Select" (☞p. 119). ♛2
TV and DVD/BD player	Check the instruction manuals for those devices.

5 Turn the TV off.

Other synchronized HDMI Control devices are turned off with the TV. If they are not synchronized, unplug the power cable of the TV.

6 Turn the TV on.

Confirm that this unit has turned on in conjunction with the TV. If it is still off, turn it on manually.

7 Change the TV's input setting to the input jack that is connected to this unit (e.g., AV1).

8 If DVD/BD player that supports the HDMI Control function are connected to this unit, turn them on.

This unit	Confirm that the input source for the DVD/BD players has been selected. If a different input source has been selected, change it manually.
TV and DVD/BD player	Confirm that the video signal from the player is being properly received by the TV.

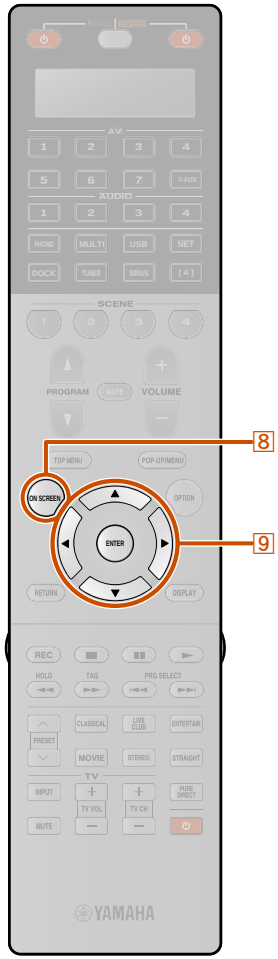
Operations 1-8 will not be required more than twice. However, perform operations 1-8 again when switching the HDMI OUT jack using Control Select.

9 Confirm that this unit is properly synchronized with the TV through the following operations by using the TV remote control.

- Power On/Off
- Volume Control
- Switching between audio output devices

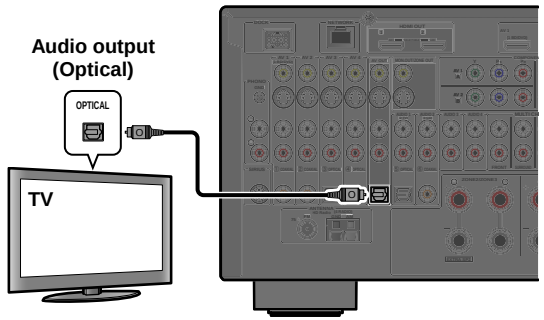
If this unit is not synchronized to the TV's power operations, check that the HDMI Control function is set to "On" for both devices.
If they will not properly synchronize, unplugging and re-plugging the power cable of this unit and the TV may solve the problem.

♛1 : We recommend that you use TVs and DVD/BD players from the same manufacturer whenever possible.
♛2 : The default setting for the HDMI Control function is "Off."



Switching the input source on this unit automatically when listening to TV audio

When the HDMI Control (☞p. 143) is operating properly, the input source of this unit is automatically changed to match operations carried out on the TV. When the TV is connected with HDMI OUT 1, the default input jack is AUDIO1. If the AUDIO1 optical digital jack is connected to the TV's audio output jack, then you can enjoy TV sound through this unit right away.



When the TV is connected with HDMI OUT 2, the default input jack is AUDIO3. If the AUDIO3 optical digital jack is connected to the TV's audio output jack, then you can enjoy TV sound through this unit right away.

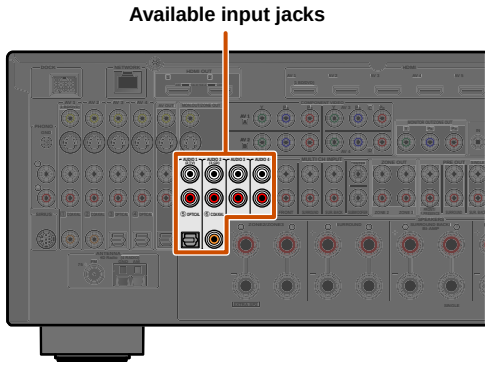
To use other jacks to input audio signals from TV, carry out the following procedure.

1 Connect this unit and the TV with an HDMI cable.

2 Connect TV's audio output to this unit.

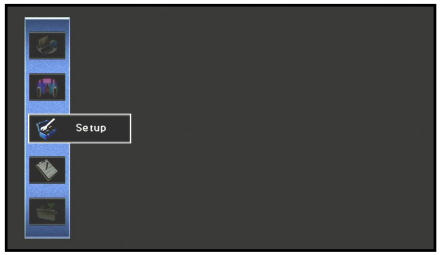
The input jacks listed below are available to input TV's audio signals. Use the same jack type as used for the TV.

TV output jack	Input jack
Optical digital audio output	AUDIO1
Coaxial digital audio output	AUDIO2
Analog stereo output	AUDIO1, AUDIO2, AUDIO3, or AUDIO4



3 Press 8ON SCREEN. 1

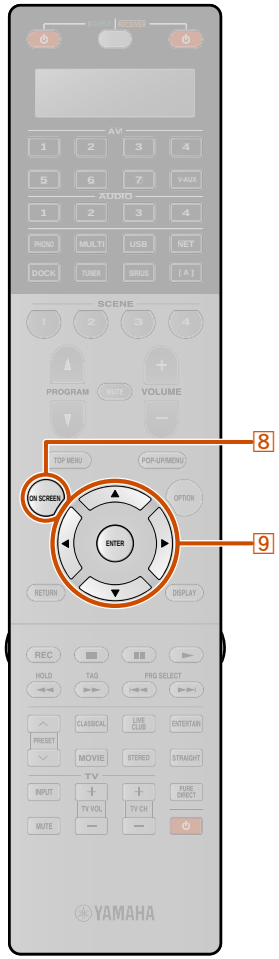
4 Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select "Setup" and press 9ENTER.



5 Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ repeatedly to select "HDMI" and press 9ENTER.

Continues to the next page

1 : Refer to the "Setting various functions (Setup menu)" (☞p. 110) for details on the Setup menu.



6 **Make sure that “HDMI Control” is “On”**

When “HDMI Control” is set to “Off,” press 9ENTER and 9Cursor △ / ▽ to set to “On.”

7 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Control Select” and press 9ENTER.**

8 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the HDMI OUT jack connected to the TV and press 9ENTER.**

9 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “TV Audio Input” and press 9ENTER.**

10 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the input jack connected in step 2.**

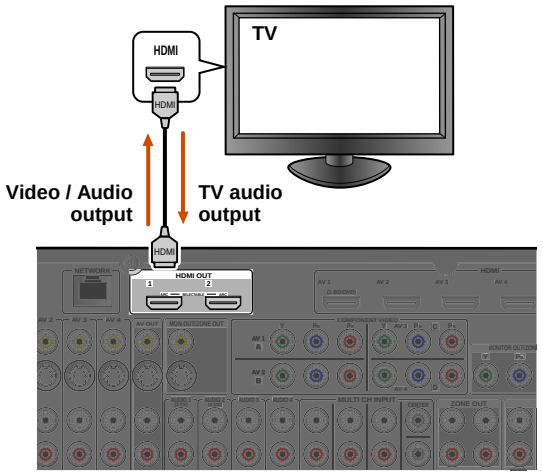
11 **Press 8ON SCREEN when you have finished changing the settings.**

If the TV hereafter transmits audio output signals, this unit will automatically switch to the input source chosen in step 10.

Single HDMI cable input to TV audio with Audio Return Channel function

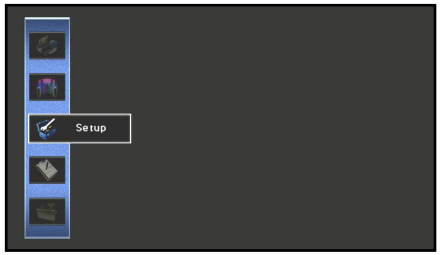
When using a TV that supports HDMI functions and Audio Return Channel function, audio/video output from this unit to the TV or audio output from the TV to this unit can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable (Audio Return Channel function). Audio signals transmitted from the TV to this unit can be assigned to any input source.

1 **Connect this unit and the TV with an HDMI cable.**



2 **Press 8ON SCREEN. 1**

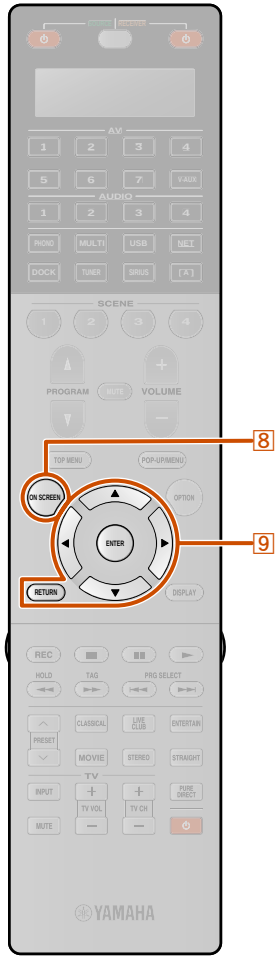
3 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ repeatedly to select “Setup” and press 9ENTER.**



4 **Press 9Cursor ◁ / ▷ repeatedly to select “HDMI” and press 9ENTER.**

Continues to the next page

1 : Refer to the “Setting various functions (Setup menu)” (☞p. 110) for details on the Setup menu.



5 **Make sure that “HDMI Control” is “On.”**

When “HDMI Control” is set to “Off,” press 9ENTER and 9Cursor △ / ▽ to set to “On.”

6 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “Control Select” and press 9ENTER.**

7 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the HDMI OUT jack connected to the TV and press 9ENTER.**

8 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “TV Audio Input” and press 9ENTER.**

9 **Use 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select the input source to which the HDMI audio signals will be assigned, and press 9RETURN.**

10 **Press 9Cursor △ / ▽ to select “ARC (Audio Return Channel)” and press 9ENTER.** 1

11 **Press 9Cursor ▽ to select “On.”**

The Audio Return Channel function will turn on.

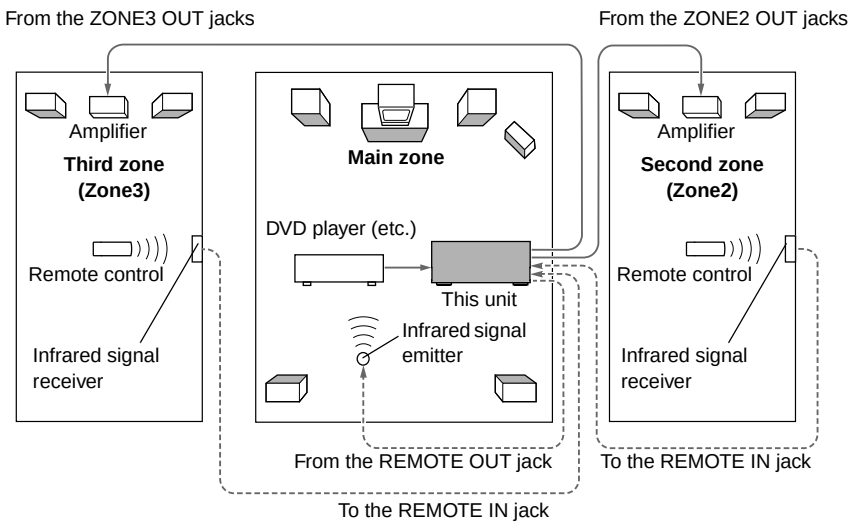
12 **Press 8ON SCREEN to close the Setup menu.**

If the TV hereafter transmits audio output signals, this unit will automatically switch to the input source chosen in step 9.

1 : While the Audio Return Channel function is on, the jack selected for the input source cannot be used.

Enjoying the contents in another room

This unit allows you to configure a multi-zone audio system. The multi-zone feature allows you to set this unit to reproduce separate input sources in the main zone and the second zone (Zone2) and third zone (Zone3). You can control this unit from the second zone or third zone using the supplied remote control.



Only analog signal can be sent to Zone2 or Zone3. If you want to output sound from Zone2 or Zone3, connect an external component to AV1-4, AUDIO1-4 or V-AUX by analog connection. For example, if you want to output sound from an HDMI DVD player in Zone2, you must connect the component to this unit by both HDMI and analog connections.

Connecting Zone2 or Zone3

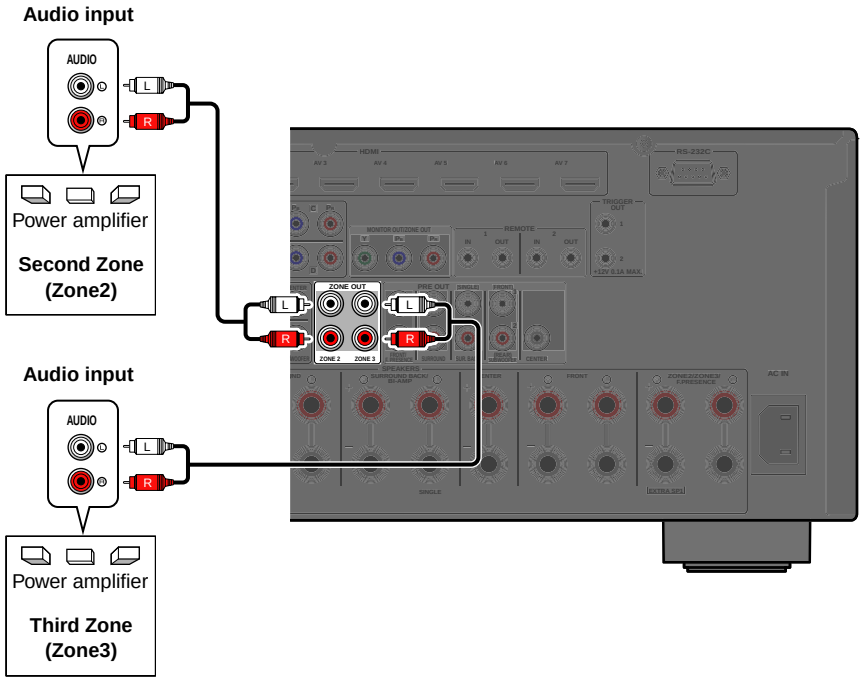
You need the following additional equipment to use the multi-zone functions of this unit:

- An infrared signal receiver in the second zone and/or third zone.
- An infrared signal emitter in the main zone. This emitter transmits infrared signals from the remote control to a CD player or a DVD player, etc. in the main zone via the infrared signal receiver in the second zone and/or third zone.
- An amplifier and speakers in the second zone and/or third zone.
- A TV in the second zone or third zone.

Since there are many possible ways to connect and use this unit in a multi-zone configuration, we recommend that you consult with your nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center about the multi-zone connections that best meet your requirements.

When using the external amplifier

An amplifier located in the second and third zones can be connected to this unit as shown below.



To avoid unexpected noise, DO NOT USE the multi-zone feature with CDs encoded in DTS.

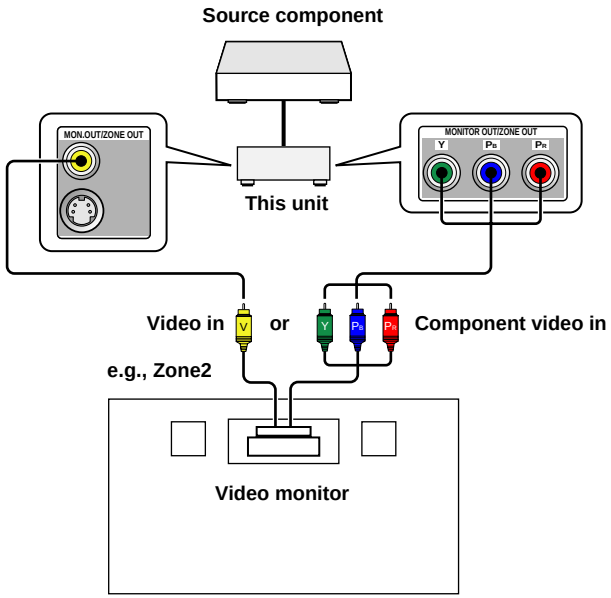
When using the internal amplifier of this unit

Connect the speakers in the second zone and/or third zone to the EXTRA SP jacks directly (☞p. 21).

Connecting zone video monitors

Connect the video monitor(s) in Zone2, Zone3 to MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT jacks. If you connect the multiple zone video monitors to these jacks, the video monitors play back the selected input source for the assigned zone.

To assign the MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT jacks to Zone2 or Zone3, configure “Monitor Out Assign” (☞p. 122).



When “Monitor Out Assign” is set to “Zone2” or “Zone3,” the content window and Option menu of the input selected for the assigned zone can also be displayed on the TV monitor in the assigned zone.

Features of the Zone2/Zone3 OSD

When “Monitor Out Assign” is set to “Zone2” or “Zone3,” the Zone2 or Zone3 OSD is displayed on the TV monitor in Zone2 or Zone3.
The Zone2 or Zone3 OSD differ from the main OSD by available features. The available features for Zone2 or Zone3 OSD are as follows.

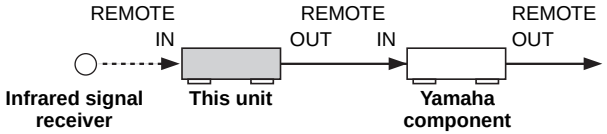
✓: available feature

	Features		Main OSD	Zone OSD
ON SCREEN menu	Input menu	Selecting Input	✓	—
		Configuring Input	✓	—
	Sound Program menu	Selecting Sound Program	✓	—
		Configuring Sound Program	✓	—
	Scene menu	Selecting Scene	✓	—
		Configuring Scene	✓	—
	Setup menu		✓	—
	Information menu		✓	—
Content window	Now Playing view		✓	✓
	Browse view		✓	✓
Option menu	Tone Control, Repeat 1, Shuffle 1		✓	✓
	Other functions		✓	—

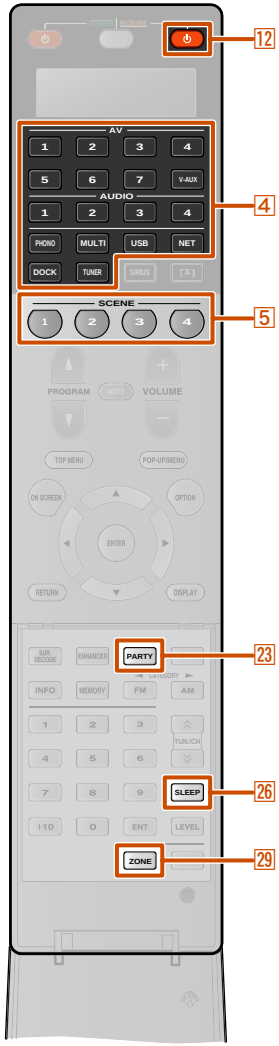
Controlling this unit with the remote control in other rooms

This unit is equipped with two REMOTE IN and REMOTE OUT jacks. These jacks can be used to control this unit and other components from Zone2 and Zone3 (☞p. 37).

Some Yamaha models can be directly connected to the REMOTE jacks of this unit. These models may not require an infrared signal emitter. Up to 6 Yamaha components can be connected as shown below.



1 : Only when selecting DOCK/PC/USB/Rhapsody, Repeat and Shuffle can be displayed.



Controlling Zone2 or Zone3

The remote control can be used to select and control Zone2 or Zone3 devices. The available operations are as follows:

- Selecting the input source of Zone2 or Zone3.
- Tuning into FM or AM when “TUNER” is selected as the input source of Zone2 or Zone3.
- Tuning into SIRIUS Satellite Radio when “SIRIUS” is selected as the input source of Zone2 or Zone3.
- Adjust the volume of Zone2 or Zone3 devices (when connected via the built-in amplifier).

Activating the Zone2 or Zone3 operation mode

Press 29**ZONE** to ZONE2 or ZONE3 before attempting to use the remote control to control Zone2 or Zone3 devices.

Operating Zone2 or Zone3

To enable and disable the audio output to Zone2 or Zone3

Press 12**RECEIVER** ⏻.

To select an input source for Zone2 or Zone3

Press 4**Input selector**.

Only the following sources are available for Zone2 or Zone3.

AV1-4 (only analog audio input), V-AUX (only analog audio input), AUDIO1-4 (only analog audio input), PHONO, USB, NET, DOCK, TUNER, SIRIUS

To use SCENE function for Zone2 or Zone3

Press and hold 5**SCENE** key for about 3 seconds to register the current setting to the scene.

Press 5**SCENE** key to load the registered setting.

The following settings can be registered for each scene of the Zone2 or Zone3.

Input, Master Volume, Tone Control

To enable the sleep timer for Zone2 or Zone3

Automatically switch the Zone2 or Zone3 device to standby mode after a specified period of time has elapsed (sleep timer). Press 26**SLEEP** repeatedly to specify a time for the sleep timer function.

Adjusting Zone2 or Zone3 high-/ low-frequency sound (Tone Control)

1 Press ZONE CONTROL on the front panel.

2 Press TONE/BALANCE on the front panel repeatedly to select “Treble” or “Bass.”

3 Press PROGRAM ◁ / ▷ to adjust the output level in the applicable frequency range.

Adjustable range	-10.0 dB to +10.0 dB
Adjustment increments	2.0 dB

The display returns to the previous display soon after the key is released.

Adjusting Zone2 and Zone3 front speaker balance

1 Press ZONE CONTROL on the front panel.

2 Press TONE/BALANCE on the front panel repeatedly to select “Balance.”

3 Press PROGRAM ◁ / ▷ to adjust balance.

The display returns to the previous display soon after the key is released.

Controlling the content window on the TV monitor in another room

When “Monitor Out Assign” is set to “Zone2” or “Zone3,” the following items can be set with Option menu in the Zone2 or Zone3.

- Adjusting the Tone Control for the Zone2 or Zone3.
- Setting the Repeat and Shuffle functions. (only when selecting DOCK/PC/USB/Rhapsody)

NOTE

The Option menu in Zone2 or Zone3 can be controlled with the same operation as for controlling the Option menu for the main zone (☞p. 58).

Enjoying the music in all rooms

Use this feature to play main zone sources in other zones simultaneously. This feature is useful when you want to play back main sources as background music in a home party, etc. When using the party mode, set “Party Mode Set” to “Enable” (☞p. 122).

Press 23PARTY to turn on or off the party mode.

“Party Mode On” or “Party Mode Off” appears on the front panel display or the TV screen.

While this unit is in the party mode, the PARTY indicators turn on in the front panel display.

- Input audio signals are mixed down to 2ch Stereo and output at the analog ZONE2 OUT or ZONE3 OUT jacks.
- Party mode can be turned on only when the power of main zone is turned on.
- Party mode automatically turns off when the power of main zone is turned off.

APPENDIX

Troubleshooting

Refer to the table below when this unit does not function properly.
If the problem you are experiencing is not listed below, or if the instructions below do not help, turn off this unit, disconnect the power cable, and contact the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center.

General

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The power will not turn on.	The protection circuitry operated 3 times consecutively.	As a safety precaution, when the protection circuitry operates 3 times consecutively, the capability to turn on the power is disabled. Contact your nearest Yamaha dealer or service center to request repair.	—
The unit enters standby mode soon after the power is turned on.	The power cable is not completely inserted.	Connect the power cable properly to an AC wall outlet.	—
	(When this unit is turned back on and "CHECK SP WIRES!" is displayed.) The protection circuitry has been activated because this unit was turned on while a speaker cable was shorted.	Make sure that all speaker cables between this unit and speakers are connected properly.	22
This unit cannot be turned off or does not work properly.	The internal microcomputer is hung-up due to an external electric shock (such as lightning or excessive static electricity) or by a drop in power supply voltage.	Disconnect the power cable from the AC wall outlet, wait about 30 seconds and then plug it in again.	—
	The batteries in the remote control may have lost their charge.	Replace all batteries.	13
The unit enters standby mode.	The protection circuitry has been activated because of a short circuit, etc.	Check that the speaker with an impedance of at least 6 Ω.	—
		Check that the speaker impedance settings are correct.	21
		Check that the speaker wires are not touching each other, then turn the unit back on.	—
	The sleep timer has turned off the unit.	Turn on the unit, and play the source again.	—

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
After display of a countdown on the front panel, the unit goes into standby mode.	If you do not use take any action, the Auto Power Down function operates.	Turn on the unit, and play the source again.	—
		In the Setup menu "Auto Power Down" ("Function" → "Auto Power Down"), increase the time until switching to standby mode, or turn off the Auto Power Down function.	124
No sound.	Incorrect input or output cable connections.	Connect the cables properly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	31
	Speaker connections are not secure.	Secure the connections.	22
	The HDMI components connected to the unit do not support the HDCP copy protection standards.	Connect HDMI components that support the HDCP copy protection standards.	—
	The audio input into the device is set to playback through the TV.	In the Setup menu, set the "Amp" of "Audio Output" ("HDMI" → "Audio Output" → "Amp") to "On."	120
	No appropriate input source has been selected.	Select an appropriate input source with **Input selector**.	48
	The volume is turned down or muted.	Turn up the volume.	—
	Signals that this unit cannot reproduce are being input from a source component, such as a CD-ROM.	Use an input source that has signals that can be reproduced on this unit.	—

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
No picture.	The video signal output from this unit is not supported by a monitor connected to this unit via the HDMI OUT 1-2 jacks.	Displays the Advanced Setup menu and select “VIDEO” in “INITIALIZE” to reset the video parameters.	141
		Displays the Advanced Setup menu and set “MONITOR CHECK” to “YES.”	141
	An appropriate video input is not selected on the TV.	Select an appropriate video input on the TV.	—
No sound is output from a specific speaker.	The speaker is malfunctioning. Check the Speaker indicators on the front panel display. If the corresponding indicator lights up, connect another speaker and check if sound is output.	If sound is not output, the unit may be malfunctioning.	11
	The playback component or speakers are not connected properly.	Connect the cables properly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	22, 31
	Output from that speaker is disabled.	Check the Speaker indicators on the front panel display. If the corresponding indicator is turned off, try the following. 1) Change to a different input source. 2) With the selected sound program, sound is not output from that speaker. Select another sound program. 3) “None” may have been selected for that speaker on this unit. Display “Speaker” in the Setup menu, and set respective parameters to enable output from that speaker (“Speaker” → “Manual Setup” → “Configuration”).	11, 112
	The volume of that speaker is set to the minimum in “Speaker” in the Setup menu.	Display “Speaker” in the Setup menu and adjust the volume (“Speaker” → “Manual Setup” → “Level”).	114
	(If hardly any sound comes from one channel) Speaker output balance is not set correctly.	Balance the volume of each speaker from “Level” in the Setup menu (“Speaker” → “Manual Setup” → “Level”).	114
	Sound may not be output from certain channels, depending on the input source or sound program.	Try another sound program.	51

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
Only the center speaker outputs substantial sound.	When a monaural source sound program is applied, for some surround decoders, sound from all channels is output from the center speaker.	Try another sound program.	51
No sound is heard from the presence speakers.	This unit is in straight decoding mode and the audio input signals have no surround channel.	Press **STRAIGHT** to exit straight decoding mode.	52
	Sound may not be output from certain channels depending on input sources or sound programs.	Try another sound program.	51
No sound is heard from the surround speakers.	Sound may not be output from certain channels depending on input sources or sound programs.	Try another sound program.	51
No sound is heard from the surround back speakers.	“Extended Surround” in the Option menu is set to “Off,” or an input signal does not contain a surround back flag with “Extended Surround” set to “Auto.”	Set “Extended Surround” other than “Off” or “Auto.”	60
No sound is heard from the subwoofer.	A subwoofer is not connected, or it is inactive.	Check that a subwoofer is connected correctly, and from the Setup menu “Subwoofer1” and “Subwoofer2” (“Speaker” → “Manual Setup” → “Configuration” → “Subwoofer1” and “Subwoofer2”), set the subwoofer to “Use.”	23, 113
	The subwoofer is turned off.	Turn the subwoofer power on. If the subwoofer includes an Auto Power Off function, then lower the Auto Power Off sensitivity settings.	—
	The source does not contain LFE (☞p. 160) or low frequency signals.		—
The audio input sources cannot be played in the desired digital audio signal format.	The connected component is not set to output the desired digital audio signals.	Set the playback component properly referring to its instruction manual.	—

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
There is noise interference from digital or radio frequency equipment.	This unit is too close to other digital or radio frequency equipment.	Move this unit further away from such equipment.	—
Noise/hum noise is heard.	Incorrect cable connection. Connect the audio cables properly.	If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	—
	A DTS-CD is being played back.	1) When only noise is output If a DTS bitstream signal is not properly input to this unit, only noise is output. Connect the playback component to this unit by digital connection and playback the DTS-CD. If the condition is not improved, the problem may results from the playback component. Consult the manufacturer of the playback component. 2) When noise is output during playback or skip operation Before playing back the DTS-CD, display the Input menu after selecting the input source and set “Decoder Mode” to “DTS.”	—
The volume cannot be increased, or the sound is distorted.	The component connected to the output jacks of this unit is not turned on.	When the component connected to the output jacks of this unit is not turned on, the sound may be distorted, or the volume may decreased due to the nature of AV receivers. Turn on all components connected to this unit.	—
	“Max Volume” is set to a low value.	Set it to a higher value.	116

HDMI™

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The front panel display HDMI indicator is flashing.	An error with the HDMI connection has occurred.	Try re-inserting the HDMI cable.	—
		Confirm that HDMI video that is not supported by the unit is not being input (Information menu → “Video Signal information”).	127
No picture or sound.	The number of components is over the limit.	Disconnect some of the HDMI components.	—
	The connected HDMI component does not support high-bandwidth digital copyright protection (HDCP).	Connect an HDMI component that supports HDCP.	—
(When using HDMI Control function) TV sound is not output from this unit when operating the remote control of the TV.	The TV audio output is not connected to this unit, or the setting to match operations carried out on TV is not set.	Connect the TV audio output to this unit, and then select the connected input source in “TV Audio Input” (Setup menu → HDMI → TV Audio Input).	119
	(When using Audio Return Channel function) The Audio Return Channel function is not working.	Make sure that your TV supports Audio Return Channel. Set the Audio Return Channel function to on (Setup menu → HDMI → ARC (Audio Return Channel)).	119

Tuner (FM/AM)

FM

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
FM stereo reception is noisy.	You are too far from the station transmitter, or the input from the antenna is weak.	Check the antenna connections.	40
		Switch to monaural mode.	65
		Replace the outdoor antenna with a more sensitive multi-element antenna.	—
There is distortion, and clear reception cannot be obtained even with a good FM antenna.	There is multi-path interference.	Adjust the antenna height or orientation, or place it in a different location.	—
The desired station cannot be tuned into with the automatic tuning method.	You are in an area far from a station, or input from the antenna is weak.	Replace the outdoor antenna with a more sensitive multi element antenna.	—
		Use **TUN./CH** ⩓ / ⩔ to manually select the station.	63
“No Presets” is displayed.	No preset stations are registered.	Register stations you want to listen to as preset stations before operation.	63
“Wrong Station” is displayed.	An invalid FM/AM frequency has been input.	Input a frequency that can be received.	—

AM

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The desired station cannot be tuned into with the automatic tuning method.	The signal is weak, or the antenna connections are loose.	Adjust the AM loop antenna orientation.	—
		Use the manual tuning method.	63
Automatic station preset does not work.	Automatic station preset is not available for AM stations.	Use manual station preset.	63
Continuous crackling and hissing noises are heard.	The supplied AM loop antenna is not connected.	Connect the AM loop antenna correctly even if you use an outdoor antenna.	40
	The noises may be caused by lightning, fluorescent lamps, motors, thermostats, or other electrical equipment.	It is difficult to completely eliminate noise, but it can be reduced by installing and properly grounding an outdoor AM antenna.	—
Buzzing and whining noises are heard.	A TV set is being used nearby.	Move this unit away from the TV set.	—

HD Radio™ Reception

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
This unit cannot receive the HD Radio signals of the selected radio station.	The radio station provides analog FM/AM radio service only.	Select other radio stations that provides the HD Radio service.	66
	The signal is too weak.	Adjust the antenna position.	—
		Use a high-quality FM/AM antenna.	—
	“Audio Mode” in the Option menu is set to “Mono.”	Set “Audio Mode” to “Auto.”	69
This unit cannot select other audio programs than the main program.	The radio station provides one audio program only.		—
HD Radio information does not appear.	The radio station does not provide the information.		—
There is no sound immediately after a station is received.	After an HD Radio station is received, about 5 seconds passes before sound can be heard.		—
HD Radio information is not displayed properly.	The hold function is enabled.	Press **HOLD** to disable the hold function.	68

iTunes Tagging

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
Tag data cannot be transferred to your iPod when it is station in the Universal Dock for iPod (YDS-10).	"YDS-10" does not support tag file transfer.	Use "YDS-12" or "YDS-11" to transfer tag data from this unit to your iPod.	—

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Insufficient Data	Tag data is not saved because of invalid data.	The selected HD Radio program (or song being played) does not support the iTunes Tagging feature.	—
Tag Already Stored	Tag data for the same content has been already saved.		—
Tag Storage full	Tag data cannot be stored because the internal memory of this unit is full.	Station your iPod/iPhone in the Universal Dock for iPod (YDS-12) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit.	—
iPod full Tags cannot be stored	Tag data cannot be stored on your iPod/iPhone because the HDD space of your iPod/iPhone is full.	Delete unnecessary data from your iPod/iPhone with iTunes to make room and try again.	—
Transferring Failed	Tag data cannot be transferred to your iPod/iPhone.	Check if the iPod/iPhone is stationed in the Universal Dock for iPod (YDS-12) properly.	—
Storing Tag	Tag data is being stored in the internal memory of this unit.		—
Transferring	Tag data is being transferred to your iPod/iPhone.		—
Tag(s)Sent	Tag data has been transferred to your iPod/iPhone.		—

SIRIUS Satellite Radio™

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
SIRIUS Satellite Radio information is not displayed properly.	The hold function is enabled.	Press **HOLD** to disable the hold function.	74

Display	Cause	Remedy	See page
ANTENNA ERROR	The antenna is not connected to the SiriusConnect tuner properly.	Check the connection of the antenna and SiriusConnect tuner.	70
SIRIUS LOADING	This unit is communicating with the SiriusConnect tuner.	The message disappears normally within several tens of seconds.	—
CHECK SR TUNER	The SiriusConnect tuner is not connected to the SIRIUS jack of this unit correctly.	Check the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner and this unit.	70
	The SiriusConnect tuner is not connected to the AC wall outlet.	Connect the power cable of the SiriusConnect tuner to the AC wall outlet.	—
NOT SUPPORTED	This unit does not support the connected SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner.	Connect the SiriusConnect tuner that this unit supports,	—
ACQUIRING	The signal is too weak.	Adjust the orientation of the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner. Check the antenna reception level from the Antenna information on the front panel display, or the SIRIUS Information screen on the TV screen.	73, 74
UPDATING	The SiriusConnect tuner is updating the channel list.	Wait until the updating is complete.	—
	The period of the subscription is end.	Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to renew the subscription.	—
F/W UPDATING	The SiriusConnect tuner is updating the firmware.	Wait until the updating is complete.	—

Display	Cause	Remedy	See page
CALL SIRIUS (CALL 888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE)	The selected channel is not subscribed.	Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to subscribe the selected channel. URL: https://activate.siriusradio.com/ Phone: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (1-888-539-7474)	—
		Select another channel.	71
SUB UPDATED	The subscription information is updated.		
LOCK	The parental lock function is enabled.	Use Numeric keys to enter the 4-digit code, select OK and then press **ENT**.	75
		Reset the SIRIUS Satellite Radio parental lock code to the factory default setting.	140
INVALID	The selected channel is currently out of service.	Select another channel.	71
Not Available	The operation you made is not available.		

USB and Network

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
"No Device" is displayed even when a USB device is present.	This unit recognized the USB storage device as an illegal device.	Turn this unit off then on again.	—
The music files and directories in the USB device cannot be viewed.	The music files and directories are placed in locations other than the FAT area.	Place music files and directories in the FAT area.	—
	You are attempting to browse directory hierarchies of over 8 levels or a directory with more than 500 files.	Modify the data structure on your USB device.	—
The PC server/ Internet Radio does not function properly.	The IP address is not set properly.	Set the DHCP server function of the router to ON. Alternately, perform manual configuration according to the current operating environment.	121
	The network cable is not connected.	Connect it properly.	38
The music in the PC server cannot be played back.	The PC does not have Windows Media Player installed in it.	Install Windows Media Player in the PC.	—
	The music is recorded in a format that cannot be played on this unit. This unit cannot play music formats other than WMA, MP3, MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC, and WAV (PCM format). Also note that it cannot play certain music files even if these are recorded in the WMA, MP3, MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC, or WAV format.	Play music recorded in a format that this unit is compatible with.	—

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The Internet Radio cannot be played.	The firewall of the network device is activated. The Internet Radio can be played only when it passes through the port designated by each radio station. The port number is variable depending on radio station.	Check the firewall setting of the network device.	—
	Connection to the Internet is disconnected.	Check the configuration of the network device, and then contact the network connection provider.	—

Display	Cause	Remedy	See page
Connect error	There is a problem with the signal path from your network to this unit.	Check the connection between this unit and the LAN port on your router or hub.	38
		Make sure your router is properly connected and turned on. Also, make sure your modem is properly connected and turned on when you are attempting to listen to Internet Radio.	38
Disconnected	Your USB storage device or USB portable audio player has been disconnected from the USB port of this unit.	Check the connection between this unit and your USB storage device or USB portable audio player.	—
	The PC server previously connected to this unit no longer exists.	Connect this unit to the available PC server.	38
No Device	There is a problem with the signal path from your USB storage device or USB portable audio player to this unit.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB storage device or USB portable audio player to the USB port of this unit.	39
		Try resetting your USB storage device or USB portable audio player.	—

Display	Cause	Remedy	See page
Access error	This unit cannot access your USB storage device or USB portable audio player.	Try another USB storage device or USB portable audio player.	—
	There is a problem with the signal path from your USB storage device or USB portable audio player to this unit.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB storage device or USB portable audio player to the USB port of this unit.	39
		Try resetting your USB storage device or USB portable audio player.	—
Access denied	The PC you are attempting to connect has denied connection.	Configure the sharing setting of Window Media Player 11/12 and select this unit as a device to which music contents are shared.	76
Unable to play	This unit cannot play back the songs currently stored on your PC.	Make sure Windows Media Player is installed on your PC.	—
		Check that the songs currently stored on your PC are playable (MP3, WMA, MPEG-4 AAC, and WAV).	—
		Store some other playable music files (MP3, WMA, MPEG-4 AAC, and WAV) on your PC.	—
	The network may be overloaded with heavy traffic, and playback is interrupted.	Try preparing a network exclusively for use with this unit to separate it from general network traffic.	—
List updated	The list of the contents stored on your PC server has been updated.		—
Bookmark On	The desired Internet Radio station has been added to the Bookmarks list.		—
Bookmark Off	The stored Internet Radio station has been removed from the Bookmarks list.		—
USB Overloaded	Over current passes through the connected USB device.	Turn off this unit and then disconnect the USB device. If the message appears when you connect the USB device again, this unit may not compatible with the USB device.	—

iPod™/iPhone™

Display	Cause	Remedy	See page
Loading...	The unit is in the process of recognizing the connection with your iPod/iPhone.		—
	The unit is in the middle of acquiring song lists from your iPod/iPhone.		—
Connect error	There is a problem with the signal path from your iPod/iPhone to the unit.	Turn off the unit and reconnect the Universal Dock for iPod to the DOCK jack of the unit.	90
		Remove your iPod/iPhone from the Universal Dock for iPod and then place it back in the dock.	90
Unknown iPod	The iPod/iPhone being used is not supported by the unit.	Connect an iPod/iPhone supported by the unit.	—
iPod connected	Your iPod/iPhone is properly placed in the Universal Dock for iPod.		—
	Your iPod/iPhone is properly placed in the transmitter of the Yamaha Wireless System for iPod and connected with this unit via wireless transmission.		92
Disconnected	Your iPod/iPhone is removed from the Universal Dock for iPod.		—
	Your iPod/iPhone is disconnected with this unit via wireless transmission.		—
Unable to play	The unit cannot playback the songs currently stored on your iPod/iPhone.	Check that songs are currently stored on your iPod/iPhone.	—

Bluetooth™

Display	Cause	Remedy	See page
Searching...	The Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver and the Bluetooth component are in the process of pairing.		—
	The Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver and the Bluetooth component are in the process of establishing a connection.		—
Completed	The pairing is completed.		—
Canceled	The pairing is canceled.		—
BT connected	The connection between the Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver and the Bluetooth component is established.		—
Disconnected	The Bluetooth component is disconnected from the Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver.		—
Not found	The Bluetooth component is not found.	During pairing: – pairing must be performed on the Bluetooth component and this unit simultaneously. Check if the Bluetooth component is in pairing mode. During connecting: – check if the Bluetooth component is turned on. – check if the Bluetooth component is within 32 ft. (10 m) of the Yamaha Bluetooth Wireless Audio Receiver.	—
	Pairing may not have been achieved.	Try pairing again.	94

Remote control

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The remote control does not work or function properly.	Wrong distance or angle.	The remote control will function within a maximum range of 20 ft. (6 m), and no more than 30 degrees off-axis from the front panel.	—
	Direct sunlight or lighting (from an inverter type of fluorescent lamp, strobe light, etc.) is striking the remote control sensor of this unit.	Adjust the lighting angle, or reposition this unit.	—
	The batteries are weak.	Replace all batteries.	13
	The remote control ID of the remote control and this unit do not match.	Match the remote control ID of this unit and the remote control.	130 140
The battery of remote control runs out immediately.	The power of battery is not enough.	Replace the battery with alkaline battery.	—
External components cannot be controlled using the remote control.	The remote control code is not correctly set.	Set the remote control code correctly using "Remote control code search" on the CD-ROM.	—
		Try setting another code for the same manufacturer using "Remote control code search" on the CD-ROM.	—
		If this unit does not work when you press **Cursor △ / ▽ / ◁ / ▷**, do the following. When the key does not work during DVD disc menu operation: press the **Input selector** again. When there is no response with remote control operation of the Option menu/Setup menu: press **SOURCE/RECEIVER** (it should glow orange) and try operating the remote control again.	—
	Even if the remote control code is correctly set, there are some models that do not respond to the remote control.		—

Glossary

Audio information

Audio and video synchronization (Lipsync)

Lip sync, an abbreviation for lip synchronization, is a technical term that involves both a problem and a capability of maintaining audio and video signals synchronized during post-production and transmission. Whereas the audio and video latency requires complex end-user adjustments, HDMI version 1.3 incorporates an automatic audio and video syncing capability that allows devices to perform this synchronization automatically and accurately without user interaction.

Bi-amplification connection (Bi-amp)

A bi-amplification connection uses two amplifiers for a speaker. One amplifier is connected to the woofer section of a loudspeaker while the other is connected to the combined mid and tweeter section. With this arrangement each amplifier operates over a restricted frequency range. This restricted range presents each amplifier with a much simpler job and each amplifier is less likely to influence the sound in some way.

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital surround sound system that gives you completely independent multi-channel audio. With 3 front channels (front L/R and center), and 2 surround stereo channels, Dolby Digital provides 5 full-range audio channels. With an additional channel especially for bass effects, called LFE (Low Frequency Effect), the system has a total of 5.1-channels (LFE is counted as 0.1 channel). By using 2-channel stereo for the surround speakers, more accurate moving sound effects and surround sound environment are possible than with Dolby Surround. The wide dynamic range from maximum to minimum volume reproduced by the 5 full-range channels and the precise sound orientation generated using digital sound processing provide listeners with unprecedented excitement and realism. With this unit, any sound environment from monaural up to a 5.1- channel configuration can be freely selected for your enjoyment.

Dolby Digital Surround EX

Dolby Digital EX creates 6 full-bandwidth output channels from 5.1-channel sources. For the best results, Dolby Digital EX should be used with movie sound tracks recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX. With this additional channel, you can experience more dynamic and realistic moving sound especially with scenes with “fly-over” and “flyaround” effects.

Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an advanced audio technology developed for high-definition programming and media including HD broadcasts, and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers multichannel sound with discrete channel output. Supporting bitrates up to 6.0 Mbps, Dolby Digital Plus can carry up to 7.1 discreet audio channels simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, Dolby Digital Plus also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate Dolby Digital.

Dolby Pro Logic II

Dolby Pro Logic II is an improved technique used to decode vast numbers of existing Dolby Surround sources. This new technology enables a discrete 5-channel playback with 2 front left and right channels, 1 center channel, and 2 surround left and right channels, instead of only 1 surround channel for conventional Pro Logic technology. There are three modes available: “Music mode” for music sources, “Movie mode” for movie sources, and “Game mode” for game sources.

Dolby Pro Logic IIx

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a new technology enabling discrete multichannel playback from 2-channel or multi-channel sources. There are three modes available: “Music mode” for music sources, “Movie mode” for movie sources (for 2-channel sources only) and “Game mode” for game sources.

Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 18.0 Mbps, Dolby TrueHD can carry up to 8 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Dolby TrueHD also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems and retains the metadata capability of Dolby Digital, allowing dialogue normalization and dynamic range control.

DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 offers an unprecedented level of audio quality for multichannel sound on DVD video, and is fully backward-compatible with all DTS decoders. “96” refers to a 96 kHz sampling rate compared to the typical 48 kHz sampling rate. “24” refers to 24-bit word length. DTS 96/24 offers sound quality transparent to the original 96/24 master, and 96/24 5.1-channel sound with full-quality full-motion video for music programs and motion picture soundtracks on DVD video.

DTS Digital Surround

DTS digital surround was developed to replace the analog soundtracks of movies with a 5.1-channel digital sound track, and is now rapidly gaining popularity in movie theaters around the world. DTS, Inc. has developed a home theater system so that you can enjoy the depth of sound and natural spatial representation of DTS digital surround in your home. This system produces practically distortion-free 6-channel sound (technically, front left and right, center, surround left and right, and LFE 0.1 (subwoofer) channels for a total of 5.1 channels). This unit incorporates a DTS-ES decoder that enables 6.1-channel reproduction by adding the surround back channel to the existing 5.1-channel format.

DTS Express

This is an audio format for next-generation optical discs such as Blu-ray discs. It uses optimized low bit rate signals for network streaming. In the case of a Blu-ray disc, this format is used with secondary audio, enabling you to enjoy the commentary of the movie producer via the Internet while playing the main program.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is a high resolution audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is virtually indistinguishable from the original, offering a high-definition home theater experience.
Supporting bitrates up to 6.0 Mbps for Blu-ray Disc, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously.
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

DTS-HD Master Audio
DTS-HD Master Audio is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience.
Supporting bitrates up to 24.5 Mbps for Blu-ray Disc, DTS-HD Master Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, DTS-HD Master Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

DTS Neo:6
Neo:6 decodes the conventional 2-channel sources for 6- channel playback by the specific decoder. It enables playback with the fullrange channels with higher separation just like digital discrete signal playback. There are two modes available: “Music mode” for music sources and “Cinema mode” for movie sources.

DSD
Direct Stream Digital (DSD) technology stores audio signals on digital storage media, such as Super Audio CDs. Using DSD, signals are stored as single bit values at a high-frequency sampling rate of 2.8224 MHz, while noise shaping and oversampling are used to reduce distortion, a common occurrence with very high quantization of audio signals. Due to the high sampling rate, better audio quality can be achieved than that offered by the PCM format used for normal audio CDs. The frequency is equal to or higher than 100 kHz and the dynamic range is 120 dB. This unit can transmit or receive DSD signals input from the HDMI jack.

FLAC
This is a file format for lossless audio data compression. FLAC is inferior to lossy compression formats in compression rate but provides higher audio quality.

MP3
One of the audio compression methods used by MPEG. It employs the irreversible compression method, which achieves a high compression rate by thinning out the data of hardly audible part to the human ears. It is said to be capable of compressing the data quantity by about 1/11 (128 kbps) while maintaining a similar audio quality to music CD.

MPEG-4 AAC
An MPEG-4 audio standard. As it allows compression of data at a bit rate lower than that of MPEG-2 AAC, it is used among others for mobile telephones, portable audio players and other low-capacity devices requiring high sound quality. In addition to the above types of devices, MPEG-4 AAC is also used to distribute contents on the Internet, and as such is supported by computers, media servers and many other devices.

LFE 0.1 channel
This channel reproduces low-frequency bass signals, and has a frequency range from 20 Hz to 120 Hz. This channel is counted as 0.1, because it only enforces a low-frequency range compared to the full-range reproduced by the other 5-channels in Dolby Digital or DTS 5.1-channel systems.

PCM (Linear PCM)
Linear PCM is a signal format under which an analog audio signal is digitized, recorded and transmitted without using any compression. This is used as a method of recording CDs and DVD audio. The PCM system uses a technique for sampling the size of the analog signal per very small unit of time. Standing for “Pulse Code Modulation,” the analog signal is encoded as pulses and then modulated for recording.

Sampling frequency and number of quantized bits
When digitizing an analog audio signal, the number of times the signal is sampled per second is called the sampling frequency, while the degree of fineness when converting the sound level into a numeric value is called the number of quantized bits. The range of rates that can be played back is determined based on the sampling rate, while the dynamic range representing the sound level difference is determined by the number of quantized bits. In principle, the higher the sampling frequency, the wider the range of frequencies that can be played back, and the higher the number of quantized bits, the more finely the sound level can be reproduced.

WAV
Windows standard audio file format, which defines the method of recording the digital data obtained by converting audio signals. It does not specify the compression (coding) method so a desired compression method can be used with it. By default, it is compatible with the PCM method (no compression) and some compression methods including the ADPCM method.

WMA
An audio compression method developed by Microsoft Corporation. It employs the irreversible compression method, which achieves a high compression rate by thinning out the data of hardly audible part to the human ears. It is said to be capable of compressing the data quantity by about 1/22 (64 kbps) while maintaining a similar audio quality to music CD.

Sound program information

CINEMA DSP
Since the Dolby Surround and DTS systems were originally designed for use in movie theaters, their effect is best felt in a theater having many speakers designed for acoustic effects. Since home conditions, such as room size, wall material, number of speakers, and so on, can differ so widely, it is inevitable that there are differences in the sound that is heard. Based on a wealth of actually measured data, Yamaha CINEMA DSP uses Yamaha’s original DSP technology to combine Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Digital, and DTS systems to provide the audiovisual experience of a movie theater in the listening room of your own home.

CINEMA DSP 3D
The actually measured sound field data contain the information of the height of the sound images. CINEMA DSP 3D feature achieves the reproduction of the accurate height of the sound images so that it creates the accurate and intensive stereoscopic sound fields in a listening room.

Compressed Music Enhancer
The Compressed Music Enhancer feature of this unit enhances your listening experience by regenerating the missing harmonics in compression artifacts. As a result, it compensates for flattened complexity due to the loss of high-frequency fidelity as well as lack of bass due to the loss of low-frequency bass, providing improved performance for the overall sound system.

SILENT CINEMA
Yamaha has developed a natural, realistic sound effect DSP algorithm for headphones. Parameters for headphones have been set for each sound program, so that accurate representations of all the sound programs can be enjoyed on headphones.

Virtual CINEMA DSP
Yamaha has developed a Virtual CINEMA DSP algorithm that allows you to enjoy DSP surround effects even without any surround speakers, by using virtual surround speakers. It is even possible to enjoy Virtual CINEMA DSP using a minimal two-speaker system that does not include a center speaker.

Video information

Component video signal

With the component video signal system, the video signal is separated into the Y signal for luminance and the PB and PR signals for chrominance. Color can be reproduced more faithfully with this system because each of these signals is independent. The component signal is also called the “color difference signal” because the luminance signal is subtracted from the color signal. A monitor with component input jacks is required in order to output component signals.

Composite video signal

With the composite video signal system, the video signal comprises the three basic elements of a video picture: color, brightness and synchronization data. A composite video jack on a video component transmits these three elements combined.

Deep Color

Deep Color refers to the use of various color depths in displays, up from the 24-bit depths in previous versions of the HDMI specification. This extra bit depth allows HDTVs and other displays go from millions of colors to billions of colors and eliminate on-screen color banding for smooth tonal transitions and subtle gradations between colors. The increased contrast ratio can represent many times more shades of gray between black and white. Also Deep Color increases the number of available colors within the boundaries defined by the RGB or YCbCr color space.

HDMI

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is the first industry supported, uncompressed, all-digital audio/video interface. Providing an interface between any sources (such as set-top boxes or AV receivers) and audio/video monitor (such as digital television), HDMI supports standard, enhanced or high-definition video as well as multichannel digital audio using a single cable. HDMI transmits all ATSC HDTV standards and supports 8-channel digital audio, with bandwidth to spare to accommodate future enhancements and requirements.

When used in combination with HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), HDMI provides a secure audio/video interface that meets the security requirements of content providers and system operators. For further information on HDMI, visit the HDMI website at “http://www.hdmi.org/.”

S-video signal

With the S-video signal system, the video signal normally transmitted using a pin cable is separated and transmitted as the Y signal for the luminance and the C signal for the chrominance through the S-video cable. Using the S-VIDEO jack eliminates video signal transmission loss and allows recording and playback of even more beautiful images.

“x.v.Color”

A color space standard supported by HDMI version 1.3. It is a more extensive color space than sRGB, and allows the expression of colors that could not be expressed before. While remaining compatible with the color gamut of sRGB standards, “x.v.Color” expands the color space, and can thus produce more vivid, natural images. It is particularly effective for still pictures and computer graphics.

Compatibility of the input and output video signals

Analog-to-HDMI video conversion is performed according to resolution of video signals as shown below. Analog-to-analog video conversion is also possible when “Analog to Analog Conversion” is set to “On” (☞p. 140).

✓: available conversion

		HDMI output					COMPONENT VIDEO output				S-VIDEO output	VIDEO output
	Resolution	480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p	480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	480i/576i	480i/576i
HDMI input	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓						
	720p		✓	✓	✓	✓						
	1080i		✓	✓	✓	✓						
	1080p		✓	✓	✓	✓						
COMPONENT VIDEO input	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓		✓				
	720p		✓	✓	✓	✓			✓			
	1080i		✓	✓	✓	✓				✓		
S-VIDEO input	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓
VIDEO input	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓

Information on HDMI™

■ HDMI signal compatibility

Audio signals

Audio signal types	Audio signal formats	Compatible media
2ch Linear PCM	2ch, 32-192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	CD, DVD-Video, DVD-Audio, etc.
Multi-ch Linear PCM	8ch, 32-192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	DVD-Audio, Blu-ray Disc, HD DVD, etc.
DSD	2/5.1ch, 2.8224 MHz, 1 bit	SACD, etc.
Bitstream	Dolby Digital, DTS	DVD-Video, etc.
Bitstream (High definition audio)	Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS Express	Blu-ray Disc, HD DVD, etc.

- If the input source component can decode the bitstream audio signals of audio commentaries, you can playback the audio sources with the audio commentaries mixed down by using the digital audio input (optical or coaxial) connections.
- Refer to the supplied instruction manuals of the input source component, and set the component appropriately.

NOTES

- When CPPM copy-protected DVD-Audio is played back, video and audio signals may not be output, depending on the type of the DVD player.
- This unit is not compatible with HDCP-incompatible HDMI or DVI components.
- Refer to the supplied instruction manuals for details.
  To decode audio bitstream signals on this unit, set the input source component appropriately so that the component outputs the bitstream audio signals directly (does not decode the bitstream signals on the component).
- This unit is not compatible with the audio commentary features (for example, the special audio contents downloaded via Internet) of Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD. This unit does not playback the audio commentaries of the Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD content.

Video signals

This unit is compatible with the video signals of the following resolutions:

- 480i/60 Hz
- 576i/50 Hz
- 480p/60 Hz
- 576p/50 Hz
- 720p/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080i/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080p/60 Hz, 50 Hz, 24 Hz

About trademarks

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s:
5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,616; 6,487,535; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio, and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

iPod™, iPhone™

"iPod" is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. "iPhone" is a trademark of Apple Inc.

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

This receiver supports network connections.

HD Radio™ Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Bluetooth™

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG and is used by Yamaha in accordance with a license agreement.

"HDMI," the "HDMI" logo and "High-Definition Multimedia Interface" are trademarks, or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

x.v.Color™

"x.v.Color" is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

"SILENT CINEMA" is a trademark of Yamaha Corporation.

SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All rights reserved. **Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.**

Rhapsody and the Rhapsody logo are registered trademarks of RealNetworks, Inc.

Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Media Audio, Windows Media Connect and Windows Media Player are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Specifications

■ Input

- Analog Audio
  - RCA 10
    - AV1-4, AUDIO1-4, PHONO, VIDEO AUX
  - MULTI CH INPUT 8ch
    - FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R, SURROUND BACK L/R, SUBWOOFER
- Digital Audio
  - Optical ..... 4 (AV3-4, AUDIO1, VIDEO AUX)
  - Coaxial 3 (AV1-2, AUDIO2)
- Analog Video
  - Composite ..... 5 (AV1-4, VIDEO AUX)
  - S-Video ..... 5 (AV1-4, VIDEO AUX)
  - Component 4 (AV1-4)
- Other
  - DOCK ..... 1 (Audio L/R, Composite Video, S-Video)

■ Output

- Analog Audio
  - SPEAKERS ..... 11ch (7ch + Extra 4ch)
    - FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R, SURROUND BACK/BI-AMP L/R, EXTRA SP1 (ZONE2/ZONE3/F.PRESENCE L/R), EXTRA SP2 (ZONE2/ZONE3 L/R)
  - PRE OUT 9ch
    - FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R, SURROUND BACK L/R, SUBWOOFER (Stereo, Front & Rear 2ch)
  - AV OUT 1
  - ZONE OUT 1
  - ZONE3 OUT 1
- Digital Audio
  - Optical ..... 1 (AV OUT)
- Analog Video
  - MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT
    - Composite 1
    - S-Video 1
    - Component 1
  - AV OUT
    - Composite 1
    - S-Video 1

■ HDMI

- Input ..... 8 (AV1-7, VIDEO AUX)
- Output ..... 2 (HDMI OUT)
- HDMI Specification
  - Deep Color 30/36 bit, "x.v.Color," Auto Lips Sync, HD Audio, ARC (Audio Return Channel), 3D
- Audio Format
  - Dolby Digital, DTS, DSD 6ch, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, PCM 2ch-8ch
- Content Protection ..... HDCP compatible

■ Tuner

- Analog Tuner
  - FM/AM ..... 1 (TUNER)
- HD Radio with iTunes Tagging [U.S.A. model] ..... 1 (TUNER)
- Satellite Radio Ready [U.S.A. model]
  - SIRIUS Radio ..... 1 (SIRIUS)

■ Network

- USB (USB1.1 Full Speed) 1
  - Device Type ..... USB Mass Storage Class, MTP
  - Audio Format ..... MP3, WMA, WAV, MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC
  - Max Audio Support fs ..... 48 kHz/24 bit
  - Cover Art Format ..... PNG, JPEG
- Ethernet (100Base-TX/10Base-TX) 1
  - Internet Radio
    - Audio Format ..... MP3, WMA
  - PC Server
    - Audio Format ..... MP3, WMA, WAV, MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC
    - Max Audio Support fs ..... 96 kHz/24 bit
    - Cover Art Format ..... PNG, JPEG
  - DLNA
    - Version ..... 1.5 (DMP & DMR support)
    - Audio Format ..... MP3, WMA, WAV, MPEG-4 AAC, FLAC
    - Max Audio Support fs ..... 96 kHz/24 bit
    - Cover Art Format ..... PNG, JPEG
  - [U.S.A. model] Internet Music Service
    - Rhapsody, Sirius Internet Radio
  - Network Control
    - Web Browse Control, MusicCAST2 Commander Support, Yamaha Network Control Support (YNC), Receiver Manager Support

■ Remote

- RS-232C 1
- REMOTE IN 2
- REMOTE OUT 2
- TRIGGER OUT ..... 2 (12 V/total 100 mA max.)

■ Compatible Decoding Format

- Decoding Format
  - Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital EX, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS Express, DTS, DTS-ES Matrix 6.1, DTS-ES Discrete 6.1, DTS 96/24
- Post Decoding Format
  - Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Pro Logic II Music, Dolby Pro Logic II Movie, Dolby Pro Logic II Game, Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music, Dolby Pro Logic IIx Movie, Dolby Pro Logic IIx Game, DTS Neo:6 Music, DTS Neo:6 Cinema

■ Audio Section

- Minimum RMS Output Power (20 Hz to 20 kHz, 0.06% THD, 8 Ω)
  - FRONT L/R ..... 130 W + 130 W
  - CENTER ..... 130 W
  - SURROUND L/R ..... 130 W + 130 W
  - SURROUND BACK L/R ..... 130 W
- Dynamic Power (IHF)
  - FRONT L/R, 8/6/4/2 Ω ..... 165/210/285/405 W
- Dynamic Headroom
  - 8 Ω ..... 1.0 dB
- Damping Factor
  - FRONT L/R, 1 kHz, 8 Ω ..... 150 or more
- Input Sensitivity/Input Impedance
  - PHONO ..... 3.5 mV/47 kΩ
  - AUDIO2 etc. ..... 200 mV/47 kΩ
  - MULTI CH IN ..... 200 mV/47 kΩ

- Maximum Input Level
  - PHONO (1 kHz, 0.1% THD) ..... 60 mV or more
  - AUDIO2 etc. (1 kHz, 0.5% THD) ..... 2.4 V or more
- Output Level/Output Impedance
  - AV OUT ..... 200 mV/1.2 kΩ
  - HEADPHONE OUT ..... 150 mV/100 Ω
  - PRE OUT ..... 1.0 V/1.2 kΩ
  - ZONE2 OUT ..... 1.0 V/1.2 kΩ
  - ZONE3 OUT ..... 1.0 V/1.2 kΩ
- Frequency Response
  - AUDIO2 etc. to FRONT L/R (Pure Direct, 10 Hz to 100 kHz) ..... +0/-3 dB
- Total Harmonic Distortion
  - PHONO to AV OUT (20 Hz to 20 kHz, 1 V) ..... 0.02% or less
  - AV1 to FRONT L/R (20 Hz to 20 kHz, 65 W/8 Ω) ..... 0.04% or less
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF-A Network)
  - PHONO (input shorted, 5 mV) to AV OUT
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 86 dB or more
  - [Australia model] ..... 81 dB or more
  - AUDIO2 etc. (input shorted, 250 mV) to FRONT L/R ..... 100 dB or more
- Residual Noise (IHF-A Network)
  - FRONT L/R ..... 150 µV or less
- Channel Separation (1 kHz/10 kHz)
  - PHONO (input shorted) ..... 60 dB/55 dB or more
  - AV1 etc. (input 5.1 kΩ shorted) ..... 60 dB/45 dB or more
- Volume Control
  - Main Zone ..... MUTE/-80 to +16.5 dB
  - Zone2, Zone3 ..... MUTE/-80 to +16.5 dB
- Tone Control Characteristics
  - Main Zone (FRONT, CENTER, SUBWOOFER)
    - Bass Boost/Cut ..... ±6 dB/50 Hz
    - Bass Turnover Frequency ..... 350 Hz
    - Treble Boost/Cut ..... ±6 dB/20 kHz
    - Treble Turnover Frequency ..... 3.5 kHz
  - Zone2, Zone3
    - Bass Boost/Cut ..... ±10 dB/100 Hz
    - Bass Turnover Frequency ..... 350 Hz
    - Treble Boost/Cut ..... ±10 dB/10 kHz
    - Treble Turnover Frequency ..... 3.5 kHz
- Filter Characteristics (fc=40/60/80/90/100/110/120/160/200 Hz)
  - H.P.F. (FRONT, CENTER, SURROUND, SURROUND BACK: Small) ..... 12 dB/oct.
  - L.P.F. (SUBWOOFER) ..... 24 dB/oct.

■ Video Section

- Video Format (MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT, Wall Paper/OSD)
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... NTSC/PAL
  - [Australia model] ..... PAL/NTSC
- Video Signal Type (Video Conversion) ..... NTSC/PAL
- Signal Level
  - Composite ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
  - S-Video
  - - NTSC ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.286 Vp-p/75 Ω (C)
  - - PAL ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.3 Vp-p/75 Ω (C)
  - Component ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.7 Vp-p/75 Ω (PB/PR)
- Maximum Input Level (Video Conversion Off) ..... 1.5 Vp-p or more
- Signal to Noise Ratio (Video Conversion Off) ..... 60 dB or more
- Frequency Response (Video Conversion Off)
  - Component (MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT) ..... 5 Hz to 100 MHz, ±3 dB

■ FM Section

- Tuning Range
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 87.5 to 107.9 MHz
  - [Australia model] ..... 87.50 to 108.00 MHz
- 50 dB Quieting Sensitivity (IHF)
  - Mono ..... 3.0 µV (20.8 dBf)
- Signal to Noise Ration (IHF)
  - Mono/Stereo ..... 74 dB/70 dB
  - [U.S.A. model] HD ..... 80 dB
- Harmonic Distortion (1 kHz)
  - Mono/Stereo 0.3%/0.3%
  - [U.S.A. model] HD 0.03%
- Antenna Input ..... 75 Ω (unbalanced)

■ AM Section

- Tuning Range
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 530 to 1710 kHz
  - [Australia model] ..... 531 to 1611 kHz

■ General

- Power Supply
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... AC 120 V, 60 Hz
  - [Australia model] ..... AC 240 V, 50 Hz
- Power Consumption
  - [U.S.A. model] ..... 490 W/620 VA
  - [Canada model] ..... 400 W/510 VA
  - [Australia model] ..... 490 W
- Standby Power Consumption
  - HDMI Control Off/Standby Through Off ..... 0.3 W or less
  - HDMI Control On/Standby Through On ..... 2.7 W (typical)
  - NET Standby On ..... 4.5 W (typical)
- Dimensions (W x H x D) ..... 435 x 182 x 430 mm (17-1/8 x 7-1/8 x 16-7/8 in)
- Weight ..... 16.0 kg (35.3 lbs.)

Index

Numerics

2ch stereo playback 53
5 channel speaker layout 18
5.1-channel speaker layout 17
7.1-channel speaker connection 20
7.1-channel speaker layout 16

A

Account Status, Input menu 100
Adaptive DRC, Option menu 60
Adaptive DSP Level, Sound setup 116
Advanced Setup menu 139
Advanced speaker configuration 24
All channel search mode 72
AM antenna connection 40
AM tuning 63
Analog to Analog Conversion, Video setup 117
ARC (Audio Return Channel), HDMI setup 119
Aspect, Processing, Video setup 118
AUDIO jack 27
Audio Mode 69
Audio Output, HDMI setup 120
Audio Return Channel function 145
Audio Select, Option menu 61
Audio Signal, Information menu 127
Auto Power Down, Function setup 124
Auto Preset 65, 69
Auto Setup, Speaker setup 111

B

Basic playback 48
BD player connection 31
Bi-amp connection, speaker 21
Bluetooth™ component playback 94
Bookmark Off, Internet Radio 80
Bookmark On, Internet Radio 80
Browse view 62

C

Cable plug 27
Category search mode 72
Center Image, Sound Program menu 109
Center Level, Sound Program menu 108
Center speaker 15
Center Width, Sound Program menu 109
Changing speaker impedance 21
CINEMA DSP 3D mode 52
CINEMA DSP 3D Mode, Option menu 60
CINEMA DSP indicator 11
CINEMA DSP parameters 106
CLEAR 136
Clear All Preset 65, 69, 75
Clear Preset 65, 69, 75
Close, DOCK (iPod) 91
COAXIAL jack 27
COMPONENT VIDEO jack 27
Compressed Music Enhancer 53
Configuration, Manual Setup, Speaker setup 112
Connect, Option menu 61
Connecting speakers 20
Connecting to network 38
Connecting USB storage device 39
Connections 15
Content window 62
Control Select, HDMI setup 119
Controlling Zone2 or Zone3 149
Cursor indicators 11

D

Decode Type, Sound Program menu 108, 109
Decoder Mode, Input menu 100
Dialogue Lift, Option menu 60
Dimension, Sound Program menu 109
Direct number access mode 72
Direct, Sound Program menu 108
Disconnect, Option menu 61
Display Set, Function setup 125
Distance, Speaker setup 114
DMC Control, Input menu 100
DSP Level, Sound Program menu 106
DVD player connection 31
Dynamic Range, Sound setup 116

E

Enhancer, Input menu 100
ERASE 137
Extended Surround, Option menu 60
External component connection 27
External decoder connection 36

F

Features of Web Control Center 96
FIRM UPDATE, Advanced Setup menu 142
FM antenna connection 40
FM Mode 65
FM tuning 63
Front panel 8
Front panel display 11
Front Presence L Level, Sound Program menu 108
Front Presence R Level, Sound Program menu 109
Front speaker 15
Function setup 123

H

HD Radio™ reception 66
HDMI Control function 143
HDMI Control, HDMI setup 119
HDMI indicator 11
HDMI jack 27
HDMI Monitor, Information menu 127
HDMI setup 118
High-frequency sound adjustment 49

I

Information menu ... 127
Initial Delay, Sound Program menu ... 106
Initial Volume, Sound setup ... 116
INITIALIZE, Advanced Setup menu ... 141
Input Assignment, Function setup ... 124
Input menu ... 98
Input menu list ... 99
Internet Radio ... 80
IP Address, Network setup ... 121
iPhone™ playback ... 90
iPod Interlock, Input menu ... 101
iPod™ playback ... 90
iTunes Tagging ... 67

J

Jack ... 27

L

Language ... 126
LEARN ... 132
Level, Speaker setup ... 114
Lipsync, Sound setup ... 115
Liveness, Sound Program menu ... 107
Load, Scene menu ... 103
Low-frequency sound adjustment ... 49

M

MAC Address Filter, Network setup ... 121
MACRO ... 135
Manual Preset ... 63
Manual Setup, Speaker setup ... 111
Manual Tuning ... 68
Manual Tuning, TUNER ... 64
Max Volume, Sound setup ... 116
Memory Guard, Function setup ... 126
Menu browse control ... 91
MONITOR CHECK, Advanced Setup menu ... 141
Monitor Out Assign, Multi Zone setup ... 122
Multi information display ... 11
Multi Zone setup ... 122
Multi-format player connection ... 36
Multi-zone function ... 147
MUTE indicator ... 11

N

Network connection ... 38
NETWORK port ... 38
Network setup ... 121
Network Standby, Network setup ... 121
Network, Information menu ... 128
Normal tuning ... 63
Now Playing view ... 62

O

ON SCREEN menu ... 56
On-screen display ... 14
OPTICAL jack ... 27
Option menu ... 58
Option menu list ... 59

P

Pairing, Option menu ... 61
Panorama, Sound Program menu ... 109
Parametric EQ, Speaker setup ... 114
Parental Lock ... 75
Party mode ... 149
Party Mode Set, Multi Zone setup ... 122
PC ... 76
PHONES jack ... 9
Play Control, DOCK (iPod) ... 92
Play Control, Internet Radio ... 81
Play Control, PC ... 77, 85
Play Control, USB ... 79
Power Amp Assign, Manual Setup, Speaker setup ... 112
PREOUT connection ... 26
Presence speaker ... 15
Presence speaker connection ... 20
Presence speaker layout ... 17
PRESET ... 131
Preset Select ... 69
Preset Select, TUNER ... 65
Pure Direct Mode ... 53
Pure Direct Mode, Sound setup ... 116

R

Radio Control ... 74
Rear panel ... 10
Recording device connection ... 38
RECOV./BACKUP, Advanced Setup menu ... 141
Registering remote control codes ... 131
REMOTE CON AMP, Advanced Setup menu ... 140
Remote control ... 12
Remote control battery installation ... 13
Remote control connection ... 37
Remote control, Controlling other components ... 129
REMOTE SENSOR, Advanced Setup menu ... 139
Remove Account, Input menu ... 100
RENAME ... 134
Rename/Icon Select, Input menu ... 99
Rename/Icon Select, Scene menu ... 104
Repeat, Option menu ... 61
Reset, Scene menu ... 104
Resolution, Processing, Video setup ... 117
Reverb Delay, Sound Program menu ... 107
Reverb Level, Sound Program menu ... 108
Reverb Time, Sound Program menu ... 107
Rhapsody Trial, Input menu ... 100
Rhapsody® ... 82
Room Size, Sound Program menu ... 106

S

Satellite Radio ... 70
Save, Scene menu ... 103
SCENE function ... 50
Scene menu ... 102
Setting Data Copy, Manual Setup, Speaker setup ... 111
Setting Pattern, Manual Setup, Speaker setup ... 111
Setup menu ... 110

Setup menu list ... 111
Shortcut function ... 89
Shuffle, Option menu ... 61
Sign In, Input menu ... 100
SILENT CINEMA mode ... 51
Simple remote control ... 92
Simplified remote control ... 138
SIRIUS Internet Radio ... 86
SIRIUS PIN, Advanced Setup menu ... 140
SIRIUS Satellite Radio ... 70
SiriusConnect™ tuner ... 70
Sound program ... 51
Sound program list ... 54
Sound Program menu ... 105
Sound setup ... 115
Speaker connection ... 15
SPEAKER IMP., Advanced Setup menu ... 139
Speaker indicators ... 11
Speaker layout ... 16, 24
Speaker setting ... 41
Speaker setup ... 111
Standby Charge, Input menu ... 100
Standby Through, HDMI setup ... 120
Straight decoding mode ... 52
Subwoofer ... 15
Supplied accessories ... 2
Surround Back Initial Delay, Sound Program menu ... 106
Surround Back L Level, Sound Program menu ... 108
Surround Back Liveness, Sound Program menu ... 107
Surround Back R Level, Sound Program menu ... 108
Surround Back Room Size, Sound Program menu ... 106
Surround back speaker ... 15
Surround Initial Delay, Sound Program menu ... 106
Surround L Level, Sound Program menu ... 108
Surround Liveness, Sound Program menu ... 107
Surround R Level, Sound Program menu ... 108
Surround Room Size, Sound Program menu ... 106
Surround speaker ... 15
S-VIDEO jack ... 27
System, Information menu ... 128

T

Test Tone, Speaker setup ... 115
Tone control ... 49
Tone Control, Option menu ... 60
Transmitter of the Wireless System for iPod ... 92
Trigger connection ... 37
Trigger Output, Function setup ... 125
Tuner indicator ... 11
TV Audio Input, HDMI setup ... 119
TV FORMAT, Advanced Setup menu ... 140
TV monitor connection ... 28

U

USB port ... 39
USB storage device connection ... 39
USB storage devices ... 78
Utility, TUNER ... 65

V

VERSION, Advanced Setup menu ... 142
Video Adjustment, Option menu ... 61
VIDEO jack ... 27
Video Out, Input menu ... 101
Video setup ... 117
Video Signal, Information menu ... 127
Virtual CINEMA DSP 3D mode ... 52
Virtual CINEMA DSP mode ... 51
VOLUME ... 8
VOLUME indicator ... 11
Volume Trim, Option menu ... 61

W

Web Control Center ... 96

Y

YPAO ... 41

Z

ZONE OUT connection ... 26
Zone Rename, Multi Zone setup ... 123
Zone, Information menu ... 128
Zone2 Scene Rename, Multi Zone setup ... 123
Zone2 Set, Multi Zone setup ... 122
Zone3 Set, Multi Zone setup ... 122

© 2010 Yamaha Corporation

YAMAHA CORPORATION
@ YC712B0/OMEN1

© 2010 Yamaha Corporation
Printed in Malaysia @ WW68000

The latest firmware notification / La dernière notification du pare-feu / Meldung der neuesten Firmware-Version / Meddelande om senaste firmware / L'avviso per il firmware più recente

When the following notifications are displayed in the ON SCREEN menu **while this unit is connected to the network**, the firmware of this unit can be updated by using the Advanced Setup menu. Refer to "Firmware update" in the Owner's Manual for details on how to update the firmware.

Si les notifications suivantes sont affichées dans le menu ON SCREEN **alors que cet appareil est connecté au réseau**, le pare-feu de cet appareil peut être mis à jour à l'aide du menu Advanced Setup. Reportez-vous à la section « Mise à jour du pare-feu » dans le Mode d'emploi pour plus de détails concernant la manière de mettre à jour le pare-feu.

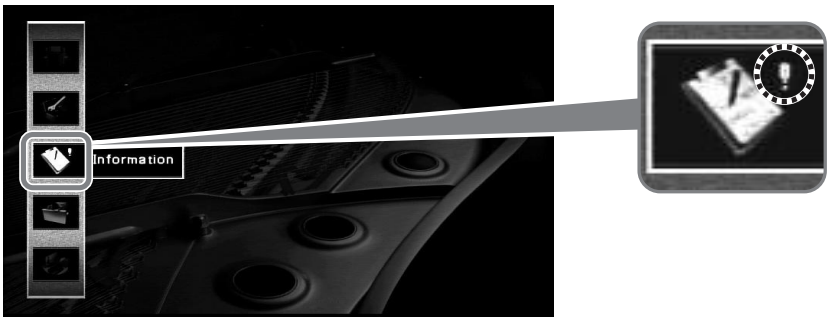
Wenn das ON SCREEN-Menü die unten stehenden Meldungen enthält **während dieses Gerät mit dem Netzwerk verbunden ist**, kann die Firmware dieses Geräts im Advanced Setup-Menü aktualisiert werden. Wie Sie die Firmware aktualisieren, ist unter „Firmware-Update" in der Bedienungsanleitung beschrieben.

När följande meddelande visas på ON SCREEN-menyn **medan receivern är ansluten till nätverket**, kan firmware för receivern uppdateras via Advanced Setup-menyn. Se "Firmware-uppdatering" i Bruksanvisningen för mer information om hur man uppdaterar firmware.

Quando compaiono i seguenti avvisi nel menu ON SCREEN **e l'unità è collegata alla rete**, è possibile aggiornare il firmware dell'unità tramite il menu Advanced Setup. Fare riferimento a "Aggiornamento firmware" nel Manuale di istruzioni per maggiori dettagli su come aggiornare il firmware.

- **When pressing ON SCREEN**
- **Lorsqu'on appuie sur ON SCREEN**
- **ON SCREEN gedrückt**
- **När ON SCREEN trycks ner**
- **Quando si preme ON SCREEN**

ENTER



Message
Message
Meldung
Meddelande
Messaggio

Aviso sobre la última versión del firmware / De nieuwste firmware-kennisgeving / Уведомление о последнем встроенном программном обеспечении / 最新固件通知 / 최신 펌웨어 알림

Cuando los avisos siguientes aparecen en el menú ON SCREEN **estando esta unidad conectada a la red**, el firmware de esta unidad se puede actualizar utilizando el menú Advanced Setup. Consulte “Actualización del firmware” en el Manual de Instrucciones para conocer más detalles sobre cómo actualizar el firmware.

Wanneer de volgende kennisgevingen worden weergegeven in het ON SCREEN-menu **als dit toestel is aangesloten op het netwerk**, dan kan de firmware van dit toestel worden geupdate via het Advanced Setup menu. Raadpleeg “Firmware update” in de Gebruiksaanwijzing voor informatie over het updaten van de firmware.

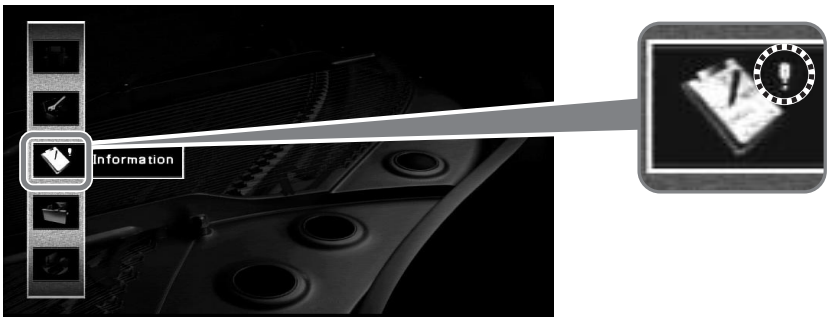
При отображении следующих уведомлений в меню ON SCREEN, **когда аппарат подсоединен к сети**, встроенное программное обеспечение данного аппарата может быть обновлено с помощью меню Advanced Setup. Для получения подробной информации об обновлении встроенного программного обеспечения см. “Обновление встроенного программного обеспечения” в документе Инструкция по эксплуатации.

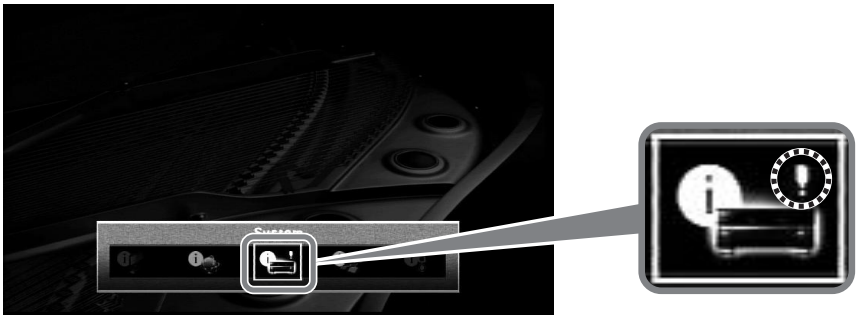
在本机连接至网络的情况下，如果在 ON SCREEN 菜单**中显示以下通知**，则可利用 Advanced Setup 菜单对本机的固件进行更新。请参见使用说明书中的 “ 固件更新 ”，获取有关固件更新方法的详情。

이 장치를 네트워크에 연결할 때 ON SCREEN 메뉴에 **다음의 알림 메시지가 표시되는 경우**, Advanced Setup 메뉴를 사용하여 이 장치의 펌웨어를 업데이트할 수 있습니다. 펌웨어 업데이트 방법에 대한 자세한 내용은 사용 설명서에서 “ 펌웨어 업데이트 ” 를 참조하십시오.

- **Al pulsar ON SCREEN**
- **Bij drukken op ON SCREEN**
- **При нажатии ON SCREEN**
- **按 ON SCREEN 时**
- **ON SCREEN 을 누를 경우**

ENTER





Mensaje
Bericht
Сообщение
信息
메시지

List of remote control codes
Liste des codes de commande
Liste der Fernbedienungscodes
Lista över fjärrstyrningskoder
Elenco dei codici di telecomando
Lista de códigos de mando a distancia
Lijst met afstandsbedieningscodes
Список кодов дистанционного управления
遥控器代码列表
리모콘코드목록

TV

A.R. Systems	0320
Acme	0342
Acura	0323, 0343
ADC	0337
Admiral	0054, 0178, 0336, 0337, 0339, 0346, 0347
Advent	0158
Adventura	0057
Adyson	0277, 0282, 0342
Agashi	0277, 0282
Agazi	0337
Aiko	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343
Aim	0320
Aiwa	0078, 0379
Akai	0050, 0055, 0109, 0159, 0181, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0349, 0350
Akiba	0320, 0340
Akura	0320, 0323, 0337, 0340
Alaron	0277
Alba	0161, 0277, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0351, 0372, 0382
Albatron	0140
Alcyon	0171
Alleron	0059
Allorgan	0282
Allstar	0320, 0350
America Action	0179
AMOi	0276
Amplivision	0161, 0282, 0321, 0342
Amstrad	0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0343
Amtron	0058
Anam	0179, 0343
Anam National	0052, 0058
Anglo	0323, 0343
Anitech	0171, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0343
Ansonic	0161, 0168, 0320, 0323, 0341, 0343
AOC	0008, 0026, 0050, 0053
Apex	0039, 0111, 0217
Arcam	0277, 0282
Arcam Delta	0342
Aristona	0320, 0349, 0350
Arthur Martin	0321
ASA	0339, 0347
Asberg	0171, 0320, 0350
Astra	0343
Asuka	0277, 0282, 0337, 0340, 0342
Atlantic	0277, 0320, 0342, 0349, 0350
Atori	0323, 0343
Auchan	0321
Audiosonic	0161, 0282, 0320, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
AudioTon	0161, 0282, 0342
Audiovox	0058, 0179, 0194
Ausind	0171
Autovox	0171, 0282, 0337, 0339, 0342
Aventura	0051
Awa	0277, 0282
Axion	0156
Baird	0282
Bang & Olufsen	0180, 0339
Basic Line	0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0350
Bastide	0282, 0342
Baur	0320, 0349
Bazin	0282
Beko	0161, 0269, 0294, 0302, 0311, 0320, 0328, 0351
Belcor	0008
Bell & Howell	0019, 0054
Benq	0097, 0242, 0361
Beon	0320, 0349, 0350
Best	0161
Bestar	0161, 0320, 0350
Binatone	0282, 0342
Blue Sky	0320, 0340
Blue Star	0348
Boots	0282, 0342
BPL	0320, 0348
Bradford	0058, 0179
Brandt	0322, 0345
Brillian	0182
Brinkmann	0320
Brionvega	0320, 0339, 0349, 0350
Britannia	0277, 0282, 0342
Brockwood	0008
Broksonic	0109, 0179
Bruns	0339
BTC	0340
Bush	0269, 0282, 0283, 0304, 0320, 0323, 0328, 0332, 0340, 0343, 0344, 0346, 0348, 0349, 0350, 0372, 0382, 0463, 0470, 0472
Candle	0008, 0026, 0050, 0057
Capsonic	0337
Carena	0320
Carnivale	0050
Carrefour	0344
Carver	0010
Cascade	0320, 0323, 0343
Casio	0367
Cathay	0320, 0349, 0350
CCE	0183, 0282
Celebrity	0055, 0107
Celera	0039
Centurion	0320, 0349, 0350
Century	0339
CGE	0161, 0171
Changhong	0039
Chimei	0273
Cimline	0323, 0343
Citizen	0007, 0008, 0026, 0050, 0058
City	0323, 0343
Clarion	0179
Clarivox	0349
Clatronic	0161, 0171, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0350, 0351
CMS	0277
CMS Hightec	0282
Coby	0197
Colortyme	0008, 0026
Commercial Solutions	0021
Concerto	0008, 0026
Concorde	0323, 0343
Condor	0161, 0277, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0350, 0351
Contec	0179, 0277, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0344
Contec/Cony	0012, 0058
Continental Edison	0345
Cosmel	0323, 0343
Craig	0058, 0179
Crosley	0010, 0037, 0171, 0339
Crown	0058, 0161, 0171, 0179, 0320, 0323, 0343, 0349, 0350, 0351
CS Electronics	0277, 0340, 0342
CTC Clatronic	0341
CTX	0205
Curtis Mathes	0007, 0008, 0010, 0019, 0021, 0026, 0049, 0050, 0178
CXC	0058, 0179
Cybertron	0340
Cytron	0152
Daewoo	0007, 0008, 0026, 0037, 0053, 0167, 0266, 0275, 0277, 0282, 0315, 0320, 0323, 0331, 0335, 0342, 0343, 0350, 0381, 0465
Dainichi	0277, 0340
Dansai	0277, 0282, 0320, 0337, 0349, 0350
Dantax	0161, 0349
Dawa	0320
Daytron	0007, 0008, 0026, 0323, 0343
De Graaf	0346
Decca	0282, 0320, 0342, 0349, 0350
Dell	0145, 0245
Denver	0358, 0362
Desmet	0320, 0349, 0350
Diamant	0320
Diamond	0277
DiamondVision	0135, 0143
Dimensia	0049
Disney	0219
Dixi	0282, 0320, 0323, 0343, 0349, 0350
Dream Vision	0461, 0498
DTS	0323, 0343
Dual	0282, 0320, 0342
Dual-Tec	0342, 0343
Dumont	0008, 0030, 0062, 0282, 0339, 0341, 0342
Durabrand	0031, 0051, 0179, 0215
Dux	0349
Dwin	0178
Dynatron	0320, 0349, 0350
Dynex	0228, 0231
Elbe	0161, 0168, 0282, 0320
Elcit	0339
Electa	0348
ELECTRO TECH	0343
Electroband	0055, 0107
Electrograph	0176
Electrohome	0008, 0026, 0052, 0055
Element	0230
Elin	0277, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0349, 0350
Elite	0320, 0340, 0350
Elman	0341
Elta	0277, 0323, 0343
Emerson	0000, 0007, 0008, 0012, 0013, 0019, 0026, 0031, 0037, 0051, 0058, 0059, 0161, 0179, 0320, 0339
Emprex	0154
Envision	0008, 0026, 0050
Epson	0155, 0206, 0359
Erres	0320, 0349, 0350
ESA	0051
ESC	0282
Etron	0343
Eurofeel	0282
Euro-Feel	0337
Euroline	0349
Euroman	0161, 0277, 0282
Euromann	0320, 0337, 0342, 0350
Europhon	0277, 0282, 0320, 0341, 0342, 0350
Expert	0321
Exquisit	0320
Fenner	0323, 0343
Ferguson	0322, 0345, 0349
Fidelity	0277, 0320, 0342, 0346
Filsai	0282
Finlandia	0346
Finlux	0171, 0282, 0320, 0339, 0341, 0342, 0349, 0350
FIRST LINE	0342, 0343, 0350
Firstline	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323
Fisher	0019, 0161, 0282, 0339, 0342, 0344, 0351
Flint	0320, 0350
Formenti	0171, 0277, 0336, 0339, 0342, 0349
Formenti/Phoenix	0277
Fortress	0336, 0339
Fraba	0161, 0320
Friac	0161
Frontech	0282, 0323, 0337, 0343, 0346, 0347
Fujitsu	0059, 0069, 0074, 0075, 0282
Fujitsu General	0282
Fujitsu Siemens	0504, 0505, 0507, 0510, 0511
Funai	0051, 0058, 0059, 0112, 0113, 0115, 0118, 0119, 0179, 0337
Futuretech	0058, 0179
Galaxi	0320, 0351
Galaxis	0161, 0320
Gateway	0176, 0177, 0241
GBC	0323, 0343, 0344
GE	0008, 0021, 0023, 0026, 0027, 0031, 0034, 0049, 0052, 0056, 0209
Geant Casino	0321
GEC	0282, 0320, 0342, 0347, 0349, 0350
Geloso	0323, 0343, 0346
General Technic	0323, 0343

Genexxa	0320, 0340, 0347, 0350
GFM	0128, 0227
Giant	0282
Gibralter	0008, 0030, 0050, 0062
GoldHand	0277
Goldline	0320
GoldStar	0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0031, 0050, 0053, 0161, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0346, 0349, 0350
Goodmans	0246, 0272, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0350, 0462, 0473, 0477
Gorenje	0161, 0351
GPM	0340
GPX	0129
Gradiente	0240
Graetz	0347
Granada	0171, 0282, 0320, 0321, 0342, 0344, 0346, 0349, 0350
Grandin	0340, 0343, 0348, 0349
Gronic	0282
Grundig	0160, 0161, 0171, 0310, 0320
Grunpy	0058, 0059, 0179
Haier	0157, 0233
Halifax	0277, 0282, 0337, 0342
Hallmark	0008, 0026, 0031
Hampton	0277, 0282, 0342
Hanseatic	0161, 0168, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0350
Hantarex	0320, 0323, 0343
Hantor	0320
Harman/Kardon	0010
Harvard	0058, 0179
Harwood	0320, 0323
Havermy	0178
HCM	0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343, 0348
Hema	0282, 0323
Hewlett Packard	0192
Higashi	0277
HiLine	0320
Hinari	0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0350
Hisawa	0321, 0340, 0348
Hisense	0247
Hitachi	0008, 0012, 0026, 0066, 0084, 0092, 0093, 0120, 0172, 0173, 0255, 0270, 0271, 0282, 0320, 0335, 0338, 0342, 0344, 0346, 0347, 0365, 0382, 0448, 0456, 0467
Hornyphon	0320, 0350
Hoshai	0340
Huanyu	0277, 0342
Hygashi	0277, 0282, 0342
Hyper	0277, 0282, 0323, 0342, 0343
Hypson	0282, 0320, 0321, 0337, 0342, 0348, 0349, 0350
Hyundai	0141
Iberia	0320
ICE	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0350
ICeS	0277
Ilo	0148, 0153
IMA	0058
Imperial	0161, 0171, 0320, 0347, 0350, 0351
Indiana	0320, 0349, 0350
Infinity	0010
InFocus	0250, 0327, 0363, 0479, 0508
Ingelen	0347
Ingersol	0323, 0343
Initial	0153
Inno Hit	0171, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
Innovation	0337, 0343
Insignia	0131, 0228, 0236, 0238
Inteq	0030
Interactive	0161
Interbuy	0323, 0343
Interfunk	0161, 0320, 0339, 0347, 0349, 0350
International	0277
Intervision	0161, 0282, 0320, 0337, 0341, 0342
Irradio	0171, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0349, 0350
Isukai	0320, 0340
ITC	0282, 0342
ITS	0277, 0320, 0340, 0348, 0350
ITT	0343, 0347
ITV	0320, 0343, 0349
Janeil	0057
JBL	0010
JC Penney	0007, 0008, 0026, 0027, 0049, 0053, 0056
JCB	0055, 0107
Jensen	0008, 0026
JVC	0012, 0014, 0015, 0056, 0064, 0065, 0067, 0169, 0174, 0297, 0314, 0344, 0350, 0375
Kaisui	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0348
Kamosonic	0342
Kamp	0277, 0342
Kapsch	0347
Karcher	0161, 0320, 0342, 0343, 0349
Kawasho	0008, 0026, 0055, 0277
KEC	0179
Kendo	0161, 0320, 0341, 0346
Kenwood	0008, 0026, 0050
KIC	0282
Kingsley	0277, 0342
KLH	0039
Kloss Novabeam	0057, 0058
Kneissel	0161, 0168, 0320
Kolster	0320, 0350
Konka	0340
Korpel	0320, 0349, 0350
Korting	0161, 0339
Kosmos	0320
Koyoda	0343
KTV	0007, 0050, 0058, 0179, 0183, 0282, 0342
Kyoto	0277, 0282
Lasat	0161
Lenco	0323, 0343
Lenoir	0323, 0342, 0343
Leyco	0320, 0337, 0349, 0350
LG	0031, 0053, 0066, 0116, 0117, 0140, 0161, 0164, 0175, 0195, 0269, 0277, 0282, 0300, 0309, 0317, 0320, 0323, 0328, 0342, 0343, 0346, 0349, 0350, 0366, 0368, 0377, 0466, 0471, 0478
LG/GoldStar	0164
Liesenk	0349
Liesenkotter	0320
Life	0337, 0343
Lifetec	0320, 0323, 0337, 0343
Lloyds	0323
Loewe	0161, 0168, 0265, 0320, 0330, 0352
Loewe Opta	0339, 0349, 0350
Logik	0054
Luma	0320, 0323, 0346, 0349
Lumatron	0282, 0320, 0346, 0349, 0350
Lux May	0350
Luxman	0008, 0026
Luxor	0282, 0342, 0346
LXI	0010, 0019, 0021, 0026, 0027, 0031, 0049, 0111
M Electronic	0342, 0343, 0345, 0347, 0349, 0350
MAG	0096
Magnadyne	0339, 0341, 0349
Magnafon	0171, 0277, 0341, 0342
Magnavox	0008, 0009, 0010, 0013, 0026, 0032, 0033, 0048, 0050, 0128, 0211, 0212, 0224, 0226, 0239
Magnum	0337, 0343
Majestic	0054
Mandor	0337
Manesth	0282, 0320, 0337, 0342, 0349, 0350
Marantz	0008, 0010, 0026, 0050, 0204, 0320, 0349, 0350
Marelli	0339
Mark	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0349, 0350
Masuda	0282
Matsui	0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0344, 0346, 0349, 0350, 0455
Matsushita	0017
Maxent	0147, 0176
Mediator	0320, 0349, 0350
Medion	0320, 0337, 0343
Megapower	0140
Megatron	0026, 0031
MElectronic	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323
Melvox	0321
Memorex	0019, 0026, 0031, 0053, 0054, 0137, 0215, 0323, 0343
Memphis	0323, 0343
Mercury	0320, 0323
Metz	0339
MGA	0008, 0026, 0031, 0050, 0053
Micromaxx	0337, 0343
Microstar	0337, 0343
Midland	0007, 0021, 0023, 0027, 0030, 0056, 0062
Minerva	0171
Minoka	0320, 0350
Mintek	0153
Mitsubishi	0008, 0026, 0031, 0053, 0066, 0084, 0093, 0098, 0150, 0178, 0289, 0320, 0339, 0344, 0350, 0376
Mivar	0161, 0168, 0171, 0277, 0282, 0342
Monivision	0140
Montgomery Ward	0054
Motion	0171
Motorola	0052, 0178
MTC	0008, 0026, 0050, 0053, 0161, 0277
Multi System	0349
Multitech	0058, 0161, 0179, 0183, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0341, 0342, 0343, 0344, 0346, 0349
Murphy	0277, 0342
NAD	0026, 0031, 0111
Naonis	0346
NEC	0008, 0026, 0050, 0052, 0053, 0072, 0103, 0282, 0344
Neckermann	0161, 0282, 0320, 0339, 0342, 0346, 0349, 0350, 0351
NEI	0320, 0349, 0350
Net-TV	0176
Neufunk	0320, 0323
New Tech	0343, 0350
New World	0340
NewTech	0282, 0320, 0323
Nicamagic	0277, 0342
Nikkai	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0349, 0350
Nikko	0026, 0031, 0050
Nobliko	0171, 0277, 0341, 0342
Nokia	0347
Norcent	0201
Nordic	0282
Nordmende	0339, 0345, 0347, 0350
Nordvision	0349
Novatronic	0320
Oceanic	0321, 0347
Okano	0161, 0320, 0351
Olevia	0102, 0199, 0200, 0207, 0222
ONCEAS	0342
Onwa	0058, 0179
Opera	0320
Oppo	0130
Optimus	0017, 0019
Optoma	0144
Optonica	0178
Orbit	0320, 0350
Orion	0043, 0146, 0283, 0320, 0323, 0328, 0343, 0349, 0350
Orline	0320
Osaki	0282, 0320, 0337, 0340, 0342
Oso	0340
Otto Versand	0282, 0320, 0336, 0342, 0344, 0348, 0349, 0350
Pael	0277, 0342
Palladium	0161, 0282, 0320, 0342, 0351
Palsonic	0282
Panama	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343
Panasonic	0016, 0017, 0020, 0022, 0023, 0035, 0052, 0056, 0084, 0085, 0133, 0163, 0193, 0284, 0286, 0290, 0292, 0320, 0325, 0347, 0356
Panavision	0320
Pathe Cinema	0161, 0168, 0277, 0321, 0342
Pausa	0323, 0343
Penney	0021, 0023, 0031, 0050, 0111
Perdio	0277, 0320
Perfekt	0320
Philco	0008, 0009, 0010, 0012, 0026, 0050, 0052, 0053, 0161, 0171, 0320, 0339
Philharmonic	0282, 0342
Philips	0008, 0009, 0010, 0011, 0012, 0032, 0048, 0049, 0052, 0122, 0128, 0134, 0186, 0187, 0213, 0221, 0224, 0226,

	0239, 0256, 0257, 0259, 0261, 0263, 0267, 0280, 0281, 0287, 0296, 0299, 0301, 0303, 0305, 0313, 0319, 0320, 0324, 0333, 0339, 0342, 0349, 0350, 0353, 0357, 0360, 0380, 0383, 0452, 0459, 0460
Philips Magnavox	0011, 0032, 0033
Phoenix	0161, 0277, 0320, 0339, 0349, 0350
Phonola	0277, 0320, 0339, 0349, 0350
Pilot	0007, 0008, 0050
Pioneer	0008, 0026, 0094, 0095, 0161, 0320, 0345, 0347, 0349, 0350, 0458
Plantron	0320, 0323, 0337, 0350
Playsonic	0282
Polaroid	0039, 0142, 0202, 0234
Poppy	0323, 0343
Portland	0007, 0008, 0026, 0053
Prandoni-Prince	0171, 0346
Precision	0282, 0342
Prima	0157, 0243, 0323, 0343, 0347
Princeton	0140
Prism	0023, 0056
Profex	0323, 0343
Profi-Tronic	0320, 0350
Proline	0320, 0350
Proscan	0021, 0027, 0049
Prosonic	0161, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0342, 0349
Protech	0282, 0337, 0341, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
Proton	0008, 0012, 0026, 0031
Protron	0196
PROVIEW	0096, 0246
Provision	0320, 0349
Pulsar	0008, 0030, 0062
Pye	0256, 0320, 0349, 0350, 0378
Pymi	0323, 0343
Quandra Vision	0321
Quasar	0017, 0023, 0052, 0056
Quelle	0282, 0320, 0337, 0342, 0349, 0350
Questa	0344
Radialva	0320
RadioShack	0019, 0021, 0031, 0050, 0179, 0320
RadioShack/Realistic	0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0049, 0058
Radiola	0282, 0320, 0349, 0350
Radiomarelli	0320, 0339
Radiotone	0161, 0320, 0323, 0350
Rank	0344
RCA	0008, 0021, 0024, 0025, 0026, 0027, 0042, 0049, 0052, 0053, 0063, 0136, 0225
Realistic	0019, 0031, 0050, 0179
Recor	0320
Redstar	0320
Reflex	0320
Revox	0161, 0320, 0349, 0350
Rex	0337, 0346, 0347
RFT	0161, 0168, 0339
Rhapsody	0277
R-Line	0320, 0349, 0350
Roadstar	0323, 0337, 0340, 0343
Robotron	0339
Rowa	0277, 0282
Royal Lux	0161
RTF	0339
Runco	0030, 0050, 0062
Saba	0298, 0322, 0339, 0345, 0347
Saisho	0282, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343
Salora	0346, 0347
Sambers	0171, 0341
Sampo	0007, 0008, 0026, 0050, 0176
Samsung	0004, 0005, 0006, 0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0031, 0036, 0050, 0053, 0076, 0077, 0079, 0114, 0124, 0125, 0126, 0127, 0139, 0161, 0183, 0185, 0190, 0191, 0258, 0264, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0334, 0337, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350, 0351, 0373, 0453, 0468
Sandra	0277, 0282, 0342
Sansui	0043, 0109, 0320, 0350
Sanyo	0008, 0019, 0068, 0070, 0071, 0099, 0161, 0168, 0223, 0237, 0277, 0282, 0288, 0295, 0323, 0342, 0344, 0369, 0469
SBR	0320, 0349
Sceptre	0235, 0244
Schaub Lorenz	0347
Schneider	0282, 0316, 0318, 0320, 0333, 0340, 0342, 0349, 0350, 0382
Scotch	0026, 0031
Scott	0008, 0012, 0026, 0031, 0058, 0059, 0149, 0179
Sears	0008, 0010, 0019, 0021, 0026, 0027, 0031, 0049, 0051, 0059, 0111
SEG	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0341, 0342, 0344, 0349, 0382
SEI	0320
SEI-Sinudyne	0339, 0341, 0347
Seleco	0344, 0346, 0347
Sencora	0323, 0343
Sentra	0323
Serino	0277
Sharp	0000, 0001, 0002, 0003, 0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0060, 0088, 0089, 0091, 0138, 0165, 0170, 0178, 0198, 0229, 0262, 0278, 0279, 0291, 0308, 0312, 0336, 0344, 0354, 0370, 0449, 0450, 0451, 0464, 0474, 0476
Sheng Chia	0178
Shogun	0008
Siarem	0320, 0339, 0341
Sierra	0320, 0350
Siesta	0161
Signature	0054
Silva	0277
Silver	0344
Singer	0321, 0339, 0341
Sinudyne	0320, 0339, 0341, 0349
Skantic	0347
Solavox	0347
Sonitron	0161, 0282
Sonoko	0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
Sonolor	0321, 0347
Sontec	0161, 0320, 0349, 0350
Sony	0038, 0044, 0045, 0047, 0055, 0104, 0105, 0107, 0110, 0123, 0184, 0220, 0248, 0249, 0251, 0252, 0254, 0326, 0343, 0344, 0371, 0374, 0457, 0475
Sound & Vision	0340, 0341
Soundesign	0008, 0026, 0031, 0058, 0059, 0179
Soundwave	0320, 0349, 0350
Squareview	0051
SSS	0008, 0058, 0179
Standard	0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0350
Starlite	0058, 0179, 0320, 0323, 0349
Stenway	0348
Stern	0346, 0347
Strato	0320, 0323
Stylandia	0282
Sunkai	0343
Sunstar	0320, 0323
Sunwood	0320, 0323, 0343, 0350
Superla	0277, 0282, 0342
Superscan	0013, 0178
SuperTech	0277, 0320, 0323
Supra	0323, 0343
Supre-Macy	0057
Supreme	0055, 0107
Susumu	0340
Sutron	0323, 0343
SVA	0151
Sydney	0277, 0282, 0342
Sylvania	0008, 0009, 0010, 0011, 0013, 0026, 0048, 0050, 0051, 0128, 0227, 0253
Symphonic	0051, 0058, 0062, 0128, 0179, 0215
Syntax	0199
Syntax-Brillian	0199
Sysline	0349
Sytong	0277
Tandy	0178, 0282, 0336, 0340, 0342, 0347
Tashiko	0277, 0282, 0342, 0344, 0346
Tatung	0052, 0177, 0282, 0320, 0342, 0349, 0350
TCM	0337, 0343
Teac	0282, 0320
Tec	0282, 0323, 0342, 0343
Technics	0017, 0023, 0056
TechniSat	0274, 0496, 0497, 0499
Techwood	0008, 0023, 0026, 0056
TEDELEX	0282
Teknika	0007, 0008, 0010, 0012, 0026, 0053, 0054, 0058, 0059, 0179
Teleavia	0345
Telecor	0282, 0320
Telefunken	0320, 0322, 0345, 0350
Telegazi	0320
Telemeister	0320
Telesonic	0320
Telestar	0320
Teletech	0320, 0323, 0343, 0349
Teleton	0282, 0342
Televideon	0277
Televiso	0321
Tensai	0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0350
Tesmet	0350
Tevion	0337, 0343
Texet	0277, 0282, 0323, 0342
Thomson	0162, 0188, 0189, 0285, 0320, 0322, 0342, 0345, 0350
Thorn	0320, 0349
TMK	0008, 0026, 0031
TNCi	0030
Tokai	0282, 0320, 0350
Tokyo	0277, 0342
Tomashi	0348
Toshiba	0018, 0019, 0040, 0041, 0046, 0073, 0100, 0103, 0108, 0109, 0111, 0121, 0132, 0166, 0208, 0210, 0214, 0217, 0260, 0268, 0282, 0283, 0293, 0304, 0306, 0307, 0329, 0344, 0355, 0454
Totevision	0007
Towada	0282, 0347
Trakton	0282
Trans Continens	0282, 0320
Transtec	0277
Trident	0282
Triumph	0320
Uher	0161, 0171, 0320, 0347, 0350
Ultravox	0277, 0320, 0339, 0341, 0342
Unic Line	0320
United	0349
Universum	0161, 0171, 0282, 0320, 0337, 0349, 0350, 0351
Univox	0320
Vector Research	0050
Vestel	0282, 0320, 0346, 0347, 0349, 0350, 0351
Vexa	0320, 0323, 0343, 0349
Victor	0015, 0344, 0350
VIDEOLOGIC	0277
Videologique	0277, 0282, 0340, 0342
VideoSystem	0320, 0350
Videotechnic	0277, 0282
Vidikron	0010
Vidtech	0008, 0026, 0031, 0053
Viewsonic	0176, 0203, 0232, 0364
Viking	0057
Viore	0148
Visiola	0277, 0342
Vision	0282, 0320, 0350
Vizio	0008, 0177, 0218, 0242, 0500, 0501, 0502, 0503, 0506
Vortec	0320, 0349, 0350
Voxson	0171, 0320, 0339, 0346, 0347, 0350
Waltham	0282, 0320, 0342
Wards	0008, 0009, 0010, 0026, 0031, 0048, 0049, 0050, 0053, 0054, 0059
Watson	0320, 0349, 0350
Watt Radio	0277, 0341, 0342
Waycon	0111
Wega	0320, 0339, 0344
Wegavox	0323
Weltblick	0282, 0320, 0349, 0350
Westinghouse	0107, 0216, 0220
White Westinghouse	0037, 0090, 0277, 0320, 0341, 0342, 0349
Wincom	0101, 0106
Xrypton	0320

Yamaha	0008, 0026, 0050, 0053, 0080, 0081, 0082, 0083, 0086, 0087
Yamishi	0282, 0320
Yokan	0320
Yoko	0161, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
Yorx	0340
Zanussi	0282, 0346
Zenith	0008, 0028, 0029, 0030, 0031, 0054, 0061, 0062

VCR

ABS	1016
Adventura	1069
Adyson	1008
Aiwa	1024, 1026, 1027, 1069
Akai	1021, 1027
Akiba	1008, 1029
Akura	1008, 1027, 1029
Alba	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1029, 1030
Alienware	1016
Ambassador	1030
American High	1068
Amstrad	1008, 1009, 1026
Anitech	1008, 1029
Apex	1088
ASA	1028, 1031
Asha	1070
Asuka	1008, 1026, 1028, 1029, 1031
Audio Dynamics	1064
Audiosonic	1009
Audiovox	1071
Baird	1009, 1025, 1026, 1027
Bang & Olufsen	1017
Basic Line	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1029, 1030
Baur	1028
Beaumark	1070
Bell & Howell	1065
Bestar	1009, 1025, 1030
Black Panther Line	1009, 1025
Blaupunkt	1028
Bondstec	1008, 1030
Broksonic	1100
Bush	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1029, 1049, 1051, 1063, 1217
Calix	1071
Candle	1070, 1071
Canon	1068
Cathay	1009
Catron	1030
CGE	1026, 1027
Cimline	1008, 1024, 1029
CineVision	1104
Citizen	1070, 1071
Clatronic	1008, 1030
Colortyme	1064
Condor	1009, 1025, 1030
Craig	1070, 1071
Crown	1008, 1009, 1025, 1029, 1030
Curtis Mathes	1064, 1068, 1070
Cybernex	1070
CyberPower	1016
Daewoo	1009, 1025, 1030, 1038, 1069, 1223
Dansai	1008, 1009, 1029
Dantax	1024
Daytron	1009, 1025
DBX	1064
De Graaf	1028
Decca	1026, 1027, 1028
Dell	1016
Denko	1008
DiamondVision	1096
DigiFusion	1014
DIRECTV	1019, 1105, 1110, 1111, 1113, 1116, 1122
Dish Network	1018
Dishpro	1018
Dual	1009, 1027, 1028
Dumont	1026, 1028
Durabrand	1114
Dynatech	1069
Echostar	1018
Elbe	1009
Elcatech	1008
Electrohome	1071
Electrophonic	1071
Elsay	1008
Elta	1008, 1009, 1029
Emerson	1008, 1020, 1068, 1069, 1071
ESC	1009, 1025
Etzuko	1008, 1029
Expressvu	1018
Ferguson	1027
Fidelity	1008, 1026
Finlandia	1028
Finlux	1026, 1027, 1028
Firstline	1008, 1024, 1029, 1031
Fisher	1065
Flint	1024
Formenti/Phoenix	1028
Frontech	1030
Fuji	1068
Fujitsu	1026
Funai	1026, 1069
Galaxy	1026
Garrard	1069
Gateway	1016
GBC	1029, 1030
GE	1068, 1070
GEC	1028
Geloso	1029
General	1030
General Technic	1024
GOI	1018
GoldHand	1008, 1029
Goldstar	1026, 1031, 1064, 1071
Goodmans	1008, 1009, 1025, 1026, 1029, 1030, 1031
Gradiente	1069
Graetz	1027
Granada	1028
Grandin	1008, 1009, 1025, 1026, 1029, 1030, 1031
Grundig	1028, 1029
Hanseatic	1009, 1028, 1031
Harley Davidson	1069
Harman/Kardon	1064
Harwood	1008
HCM	1008, 1029
Headquarter	1065
Hewlett Packard	1016
Hinari	1008, 1009, 1024, 1029
Hisawa	1024
Hitachi	1011, 1026, 1027, 1028, 1046, 1062
HNS	1110
Howard Computers	1016
HP	1016
HTS	1018
Hughes	1111, 1113, 1122
Hughes Network Systems	1110, 1116
Humax	1012, 1110, 1113
Hush	1016
Hypson	1008, 1009, 1024, 1029
iBUYPOWER	1016
Impego	1030
Imperial	1026
Inno Hit	1008, 1009, 1025, 1028, 1029, 1030
Innovation	1024
Instant Replay	1068
Interbuy	1008, 1031
Interfunk	1028
Intervision	1009, 1026
Irradio	1008, 1029, 1031
ITT	1027
ITV	1009, 1025, 1031
JC Penney	1064, 1065, 1068, 1070, 1071
JCL	1068
JVC	1007, 1018, 1027, 1039, 1064, 1065, 1066, 1067, 1078, 1089, 1092, 1093, 1094, 1095, 1113, 1208, 1209, 1212, 1213, 1215, 1218
Kaisui	1008, 1029
Karcher	1028
Kendo	1008, 1024, 1025, 1030
Kenwood	1027, 1064, 1065
Kodak	1068, 1071
Korpel	1008, 1029
Kyoto	1008
Lenco	1025
Leyco	1008, 1029
LG	1010, 1026, 1031, 1047, 1054, 1056, 1071, 1103, 1221
Lifetec	1024
Linksys	1016
Lloyd's	1069
Loewe Opta	1028, 1031
Logik	1008, 1029
Lumatron	1009, 1025
Luxor	1008
LXI	1071
M Electronic	1026
Magnavox	1020, 1068, 1114, 1126
Magnin	1071
Manesth	1008, 1029
Marantz	1028, 1064, 1065, 1068
Mark	1009
Marta	1071
Matsui	1024, 1031
Matsushita	1068
Media Center PC	1016
Mediator	1028
Medion	1024
MEI	1068
Memorex	1023, 1026, 1031, 1065, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071, 1098, 1114
Memphis	1008, 1029
MGN Technology	1070
Micromaxx	1024
Microsoft	1016
Microstar	1024
Migros	1026
Mind	1016
Mitsubishi	1026, 1028, 1079
Motorola	1068
MTC	1070
Multitech	1008, 1026, 1028, 1029, 1030, 1069, 1070
Murphy	1026
NEC	1027, 1064, 1065
Neckermann	1027, 1028
NEI	1028
Nesco	1008, 1029
Nikkai	1008, 1009, 1030
Nikko	1071
Niveus Media	1016
Noblex	1070
Nokia	1009, 1027
Nordmende	1027
Northgate	1016
Oceanic	1026, 1027
Okano	1008, 1009, 1024
Olympus	1068
Optimus	1071
Orion	1023, 1024, 1051, 1115, 1217
Orson	1026
Osaki	1008, 1026, 1029, 1031
Otto Versand	1028
Palladium	1008, 1027, 1029, 1031
Panasonic	1000, 1022, 1044, 1055, 1068, 1072, 1085, 1090, 1091, 1120, 1121, 1214
Pathe Marconi	1027
Perdio	1026
Philco	1008, 1068
Philips	1006, 1013, 1028, 1035, 1040, 1045, 1046, 1050, 1058, 1059, 1061, 1068, 1076, 1101, 1110, 1113, 1116, 1117, 1122, 1126, 1210, 1211
Philips Magnavox	1076
Phonola	1028
Pilot	1071
Pioneer	1028, 1036
Polaroid	1088, 1099
Portland	1009, 1025, 1030
Prinz	1026
Profex	1029
Proline	1026
Proscan	1019
Prosonic	1009, 1024
Pulsar	1114
Pye	1028, 1102
Quarter	1065
Quartz	1065
Quasar	1068
Quelle	1026, 1028
Radialva	1008
RadioShack	1071
RadioShack/Realistic	1065, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071
Radiola	1028
Radix	1071
Randex	1071
RCA	1019, 1068, 1070, 1075, 1110, 1113, 1122, 1125
Realistic	1065, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071
ReplayTV	1022, 1123
Rex	1027
RFT	1008, 1028, 1030
Ricavision	1016
Roadstar	1008, 1009, 1025, 1029, 1031
Royal	1008
Runco	1114
Saba	1027
Saisho	1024, 1029
Samsung	1002, 1034, 1041, 1043, 1057, 1060, 1070, 1084, 1110, 1116, 1122, 1124, 1220, 1222
Samurai	1008, 1030
Sanky	1114
Sansui	1023, 1027, 1106, 1115
Sanyo	1032, 1065, 1070
Saville	1009
SBR	1028
Schaub Lorenz	1026, 1027
Schneider	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1028, 1029, 1030, 1031
Sears	1065, 1068, 1071
SEG	1008, 1009, 1029
SEI-Sinudyne	1028
Seleco	1027
Sentra	1008, 1030
Sentron	1008, 1029
Sharp	1003, 1033, 1077, 1107, 1127, 1219
Shintom	1008, 1029
Shivaki	1031
Shogun	1070
Siemens	1031
Silva	1031
Silver	1009
Singer	1068

Sinudyne 1028
Solavox 1030
Sonic Blue 1022, 1123
Sonneclair 1008
Sonoko 1009, 1025
Sontec 1031
Sony 1001, 1016, 1048, 1053, 1073, 1074, 1080, 1081, 1082, 1083, 1108, 1118, 1216
Stack 1016
Stack 9 1016
Standard 1009, 1025
Stern 1009
STS 1068
Sunkai 1024
Sunstar 1026
Suntronic 1026
Sunwood 1008, 1029
Superscan 1020
Sylvania 1020, 1068, 1069, 1102, 1126
Symphonic 1008, 1069, 1126
Systemax 1016
Tagar Systems 1016
Taisho 1024
Tandberg 1009
Tandy 1065
Tashiko 1026, 1071
Tatung 1026, 1027, 1028
TCM 1015, 1024, 1042
Teac 1009, 1069
Tec 1008, 1009, 1030
Technics 1068
Teknika 1068, 1069, 1071
Teleavia 1027
Telefunken 1027
Teletech 1008, 1009
Tenosal 1008, 1029
Tensai 1008, 1026, 1029, 1031
Tevion 1024
Thomson 1005, 1027
Thorn 1027
Tivo 1108, 1110, 1111, 1113, 1117, 1118, 1119, 1122
TMK 1070
Tokai 1008, 1029, 1031
Tonsai 1029
Toshiba 1004, 1016, 1027, 1028, 1037, 1049, 1052, 1086, 1087, 1097, 1109, 1112, 1194
Totevision 1070, 1071
Touch 1016
Towada 1008, 1029
Towika 1008, 1029
TVA 1030
Uher 1031
UltimateTV 1019
Ultravox 1009
Unitech 1070
United Quick Star 1009, 1025
Universum 1026, 1028, 1031
Vector Research 1064
Video Concepts 1064
Videon 1024
Videosonic 1070
Viewsonic 1016
Voodoo 1016
Wards 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071
Weltblick 1031
XR-1000 1068, 1069
Yamaha 1064, 1065
Yamishi 1008, 1029
Yokan 1008, 1029
Yoko 1008, 1029, 1030, 1031
Zenith 1114
ZT Group 1016

DVD

4Kus 2051
Accurian 2142
Advent 2155, 2251
AEG 2362
Airis 2364
Aiwa 2322
Akai 2145, 2177, 2179, 2248
Akura 2356
Alba 2064, 2165, 2186, 2337, 2346
Alco 2149
Alize 2361
Allegro 2133
Amitech 2362
Amphion MediaWorks 2195
AMW 2195, 2363
Apex 2030, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2130, 2131
Apple 2241
Arrgo 2138
Asono 2364
Aspire 2152, 2222
Astar 2240
ATACOM 2364
Audiovox 2061, 2149
Avious 2367
Awa 2363
Axion 2249
Bang & Olufsen 2128
Baze 2367
BBK 2364
Bellagio 2363
Best Buy 2359
Blaupunkt 2131
Blue Parade 2157
Boghe 2382
Brainwave 2362
Brandt 2148, 2188
Broksonic 2145, 2146
Bush 2064, 2110, 2170, 2268, 2290, 2346, 2358, 2367, 2383
California Audio Labs 2151
Cambridge Audio 2354
CAT 2352, 2353
CAVS 2192
Centrum 2353
CGV 2354, 2362
Changhong 2140
Cinetec 2363
CineVision 2133, 2237
Clatronic 2358, 2367
Coby 2031, 2046, 2360
Conia 2383
Continental Edison 2363
Crown 2362
C-Tech 2355
Curtis Mathes 2139
CVG 2377
CyberHome 2022, 2098, 2138, 2187, 2336
Cytron 2244
Daenyx 2363
Daewoo 2001, 2133, 2276, 2298, 2330, 2362, 2363, 2377
Daewoo International 2363
Dalton 2357
Dansai 2362, 2381
Daytek 2184, 2195, 2363
Dayton 2363
DEC 2358
Decca 2362
Denon 2059, 2151, 2193, 2332
Denver 2356, 2358, 2360, 2370
Denzel 2380
Desay 2205
Diamond 2354, 2355
DiamondVision 2225, 2232
Disney 2010, 2028
DK Digital 2339
Dmtech 2176
Dual 2380
Durabrand 2136
DVX 2355
Easy Home 2359
Eclipse 2354
E-Dem 2364
Electrohome 2362
Elin 2362
Elta 2341, 2361, 2362
Emerson 2129, 2137, 2150
Enterprise 2129
Enzer 2380
Epson 2247
ESA 2137
Finlux 2354, 2362, 2367
Fintec 2377
Fisher 2134
Funai 2137
Gateway 2051
GE 2029, 2131, 2156
Gericom 2351
GFM 2226
Giec 2382
Global Solutions 2355
Global Sphere 2355
Go Video 2133, 2213
Goodmans 2165, 2280, 2291, 2358, 2371, 2376, 2382
GPX 2227
Gradiente 2151
Graetz 2380
Greenhill 2131
Grundig 2349
Grunkel 2362, 2366
GVG 2377
H&B 2358
H_her 2364
Haaz 2354, 2355
Haier 2254
Harman/Kardon 2047, 2135
HiMAX 2359
Hitachi 2062, 2090, 2115, 2274, 2282, 2316, 2359, 2380
Hiteker 2130
Home Tech Industries 2364
Hyundai 2366
Ilo 2245
Initial 2131, 2245
Innovation 2182
Insignia 2002, 2137, 2253
Integra 2157
Irradio 2053
iSymphony 2246
JBL 2135
JVC 2020, 2096, 2097, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2106, 2107, 2160, 2257, 2260, 2262, 2263, 2321, 2324, 2326, 2327, 2343, 2464, 2465, 2468, 2469, 2471
Jwin 2198
Kansai 2360
Kawasaki 2149
Kennex 2362
Kenwood 2041, 2151, 2348
KeyPlug 2362
Kiiro 2362
Kingavon 2358
Kiss 2380
KLH 2131, 2149
Koda 2358
Koss 2013, 2148, 2158
KXD 2359
Landel 2143
Lasonic 2132
Lawson 2355
Lecson 2381
Lenco 2358, 2362, 2367
Lenoxx 2136, 2153
LG 2002, 2033, 2038, 2057, 2129, 2133, 2189, 2191, 2223, 2238, 2270, 2288, 2335, 2373, 2375
Life 2182
Lifetec 2182
Limit 2355
Liquid Video 2158
Liteon 2043, 2051, 2142
Loewe 2320
LogicLab 2355
Magnavox 2025, 2050, 2137, 2150, 2159, 2224, 2230, 2358
Magnex 2367
Majestic 2360
Marantz 2328
Marquant 2362
Matsui 2148, 2378
McIntosh 2199
Mecotek 2362
Medion 2182
Memorex 2028, 2145, 2234
MiCO 2354, 2382
Micromaxx 2182
Microsoft 2156
Microstar 2182
Minoka 2362
Minowa 2367
Mintek 2131, 2245
Mitsubishi 2003
Mizuda 2358, 2359
Monyka 2380
Mustek 2186
Mx Onda 2354
Mystral 2366
Naiko 2362
Nesa 2131
Neufunk 2380
Nevir 2362
Next Base 2143
Nexxtech 2243
NU-TEC 2383
Onkyo 2159, 2368
Oopla 2051
Oppo 2196, 2255
Optim 2381
Optimus 2180
Orava 2358
Orbit 2363
Orion 2073, 2110
Oritron 2148, 2158
P&B 2358
Pacific 2355
Panasonic 2011, 2024, 2034, 2042, 2058, 2062, 2066, 2067, 2093, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2151, 2159, 2164, 2166, 2167, 2172, 2173, 2175, 2209, 2214, 2275, 2277, 2278, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2301, 2374, 2470
Parasound 2197
peeKTON 2364
Philips 2008, 2012, 2025, 2044, 2050, 2051, 2053, 2060, 2072, 2108, 2111, 2147, 2159, 2163, 2169, 2174, 2181, 2185, 2230, 2261, 2266, 2267, 2286, 2287, 2289, 2295, 2300, 2302, 2317, 2328, 2338, 2342, 2350, 2467
Phonotrend 2367
Pioneer 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2035, 2092, 2094, 2095, 2109, 2157, 2180, 2190, 2212, 2269, 2272, 2299, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308,

	2309, 2310, 2311, 2344, 2345, 2347, 2379
Pointer	2362
Polaroid	2125, 2215, 2235
Portland	2362
Powerpoint	2363
Prima	2252
Proceed	2130
Proscan	2156
Prosonic	2360, 2377
Protron	2202
Provision	2358
Pye	2144
Qwestar	2148
Raite	2380
RCA	2021, 2029, 2104, 2105, 2131, 2149, 2156, 2157, 2229
RedStar	2356, 2360, 2362
Regent	2153
Reoc	2355
Rimax	2361
Rio	2133
Roadstar	2331, 2358
Ronin	2363
Rotel	2203
Rowa	2154, 2383
Rownsonic	2353
Saba	2148, 2188
Sabaki	2355
Saivod	2362
Sampo	2141
Samsung	2000, 2045, 2077, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2151, 2200, 2216, 2219, 2228, 2264, 2265, 2271, 2279, 2294, 2303, 2329, 2365
Sansui	2073, 2145, 2354, 2355, 2362
Sanyo	2134, 2145, 2217, 2292
ScanMagic	2186
Schaub Lorenz	2362
Schneider	2176
Scientific Labs	2355
Scott	2161, 2357
Seeltech	2364
SEG	2162, 2355, 2363, 2380
Sharp	2006, 2040, 2088, 2091, 2182, 2194, 2220, 2221, 2231, 2236, 2293, 2340
Shinsonic	2245
Sigmatek	2359, 2364
Silva	2356
Singer	2354, 2355
Skymaster	2325, 2355
Skyworth	2356
Slim Art	2362
SM Electronic	2355
Sonic Blue	2133
Sontech	2366
Sony	2004, 2005, 2007, 2009, 2014, 2015, 2023, 2026, 2027, 2052, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2074, 2075, 2084, 2085, 2087, 2168, 2171, 2208, 2210, 2211, 2258, 2273, 2284, 2285, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2318, 2319, 2466
Soundmaster	2355
Soundmax	2355
Spectra	2363
Spectroniq	2201
Standard	2355
Star Cluster	2355
Starmedia	2358, 2364
Sungale	2204
Sunkai	2362
Superscan	2150
Supervision	2355
Sylvania	2012, 2137, 2150, 2178, 2230, 2239
Symphonic	2108, 2230
Synn	2355
T.D.E. Systems	2366
Tatung	2001, 2362
TCM	2182, 2297
Teac	2149, 2333, 2355, 2383
Tec	2356
Technics	2151
Technika	2362, 2367
Telefunken	2353
Tensai	2362
Tevion	2182, 2355, 2357
Theta Digital	2157
Thomson	2183, 2188, 2334, 2372
Tokai	2356, 2380
Top Suxess	2364
Toshiba	2032, 2036, 2037, 2039, 2048, 2049, 2054, 2055, 2072, 2073, 2076, 2078, 2079, 2086, 2145, 2159, 2218, 2233, 2256, 2259, 2296, 2369
TRANScontinents	2363, 2367
Transonic	2367
Trio	2362
Trutech	2242
TruVision	2359
TSM	2364
Umax	2361
United	2367
Urban Concepts	2159
US Logic	2245
Venturer	2149
Viewmaster	2364
Vocopro	2206
VocoStar	2207
Waitec	2364
Welltech	2382
Westinghouse	2063, 2250
Wharfedale	2354, 2355
Woxter	2361, 2364
Xbox	2156, 2183
Xlogic	2355, 2362
XMS	2362
Xoro	2382
Yamada	2051, 2361, 2363
Yamaha	2056, 2064, 2065, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2089, 2118, 2151, 2323
Yamakawa	2363, 2380
Yukai	2186
Zenith	2002, 2129, 2133, 2159, 2223

Blu-ray Disc

Denon	2452, 2500, 2501
Hitachi	2460, 2461, 2463
JVC	2472, 2473, 2475, 2478, 2496, 2499
LG	2033, 2456, 2457
Marantz (US)	2454, 2455
Mitsubishi	2450, 2451
Onkyo	2504
Panasonic	2011, 2209, 2214, 2476, 2477, 2479
Philips	2510
Pioneer	2212, 2506
Samsung	2045, 2113, 2498
Sharp	2194, 2220, 2221, 2497, 2502, 2503
Sony	2075, 2453, 2458, 2459, 2507
Toshiba	2462
Yamaha	2064, 2448, 2449, 2474, 2505

DVR

Bush	2110
Hitachi	2090
Panasonic	2066, 2067, 2093, 2116, 2117, 2119, 2120, 2122, 2123
Philips	2108, 2111
Pioneer	2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2092, 2094, 2095, 2109
RCA	2105
Samsung	2113, 2219
Sharp	2088, 2091
Sony	2084, 2085, 2087
Toshiba	2086
Yamaha	2089, 2118

DVD Recorder

Aspire	2222
Astar	2240
Broksonic	2146
Go Video	2213
Hitachi	2062
Insignia	2002
Irradio	2053
JVC	2100, 2101, 2106, 2107
LG	2033, 2057, 2223, 2238
Liteon	2043
Panasonic	2011, 2034, 2058, 2062, 2116, 2117, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2123
Philips	2008, 2044, 2050, 2051, 2147
Pioneer	2017, 2035
Pye	2144
Samsung	2000, 2112, 2216
Sansui	2073
Sanyo	2217
Sony	2004, 2005, 2007, 2052, 2068, 2069, 2074, 2208, 2210, 2211
Sylvania	2239
Toshiba	2032, 2036, 2037, 2039, 2049, 2054, 2055, 2076
Yamaha	2056

Cable

ABC	3002, 3003, 3017, 3066, 3067, 3086, 3093, 3119, 3122
ADB	3020
Adelphia	3081
Alcatel	3016
Americast	3124
Amstrad	3022, 3098
Antronix	3065, 3070
Archer	3070
Arcon	3098
AT&T	3095
Axis	3098
Bell South	3124
Cable Vision	3092
Cabletenna	3065
Cabletime	3104
Cableview	3087
Clearmaster	3127
ClearMax	3127
Clyde Cablevision	3105
Colour Voice	3068
Comcast	3084, 3088, 3117
Comcrypt	3107
Comtronics	3069
Contec	3074
Coolmax	3127
COX	3084
Cryptovision	3110
Director	3084
Eastern	3075
Everquest	3123
Fidelity	3098
Filmnet	3107
Filmnet Cablecrypt	3111
Filmnet Comcrypt	3111
Finlux	3097
Focus	3126
Foxtel	3022
France Telecom	3100, 3101
Freebox	3023
GC Electronics	3070
GE	3066, 3093
GEC	3105
Gemini	3072, 3123
General Instrument	3017, 3025, 3066, 3084, 3090, 3096, 3117
Goldstar	3120
Gooding	3099
Grundig	3098, 3099
Hamlin	3073, 3078
Hirschmann	3097
Hitachi	3066
HomeChoice	3106
Humax	3021, 3080, 3083
ITT Nokia	3097
Jasco	3123
Jerrold	3017, 3018, 3025, 3066, 3072, 3084, 3090, 3096, 3119, 3123
JVC	3099
Kabel Deutschland	3024, 3027, 3121
Macab	3101
Magnavox	3079
Maspro	3099
Matsui	3099
MegaCable	3117
Memorex	3076, 3122
Minerva	3099
Mnet	3107
Motorola	3025, 3026, 3084, 3088, 3090, 3095, 3117
Movie Time	3077, 3109
Mr Zapp	3101
Multichoice	3107
Multitech	3127
NEC	3064
NET Brazil	3085
Nokia	3097
Noos	3101
NSC	3077
Oak	3074
Pace	3006, 3089, 3121
Palladium	3099
Panasonic	3112, 3118, 3122
Paragon	3122
Philips	3068, 3071, 3079, 3099, 3100, 3101, 3103
Pioneer	3001, 3006, 3094, 3098, 3114, 3116, 3120
Popular Mechanics	3126
Proscan	3066, 3093
Pulsar	3122
PVP Stereo Visual Matrix	3018
Quasar	3122
RadioShack	3123, 3127
RCA	3030, 3031, 3087, 3118
Realistic	3070
Recoton	3126
Regal	3078
Regency	3075
Rembrandt	3066
Runco	3122
Sagem	3101
Samsung	3069, 3089, 3114, 3120
SAT	3098
Scientific Atlanta	3000, 3001, 3002, 3003, 3006, 3028, 3029, 3081, 3086, 3089, 3094, 3095, 3108
Signal	3072, 3123

Signature	3066
Sony	3092, 3125
Sprucer	3118
Standard Component	3115
Starcom	3017, 3072, 3119, 3123
Stargate	3072, 3123
Starquest	3072, 3123
Supercable	3090
Supermax	3127
Tele+1	3107, 3111
Telepiu	3107
Thomson	3082, 3091
TIME WARNER	3084
Tocom	3067
Torx	3017
Toshiba	3122
Tristar	3127
Tudi	3102
Tusa	3072, 3123
TV86	3077
Unika	3065, 3070
United Cable	3018, 3119
Universal	3065, 3070
Universum	3097, 3099
V2	3127
Videoway	3019
View Star	3074, 3077, 3079
Viewmaster	3127
Vision	3127
Visiopass	3097, 3100, 3101
Vortex View	3127
Wittenberg	3098
Zenith	3113, 3122, 3124
Zentek	3126
Verizon Fios	3007

Satellite

AB Sat	4216, 4217
AccessHD	4104
ADB	4220
AGS	4216
Akai	4053, 4055
Alba	4001, 4004, 4006, 4007, 4062, 4217
Aldes	4005, 4007, 4010
Allsat	4048, 4053, 4055
Allsonic	4005, 4008, 4024
Alltech	4217
Alpha	4053
Alpha Digital	4104
Alphastar	4077
Amitronica	4217
Amstrad	4011, 4035, 4217, 4218
Anglo	4217
Ankaro	4005, 4008, 4024, 4217
Anttron	4001, 4004
Apollo	4001
Armstrong	4011, 4053
Artec	4100
Asat	4053, 4055
ASLF	4217
Astacom	4216
Astra	4009, 4011, 4054, 4217, 4219
Astro	4004, 4008, 4010, 4015, 4024, 4213, 4218, 4219
AudioTon	4004, 4048
Aurora	4222
Austar	4222
Axiel	4216
Axis	4008, 4009, 4024, 4050
Best	4008, 4024
Blaupunkt	4015
Blue Sky	4217
Boca	4011, 4054, 4059, 4217
Boston	4216
Brain Wave	4013
Broadcast	4012
Broco	4217
BSkyB	4035, 4041
BT	4216
Bubu Sat	4217
Bush	4006, 4045
Cambridge	4218
Canal Satellite	4213
Canal+	4213
CaptiveWorks	4099
Channel Master	4007, 4110
Chaparral	4075
CHEROKEE	4216
Chess	4212, 4217
CityCom	4006, 4215, 4219
Clatronic	4013
CNT	4010
Comag	4080, 4081, 4082, 4083, 4086
Commlink	4005
Comtech	4050
Condor	4008, 4024, 4219
Connexions	4014, 4024
Conrad	4024, 4215, 4218, 4219
Conrad Electronic	4217, 4219
Contec	4050
Coolsat	4096
Cosat	4048
Coship	4109
Crown	4011
Daeryung	4014
Daewoo	4057, 4217
DDC	4007
Delega	4007
Dew	4050
Diamond	4051
Digiality	4219
Digital Stream	4105
DIRECTV	4056, 4064, 4067, 4068, 4070, 4071, 4074, 4107, 4116, 4119, 4121, 4122, 4123, 4127, 4192, 4193, 4194, 4195, 4196, 4197, 4198, 4199, 4200, 4201, 4202, 4203, 4206, 4207, 4221
Discoverer	4212
Discovery	4216
Diseqc	4216
Dish Network	4018, 4065, 4089, 4092, 4094, 4095, 4117
Dishpro	4018, 4117
Distrisat	4053
Ditristrad	4048
DNT	4014, 4053, 4055
Drake	4072
DStv	4222
Dune	4024
Echostar	4014, 4018, 4065, 4089, 4117, 4217
Einhell	4001, 4005, 4011, 4217, 4218
Elap	4216, 4217
Elekta	4010
Elsat	4217
Elta	4001, 4008, 4024, 4048, 4053, 4055
Emanon	4001
Emme Esse	4008, 4024
Engel	4217
Ep Sat	4006
EURIEULT	4031
Eurodec	4052
Europa	4053, 4218, 4219
Europhon	4219
Eurosat	4011
Eurosky	4008, 4011, 4024, 4215, 4218, 4219
Eurostar	4011, 4215, 4219
Eutelsat	4217
Exator	4001, 4004
Expressvu	4117
Fenner	4024, 4212, 4217
Ferguson	4006, 4052, 4214
Fidelity	4218
Finlandia	4006
Finlux	4006
FinnSat	4050, 4052
Flair Mate	4217
Foxtel	4222
Freecom	4001, 4049, 4218
FTEmaximal	4024, 4217
Fuba	4001, 4008, 4014, 4015, 4024, 4055, 4215
Galaxis	4005, 4008, 4009, 4024, 4048, 4050, 4215, 4222
GE	4066, 4093, 4111, 4197
General Instrument	4019, 4073
GMI	4011
GOI	4117
Goldbox	4213
GoldStar	4049
Goodmans	4002, 4006, 4029
Goodmind	4111
Grandin	4031
Grothusen	4001, 4049
Grundig	4004, 4006, 4015, 4035, 4211, 4218, 4222
Hänsel & Gretel	4219
Hantor	4001, 4013
Hanuri	4010
Hauppauge	4044
Heliocom	4219
Helium	4219
Hinari	4007
Hirschmann	4015, 4024, 4210, 4216, 4218, 4219
Hisawa	4013
Hisense	4016
Hitachi	4006, 4114, 4199, 4203
Homecast	4084, 4085, 4087
Houston	4048
HTS	4117
Hughes	4064, 4068, 4192, 4194, 4196, 4202
Hughes Network Systems	4071
Humax	4025, 4030, 4060, 4097
Huth	4005, 4011, 4012, 4013, 4048, 4050, 4219, 4223
Hypson	4031
Ilo	4016
Imex	4031
Innovation	4008
Insignia	4107
Intertronic	4011
Intervision	4048, 4219
ITT Nokia	4006
Jerrold	4019
Johansson	4013
JOK	4216
JSR	4048
JVC	4029, 4065, 4089, 4117
Kamm	4217
Kathrein	4015, 4034, 4042, 4053, 4055, 4063, 4215, 4216, 4217
Kathrein Eurostar	4215
Klap	4216
Konig	4219
Kosmos	4049
KR	4004
Kreiselmeyer	4015
K-SAT	4217
Kyostar	4001
L&S Electronic	4024
Lasat	4008, 4010, 4024, 4054, 4212, 4215, 4219
Lasonic	4108
Lenco	4001, 4024, 4049, 4215, 4217, 4219
Leng	4013
Lennox	4048
Lenson	4218
Lexus	4053
LG	4049, 4103, 4107
Lifesat	4008, 4024, 4212, 4217
Lifetec	4008
Lorenzen	4219
Lorraine	4049
Lupus	4008, 4024
Luxor	4218
Lyonnaise	4052
Macab	4052
Magnavox	4101, 4127
Manata	4031, 4216, 4217
Manhattan	4006, 4010, 4048, 4216
Marantz	4055
Mascom	4010
Maspro	4006, 4217
Matsui	4216
Max	4219
Mediabox	4213
Mediamarkt	4011
Mediasat	4009, 4213, 4218
Medion	4008, 4024, 4217
Medison	4217
Mega	4053, 4055
Memorex	4127
Metronic	4001, 4004, 4005, 4010, 4028, 4031, 4217
Metz	4015
Micro electronic	4217, 4218, 4219
Micro Technology	4217
MicroGem	4106
Micromaxx	4008, 4024
Microstar	4008
Microtec	4217
Minerva	4015
Mitsubishi	4006, 4015, 4202
Mitsumi	4054
Morgan's	4011, 4053, 4054, 4055, 4217
Motorola	4019, 4088, 4090, 4091
Multichoice	4222
Multitec	4212
Muratto	4049
Mysat	4217
Navex	4013
Neuhaus	4009, 4048, 4217, 4218, 4219
Neusat	4217
Next Level	4019
NextWave	4223
Nikko	4011, 4217
Nokia	4006, 4040
Nordmende	4001, 4006, 4007, 4010, 4052
Nova	4222
Novis	4013
Oceanic	4051
Octagon	4001, 4004, 4050
Okano	4011
Optex	4048
Optus	4213, 4222, 4223
Orbitech	4001, 4212, 4213, 4218
OSat	4004
Otto Versand	4015
Pace	4006, 4015, 4035, 4043, 4047, 4216
Pacific	4051
Packsat	4216
Palcom	4007
Palladium	4011, 4218
Palsat	4212, 4218
Panasat	4222
Panasonic	4006, 4035, 4036, 4121, 4124, 4126, 4198, 4221
Panda	4006, 4219
Pansat	4125
Patriot	4216
Paysat	4127
PCT	4110
Philco	4101
Philips	4006, 4033, 4053, 4055, 4061, 4068, 4071, 4127, 4196, 4201, 4202, 4203, 4206, 4213, 4216

Phoenix	4050
Phonotrend	4005, 4006, 4048
Pioneer	4046, 4213
Polsat	4052
Predki	4013
Premiere	4048, 4213
Priesner	4011
Primestar	4076
Profile	4216
Promax	4006
Prosat	4005, 4007
Proscan	4066, 4093, 4122, 4197
Protek	4051
Proton	4016
Provision	4010
Quadral	4005, 4007, 4008, 4024, 4216
Quelle	4015, 4215, 4219
Quiero	4052
RadioShack	4019
Radiola	4053, 4055
Radix	4014, 4037
Rainbow	4004
RCA	4066, 4093, 4112, 4113, 4116, 4118, 4119, 4122, 4197, 4207
Realistic	4078
Redpoint	4009
Redstar	4008, 4024
RFT	4005, 4053, 4055
Roadstar	4217
Roch	4031
Rover	4024, 4217
Saba	4010, 4215, 4216, 4219
Sabre	4006
Sagem	4023, 4052
Sakura	4050
Samsung	4000, 4001, 4003, 4032, 4064, 4069, 4071, 4120, 4123, 4196, 4200
SAT	4007, 4218
Sat Cruiser	4223
Sat Partner	4001, 4004, 4010, 4013, 4049, 4218
Sat Team	4217
Satcom	4012, 4219
Satec	4217
Satelco	4024
Satford	4012
Satmaster	4012
Satplus	4212
Schneider	4008, 4212, 4216
Schwaiger	4051, 4212, 4219
SCS	4215
Seemann	4009, 4011, 4014
SEG	4001, 4008, 4013, 4024
Seleco	4048
Servi Sat	4031, 4217
Siemens	4015
Silva	4049
Skantin	4217
Skardin	4009
Skinsat	4218
SKR	4217
Skymaster	4005, 4017, 4022, 4212, 4217
Skymax	4053, 4055
SkySat	4212, 4217, 4218, 4219
Skyvision	4048
SM Electronic	4212, 4217
Smart	4215, 4217
Sony	4067, 4070, 4213
SR	4011, 4054
Star Choice	4019
Starland	4217
Starring	4013
Start Trak	4001
Strong	4001, 4004, 4008, 4024, 4049, 4222
STS	4115
STVI	4031
Sumida	4011
Sunny Sound	4024
Sunsat	4217
Sunstar	4011, 4024, 4054
Supermax	4223
Tandberg	4052
Tandy	4004
Tantec	4006
TCM	4008
Techniland	4012
TechniSat	4014, 4021, 4026, 4027, 4038, 4039, 4053, 4212, 4213, 4218
Technology	4222
Technosat	4223
Technowelt	4219
Teco	4011, 4054
Telanor	4007
Telasat	4215, 4219
Telecom	4217
Telefunken	4001, 4017, 4216
Teleka	4004, 4011, 4014, 4218, 4219
Telemaster	4010
Telesat	4219
Telestar	4212, 4213, 4218
Televes	4006, 4218
Telewire	4048
Tempo	4223
Tevion	4008, 4217
Thomson	4006, 4020, 4052, 4058, 4208, 4213, 4215, 4216, 4217, 4219
Thorens	4051
Thorn	4006
Tivax	4104
Tivo	4196
Tokai	4053
Tonna	4006, 4012, 4048, 4217, 4218
Toshiba	4194, 4202, 4203
Triad	4049
Triasat	4218
Triax	4015, 4215, 4217, 4218
Turnsat	4217
Tvonics	4214
Twinner	4031, 4217
UEC	4222
Uher	4212
UltimateTV	4070
Uniden	4079, 4127
Unisat	4011, 4050, 4053
Unitor	4013
Universum	4015, 4215, 4219
US Digital	4016
Variosat	4015
Vega	4024
Ventana	4053, 4055
Viewsat	4098
Visiosat	4013, 4048, 4216, 4217
Voom	4019
Vortec	4001
Welltech	4212
WeTeKom	4212, 4218
Wevasat	4006
Wewa	4006
Winersat	4013
Wisi	4006, 4014, 4015, 4218, 4219
Woorisat	4010
Worldsat	4216
Xrypton	4024
XSat	4217
Zehnder	4008, 4010, 4024, 4209, 4215
Zenith	4102, 4107, 4195
Zodiac	4004

CD

Yamaha	5082, 5095

CD Recorder

Yamaha	5083

MD

Yamaha	5080, 5081, 5086

Tape

Yamaha	5084, 5087

Tuner

Yamaha	5066, 5071, 5085, 5088, 5090, 5092, 5094

XM

Yamaha	5091, 5093

SIRIUS

Yamaha	5064, 5067

DOCK

Yamaha	5068, 5089

NET

Yamaha	5076, 5079

LD

Yamaha	2080

Amplifier

Yamaha	5019, 5020

© 2010 Yamaha Corporation